

CAMBRIDGE

# English Vocabulary **in** Use

Pre-intermediate  
& intermediate

100 units of  
vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

Self-study and  
classroom use

**SECOND**  
EDITION

**Stuart Redman**

# English Vocabulary **in** **Use**

Pre-intermediate  
& intermediate

100 units of  
vocabulary  
reference and  
practice

Self-study and  
classroom use

**Stuart Redman**



PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK

40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain

Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

<http://www.cambridge.org>

© Cambridge University Press, 1997, 2003

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without  
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1997

New edition 2003

Fourth printing 2004

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

*Typeface* Sabon 10/12pt *System* QuarkXPress® [OD&I]

*A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library*

ISBN 0 521 01171 X paperback

# Contents

Introduction	vi
Using this book	1

## Learning

- 1 Learning and revising with this book *have a routine, revision, say the word aloud*
- 2 Keeping a vocabulary notebook *record, the most important thing is ...*
- 3 Using a dictionary *look up a word, guess the meaning*
- 4 English language words *adjective, phrasal verb, question mark*
- 5 Classroom language *board pen, share a book, swap places*

## Word formation

- 6 Prefixes *un-, in-, im-, dis-*
- 7 Noun suffixes *-ment, -ity, -ness, -tion*
- 8 Adjective suffixes *-able, -ive, -al, -y*
- 9 Nouns and verbs with the same form *guess/to guess, kiss/to kiss, rest/to rest*
- 10 Compound nouns *traffic light, tin opener, credit card, film star*
- 11 Compound adjectives *easy-going, well-known, part-time*

## Phrase building

- 12 Collocation (word partners) *miss the bus, a soft drink, fast asleep*
- 13 Idioms and fixed expressions *never mind, go ahead, take it in turns*
- 14 Verb or adjective + preposition *depend on, belong to, interested in*
- 15 Preposition + noun *by train, on the radio, in a hurry*
- 16 Apologies, excuses and thanks *sorry I'm late, I got held up, thanks a lot*
- 17 Requests, invitations and suggestions *Could you ...? How about ...? if you like*
- 18 Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing *What do you think of ...? a brilliant idea*
- 19 Likes, preferences and interests *I quite like, and that sort of thing, I'd rather*
- 20 Frequently asked questions *How's it going? What's the matter?*
- 21 Common responses *I hope so, that sounds great, what a shame*
- 22 Greetings, farewells and special expressions *Nice to meet you, see you soon, good luck*
- 23 Phrasal verbs (1): form and meaning *wake up, find out, run out of sth*
- 24 Phrasal verbs (2): grammar and style *take sth off, grow up, break down*
- 25 Have and have got *have a rest, I've got a headache, have a look*
- 26 Make, do and take *make a mistake, do homework, take a photo*
- 27 Give, keep, break, see *give sb a ring, break a record, I see*
- 28 Leave, catch and let *leave a message, catch a bus, let sb know*
- 29 Get: uses and expressions *get dressed, get married, get on with*
- 30 Go: uses and expressions *go for a drink, have a go, go deaf*
- 31 The senses *it looks nice, it feels like wool, don't touch*
- 32 Partitives: a bag of ..., a bit of ... *a cup of coffee, a bit of luck, a pair of shoes*

## Parts of speech (special problems)

- 33 Uncountable nouns and plural nouns *information (U), trousers (pl)*
- 34 Verbs + -ing form or infinitive *enjoy + -ing, refuse + infinitive*
- 35 Verb patterns *advise him to go ..., suggest (that) we leave*
- 36 Adjectives *boring or bored, big or enormous*

- 37 Prepositions: place *at the bus stop, on the floor, past the castle*  
 38 Adverbs: frequency and degree *I rarely go, I quite often drive, rather good*

## Connecting and linking

- 39 Time and sequence *as soon as, while, eventually*  
 40 Addition and contrast *as well, although, however*  
 41 Similarities, differences, comparisons, exceptions *very similar, compared with, apart from*  
 42 Reason, purpose, result, condition *so, because of, so that, therefore, unless*

## Topics

### The world around us

- 43 The physical world *round the world, Sahara Desert, floods*  
 44 Weather *heavy rain, a strong wind, lightning*  
 45 Animals and insects *pets, elephants, in the wild, protect*  
 46 Countries, nationality and language *Poland, the Far East, the French, in general*

### People

- 47 The body and what it can do *elbow, neck, breathe in, shake hands*  
 48 Describing people's appearance *good-looking, tall and slim, fair hair*  
 49 Describing character *shy, show your feelings, a sense of humour*  
 50 Human feelings and actions *angry, proud of, glance at, have a stroll*  
 51 Family and friends *mother-in-law, close friend, ex-husband*  
 52 Ages and stages *childhood, go to university, in your twenties*

### Daily life

- 53 Daily routines *fall asleep, have a shower, get to work*  
 54 The place where you live *right in the centre, on the first floor, rent*  
 55 Around the home (1) *spare room, lamp, cupboard, turn on the TV*  
 56 Around the home (2) *pillows, have a wash, do the ironing*  
 57 Everyday problems *spill, out of order, run out of bread*  
 58 Money *£10 note, lend and borrow, can't afford*  
 59 Health: illness *I don't feel well, flu, I get backache*  
 60 Health: physical injuries *break an arm, go to hospital, painful*  
 61 Clothes *skirt, earrings, put on a coat, too small*  
 62 Shops and shopping *go shopping, department store, cash desk*  
 63 Food *peach, peel an orange, lamb, salad dressing*  
 64 Cooking and restaurants *fresh bread, medium-rare, main course*  
 65 City life *the rush hour, shopping centre, lively*  
 66 Life in the country *rural area, on a farm, the nearest village*  
 67 On the road *main road, turn left, break down*  
 68 Transport *get on the bus, go by car, platform two*

### Work

- 69 Work: duties, pay and conditions *What do you do?, deal with, salary*  
 70 Jobs *surgeon, design buildings, in the army*  
 71 The career ladder *apply for a job, pay rise, work abroad*

- 72 In the office *send e-mail, do paperwork, it isn't working*  
 73 Business and finance *interest rate, profit and loss, rise sharply*

## Leisure and entertainment

- 74 Sport: ball games *table tennis, pass the ball, win a game*  
 75 Sport and leisure *swimming, go to the gym, support a team*  
 76 Cinema and theatre *stage, third row, war film, violent, gripping*  
 77 Music *composer, lead singer, hit single, latest CD*

## Communication and technology

- 78 Newspapers *daily paper, headline, according to ...*  
 79 Television *switch over, soap opera, What's on TV?*  
 80 On the phone *mobile phone, wrong number, Is that Mary?*  
 81 Computers and the Internet *hard disk, download, get online, browse*

## Social concerns

- 82 Education: school *primary school, geography, pass an exam*  
 83 Education: university *engineering, do a degree, graduate, PhD*  
 84 Law and order *illegal, break the law, arrest someone, guilty*  
 85 Crime *shoplifting, robbery, late at night, valuables*  
 86 Politics *believe in democracy, left-wing, election*  
 87 Bureaucracy *identity card, fill in, signature, date of birth*  
 88 Global problems *pollution, destroy the planet, civil war*

## Tourism

- 89 Air travel *check-in desk, land, a two-hour delay*  
 90 Hotels and restaurants *single room, pay the bill, Is dinner included?*  
 91 A sightseeing holiday in the city *have a look round, guidebook, nightlife*  
 92 Holidays by the sea *seaside resort, sunbathe, sandy beach*

## Notional concepts

- 93 Time *on Monday, since May, it takes an hour*  
 94 Numbers *two million, one and a half, divide by three*  
 95 Distance, size and dimension *a long way, too far, How wide is it?*  
 96 Shapes, colours and patterns *a round table, a dark green skirt, yellowish*

## Varieties of English

- 97 Notices and warnings *sold out, no exit, mind the step, no parking*  
 98 Vague language *a vague idea, things, stuff, a bit, roughly*  
 99 Formal and informal English *buy vs purchase, kids vs children*  
 100 Abbreviations and abbreviated words *CV, MP, e.g., etc., lab, fridge, bike*

Answer key	204
Phonemic symbols	242
Pronunciation problems	243
Index	244
Acknowledgements	263

# Introduction

This new edition of *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate & intermediate* still retains the features that made the first edition so popular:

- The format of presentation on the left-hand page and practice on the right-hand page.
- Approaching vocabulary in a variety of ways: topics (e.g. Food), word formation (e.g. Prefixes), words and grammar (e.g. Uncountable and plural nouns), collocation and phrases (e.g. Make, do and take), functions (e.g. Apologies, excuses and thanks), concepts (e.g. Time), varieties of English (e.g. Formal and informal English), etc.
- A student-friendly Answer key, including not only correct answers to right/wrong exercises, but also possible answers for more open-ended exercises.
- Usage notes that are ideal for self-study learners.
- A complete Index at the back of the book, listing all the target words and phrases with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation.

## What is different about the new edition?

### Colour

The first thing you will notice is that the new edition is in colour. This makes the text and the artwork more attractive, and it also makes the book easier for you to use: the different sections and headings are now clearer, and the usage notes are shown against their own colour background, so you can find them and read them more easily.

### Use of the Cambridge International Corpus

This new edition has made extensive use of the *Cambridge International Corpus* of written and spoken English. This has been important in two ways:

- the frequency information in the *Corpus* has helped to guide the selection of words and phrases in the book and ensure that the vocabulary will be suitable for pre-intermediate and intermediate learners of English;
- example sentences are the same or similar to those in the *Corpus*. In other words, the examples show you words and phrases being used in their most typical contexts.

### Collocation and phrases

The new edition concentrates even more on showing words in common collocations and phrases. For example, when you study different meanings of *see* (Unit 27), you will learn that it often appears in these phrases: *I see, I see what you mean, I'll see what (he says)*, etc. In a unit on physical appearance (Unit 48), you will meet these common collocations: *blonde hair, tall and slim, medium height*, etc.

### New units

In response to suggestions from teachers and students, there are now six completely new units in the book:

Likes, preferences and interests (Unit 19)

Have and have got (Unit 25)

Frequently asked questions (Unit 20)

Leave, catch and let (Unit 28)

Common responses (Unit 21)

Global problems (Unit 88)

Many other units have been significantly revised, e.g. The place where you live (Unit 54), City life (Unit 65), Life in the country (Unit 66), In the office (Unit 72), Music (Unit 77), Computers and the Internet (Unit 81).

## Better use of space

The usage notes are shown against a colour background and most have been placed in the left-hand margin; this makes them easier to see and read, and creates more space on the page. As a result, there are now more pictures in the new edition, more example sentences, and more new words and phrases to learn.

I very much hope you will enjoy working with this new edition of *English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate*.

Stuart Redman (London, 2002)

# Using this book

## Who is this book for?

*English Vocabulary in Use: pre-intermediate and intermediate* has been written to help learners at this level to improve their English. It has been designed for students who are studying on their own, but it can also be used by a teacher in the classroom with a group of students.

## How is the book organised?

The book has 100 two-page units. The left-hand page explains the new words and phrases chosen for that unit. They are all highlighted in bold and most units contain approximately 25 new words or phrases. The right-hand page gives you a chance to check your understanding through a series of exercises which practise the new vocabulary.

There is an Answer key at the back of the book. This gives *correct* answers to exercises with 'right' or 'wrong' solutions, and also *possible answers* for exercises which do not have 'right' or 'wrong' solutions.

There is an Index at the back of the book. This lists all the words and phrases introduced in the book and refers you to the unit or units where these words/phrases appear. The Index also includes a phonemic transcription for most of the words, and on page 243 you are given special help with the pronunciation of approximately 200 words which present particular problems for many learners of English.

## The left-hand page

This is the page that introduces the new vocabulary for each topic or area of language. First of all, the vocabulary is divided into a number of sections (A, B, C, etc.) with simple clear titles. Then, within each section, new words/phrases are explained using a number of different techniques:

1 A short definition.

e.g. **unemployed** (= without a job); **hang on** (= wait); **feel like** (= want or desire *informal*)

The abbreviations *fml* or *informl* tell you if a word is either 'formal' or 'informal'.

2 A short explanation.

e.g. He **admitted** stealing her money, but **denied** taking the computer (= he said 'yes' he took the money, but 'no' he didn't take the computer).



- 3 A synonym or opposite.  
e.g. **dreadful** (= terrible); **dirty** (*opp* clean)
- 4 In a situation. With some words and phrases it is easier to see their meaning when they are in context, e.g. [This is from a text about a motoring accident] ‘... The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was **badly injured**, and both cars were **badly damaged**.’
- 5 A picture or diagram. This seems the obvious way to explain a large number of concrete nouns and verbs.

e.g. carrot



Go along here and **turn left**.



For many of the new words/phrases there are also sentence examples which show the words in context in order to consolidate the meaning and illustrate any special features.

e.g. My boyfriend gets very **jealous** when I talk to other boys.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.

Some people can't stand (= hate) working at the weekend. [can't stand + *-ing* form]

Finally, a big effort has been made to introduce new words alongside other words that often appear with them (this is called 'collocation').

e.g. **miss the bus**; a **strong accent**; **the car broke down**; it's **vitaly important**; **fasten your seat belt**; **go on holiday**; **give someone a hand**; **to a certain extent**; a **terrible pain**, etc. There are many more examples of collocation in this new edition, and with the support of the Cambridge International Corpus you can now be sure that the examples included are some of the most important ones.

## The right-hand page

This page contains the exercises to practise the new vocabulary presented on the left-hand page. In general, the first exercise practises the form of some of the new words, and then there are further exercises which focus on the meaning. In most units there is at least one exercise which gives learners a chance to think about and practise new vocabulary in relation to their own lives, and/or a task which invites learners to do something with the vocabulary outside of the book. In every unit there is a range of exercise types to help to maintain your interest.

## How should I use the book?

The first four units teach you some important words and phrases, but they also give you information about vocabulary, plus ideas and techniques to help you learn vocabulary. Do these units first, then work through the book studying the units which interest you.

If you go to English lessons, you may also want to study Unit 5. This introduces vocabulary that is often used by teachers or needed by students in the classroom, e.g. *cassette recorder*, *clean the board*, *Could I borrow a pen?*, *What does that mean?*, etc.

Everything you need is in the book. The new vocabulary is explained on the left-hand page, and the exercises have an Answer key at the back of the book. But it is still important to have your own dictionary. A good bilingual dictionary will give you support in your first language, and a monolingual dictionary produced for intermediate learners will give you added practice in English. Use these to help you. (See Unit 3 for more information and ideas.)

Finally, you can visit the 'in Use' website at <http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse/>.

Good luck.

## Summary of abbreviations used in the book

<i>n</i>	noun
<i>v</i>	verb
<i>adj</i>	adjective
<i>opp</i>	opposite
<i>informl</i>	informal word or expression
<i>forml</i>	formal word or expression
(U)	uncountable word
(C)	countable word
sb	somebody
sth	something

(NOT ~~Host the bus~~) indicates that a word or expression is wrong

# Learning and revising with this book

Look at Exercise 1.1 on the next page before you read this page.

## A Have a routine

A **routine** means doing certain things often and in the same way. If you are using this book for **self-study** (= to study alone), it helps to have a routine. So, **how much time** can you **spend** on the book each day or each week? Here are some ideas:

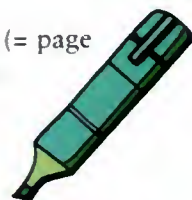
- if you are studying a new unit, spend at least (= a minimum of) half an hour or 45 minutes
- if you are **revising** (= studying a unit for a second or third time), five or ten minutes is very useful.

So, plan longer periods for new units and shorter periods for revision.

## B Using the book

Do different things to **maintain your interest**. (= keep your interest high) For example:

- 1 Don't study the units in the same order as the book. **Choose** (= select) units that **interest you** (= are interesting for you).
- 2 When you do a unit, you can read **the whole** (= all) of the **left-hand page** (= page on the left), then do the exercises. Or, do the exercises first, then read the left-hand page if there is a problem.
- 3 Be **active** when you are learning. For example:
  - when you are reading the left-hand page, use a **highlighter** pen to mark new or interesting vocabulary;
  - practise **saying the words aloud** (= speaking them), so you can **pronounce them** (= say the pronunciation), and also **silently** (= without a noise) in your head to help you to remember them;
  - put new words in your own notebook using some of the ideas from Unit 2.



## C Revision

It's easy to forget words that you learn, but if you revise for short periods, it helps you to remember words and make them part of your active vocabulary. Here are some ideas.

- 1 Do exercises in pencil. Check your answers when you finish, then **rub them out** (= remove them using a rubber). Later, come back and do the exercises again. Use the left-hand page if you have a problem.
- 2 When you read a left-hand page for a second time, have a **blank piece of paper** (= paper with no writing on it) with you. When you come to a new word in **bold** with a definition in (brackets), **cover the definition** (= put the paper over it) and try to **define it** (= give the meaning/definition).
- 3 Revise for short periods but do it often. **Five minutes a day** (NOT five minutes ~~per~~ day) is probably better than half an hour a week; but half an hour a week is probably better than two hours a month.
- 4 Be **active** when you revise, e.g. test yourself, practise the pronunciation, write down important words and phrases in your notebook with example sentences.



rubber

# Exercises

## 1.1 Read these questions. What do you think? (Answers are on the opposite page.)

- 1 Is it better to plan regular self-study, or just study when you've got some free time?
- 2 Is it a good idea to study the units in the same order as they appear in the book?
- 3 Is it a good idea to write down new words in a notebook when you are studying a unit?
- 4 Is it necessary to revise vocabulary (= study it again for a second or third time)?
- 5 Is it better to revise vocabulary occasionally for long periods of time, or is it better to revise regularly for short periods of time?

## 1.2 Find your way round the book.

- Turn to the Topic units in the Contents on pages iv–v.
- Take a blank piece of paper and cover the right-hand side of the page with the examples.
- Read the list of unit titles, and write down your own examples – one or two for each unit.
- Are there any unit titles you don't understand? Are there any units where you can't think of examples? If so, turn to that unit and find out what it is about.

You could use similar titles in your own vocabulary notebook (see Unit 2).

## 1.3 Complete the table.

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
definition	..... <i>define</i> .....
revision	.....
pronunciation	.....
choice	.....
interest	.....

## 1.4 There is a mistake with the underlined words. Can you correct each one?

- 1 Did you make all of the exercises?
- 2 I studied for one half hour.
- 3 Do you always read the left page first?
- 4 I passed twenty minutes on the first exercise.
- 5 I read the all page.

## 1.5 True or False? If the sentence is false, rewrite it to make it true. Write in pencil.

- 1 In this book, most of the important new vocabulary is shown in **bold print**. True
- 2 Definitions/explanations of new words are often in **brackets** after the word.
- 3 A **routine** means doing certain things in a different way each time.
- 4 If you **maintain** something at a level, it means you keep it at the same level.
- 5 **At least** 50 people means a maximum of 50 people.
- 6 If you write something then **rub it out**, you remove it from the page.
- 7 If you do something **silently**, you do it without a noise.
- 8 **Revision** means studying something for the first time.
- 9 If you read a **whole** book, you read all of it.
- 10 A **blank** piece of paper is full of writing.


Check your answers. Look at any wrong answers carefully, then rub them out. Do the exercise again tomorrow.

# Keeping a vocabulary notebook

## A Organising your notebook

Give each page a title, e.g. sport, education, verbs followed by an *-ing* form, etc. When you learn new words and phrases, write them on a suitable page.

## B What do I need to record?

<i>what?</i>	<i>how?</i>	<i>example</i>
Meaning	a translation	remember = lembrar [in Portuguese]
	b definition/explanation	A pond is an area of water smaller than a lake.
	c synonym or opposite	awful (= terrible); ugly ( <i>opp</i> beautiful)
	d picture	saucepan 
	e example sentence	My hands were cold, so I put on my gloves.
Pronunciation	phonemic symbols or your own system	ache /eɪk/
Part of speech	noun (n), verb (v)	ache [like 'make']
Grammar	make a note + example sentence	gloves (n); remember (v); careful (adj) enjoy + <i>-ing</i> form; I enjoy going to parties. weather (uncountable); We had lovely weather in Italy.
Common partners	phrase or sentence	make a mistake; on the phone; (a) black coffee (= coffee without milk)
Special style	make a note	purchase (= buy: <i>formal</i> ) kids (= children: <i>informal</i> )

You don't need to record all of these things for every word or phrase. The most important thing is to show the words in typical examples. Leave space in your notebook as well, then you can come back and add more information later if you learn something new.

## C Organising words on the page

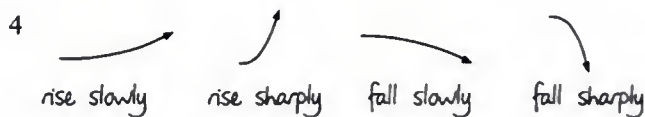
Don't just write lists of individual words. Put words together that appear together, e.g. blonde hair (*opp* black hair), get off the bus (= go out of the bus). Make the pages interesting with pictures, diagrams and example sentences.



Don't pronounce the 'w' in wrist or the 'b' in thumb.



3 smile (v,n)  
e.g. She smiled at me yesterday.  
He gave me a big smile.  
She's got a lovely smile.



Note both verbs are irregular:  
rise/rose/risen; fall/fell/fallen.

# Exercises

2.1 Organise this list of words into three groups and give each one a title.




unfriendly	put on	platform	gloves	unhappy
train	get on	unable	size	jumper
wear	late	unkind	tie	passenger

Find the units in this book which may include these words. Add more to each group.

2.2 Fill the gaps with suitable words to form common partners with the nouns in bold.

- 1 She's ..... the **phone** at the moment.
- 2 A: Do you want milk and sugar? B: No, just a ..... **coffee**, please.
- 3 If you're cold, why don't you ..... your **coat**?
- 4 I don't usually ..... that **mistake**.
- 5 She ..... me a big **smile** this morning.
- 6 It was the third ..... of my **left hand**.

2.3 Underline the correct answer.

- 1 A pond is:  
a bigger than a lake                      b smaller than a lake                      c the same size
- 2 I really enjoy:  
a play tennis                                  b to play tennis                                  c playing tennis
- 3 When we were on holiday we had:  
a lovely weathers                              b lovely weather                              c a lovely weather
- 4 The underlined letters in **ache** are pronounced the same as in:  
a machine                                      b cach    c chemist
- 5 The past tense of 'fall' is:  
a fell    b felt    c falled
- 6 You can 'get off':  
a a bus    b a kitchen    c a noise
- 7 'Rise sharply' means:  
a                       b                       c 
- 8 'Purchase' is:  
a an informal word for 'buy'                      b a formal word for 'buy'                      c a formal word for 'child'

2.4 Look at the words below. What is the best way to record their meaning? What other information would be useful? Use a dictionary to help you.

*Example* You could record 'dream' with a translation, a picture (see Unit 9), or an explanation, e.g. things you imagine in your sleep. 'Dream' can be a verb or noun and is often followed by 'about', e.g. I dreamt about you.

dream	concentrate	beard	nearly	empty	rescue	knife
-------	-------------	-------	--------	-------	--------	-------

2.5 Write down three more nouns that often follow 'take'. Do the same for 'make' and 'do'.

take a shower ..... make ..... do .....

# Using a dictionary

## A What dictionaries do I need?

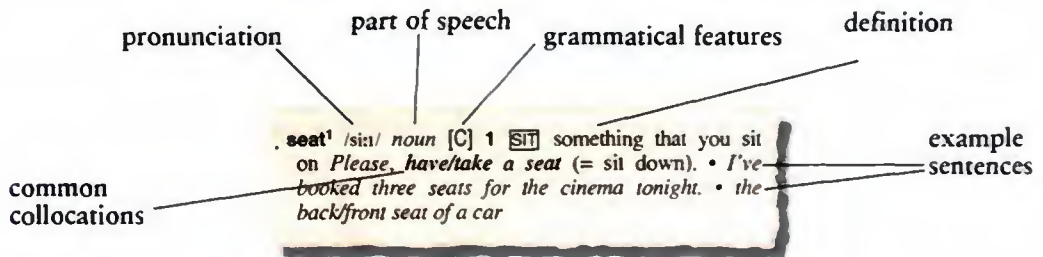
Buy a good bilingual dictionary and a good English–English dictionary. The bilingual dictionary is easier for you to understand; but it's also good for you to work in English as much as possible.

<i>large dictionaries</i>	<i>medium-sized dictionaries</i>
Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary	Cambridge Learner's Dictionary Longman Active Study Dictionary Oxford Wordpower Dictionary

## B What information does a dictionary give me?

Look up a word (= find a word in a dictionary) and you will get this information.

- the meaning, e.g. homesick = unhappy because you are away from home for a long period
- the pronunciation (using phonemic symbols), e.g. island /aɪlənd/, lose /lu:z/, tiny /taɪni/
- the part of speech, e.g. dirty *adj* (= adjective), choose *v* (= verb), law *n* (= noun)
- word grammar, e.g. advice (U) (= uncountable noun), begin (began, begun) (= the past tense and past participle)
- common collocations (see Unit 12), e.g. do homework (NOT ~~make~~); It depends on you (NOT ~~of~~)
- example phrases or sentences, e.g. The train leaves from platform seven.
- sometimes synonyms or opposites, e.g. polite (*syn* = courteous; *opp* = impolite)



## C How can I use my dictionary?

When you look up a word, put a tick (✓) next to it. Each time you return to a page with a tick, look at it quickly to check you remember the word.

When you see a new word or phrase in a text, first try to **guess the meaning** (= try to think of the meaning from the context), then **carry on** (= continue) reading to **see** (= find out) if your guess is correct. Use your dictionary to **check the meaning**. (= find out if the meaning is correct)

Don't just read definitions. The example phrases and sentences show you how a word or phrase is used, and they often help you to understand the meaning more clearly.

If you look up a word in a bilingual dictionary and get several different translations, check in a monolingual dictionary to see which translation is the best one in the context.

Remember that many words have more than one meaning. The first meaning in the dictionary is not always the one you want. Read through the different meanings.

# Exercises

## 3.1 Complete these sentences about dictionary use.

- 1 It's important to have a good English-English dictionary and also a ..... dictionary, which is easier to understand.
- 2 Dictionaries show the ..... using phonemic symbols.
- 3 Dictionaries will tell you if a noun is countable or .....
- 4 Dictionaries show synonyms and ..... where they exist.
- 5 If you meet a word you don't know, you can try to ..... the meaning from the context, or you can ..... it ..... in a dictionary.

## 3.2 Right or wrong? If the answer is wrong, correct it.

- 1 Advice is a countable noun. *Wrong (advice is an uncountable noun)*
- 2 Homesick means you are unhappy living at home and you want to leave.
- 3 You don't make homework, you do homework.
- 4 Carry on means the same as continue.
- 5 The opposite of polite is unpolite.
- 6 The past tense of begin is begun.
- 7 Dirty is an adjective.
- 8 If you look up a word, you find the meaning in a dictionary.
- 9 Trains arrive at and leave from platforms.
- 10 Depend is followed by the preposition of.

## 3.3 In the word 'island' *aiɪlənd*, the letter 's' is silent (= not pronounced). Use your dictionary to find the silent letters in these words. (Do not include the letter 'e' at the end of a word.)

knife



comb



castle



salmon



receipt



## 3.4 Use a dictionary to find the answers to these questions about words on the left-hand page.

- 1 What does tiny mean?
- 2 How do you pronounce lose? (Is it the same as 'choose' or 'chose?')
- 3 What is the opposite of lose a game?
- 4 What are the past tense and past participle of the verb choose?
- 5 What noun is formed from the verb choose?
- 6 What part of speech is homesick?
- 7 What two verbs often go before homesick?
- 8 Can you complete this common phrase? law and .....

## 3.5 Match the sentences on the left with the different meanings of 'bar' on the right.

- 1 They've put bars in front of the window for extra security.
- 2 We went to a bar in the centre of town.
- 3 Could you get me a bar of chocolate?
- 4 You have to order drinks at the bar.

**bar** 'bɑː' noun [C] 1 **DRINKING** a place where alcoholic drinks are sold and drunk, or the area behind the person serving the drinks *I met him in a bar in Soho.* 2 **BLOCK** a small block of something solid *a chocolate bar • gold bars* 3 **LONG PIECE** a long, thin piece of metal or wood *There were bars on the downstairs windows.*



## A

## Parts of speech

nouns	e.g. chair, information, happiness
verbs	e.g. choose, tell, complain
adjectives	e.g. happy, tall, dangerous
adverbs	e.g. slowly, carefully, often
prepositions	e.g. in, at, on
articles	e.g. definite article (the); indefinite article (a/an)

## B

## Special terms

**Uncountable noun:** (U) a noun which has no plural form and isn't used with the indefinite article, e.g. Can you send me some information? (NOT ~~an information~~ or ~~informations~~)

**Plural noun:** (pl) a noun which only has a plural form and isn't used with the indefinite article, e.g. He was wearing blue trousers and a white shirt. (NOT ~~a blue trouser~~)

**Infinitive:** the base form of a verb, e.g. We decided *to stop* for lunch.

**Phrasal verb:** a verb + adverb or preposition, e.g. wake up, turn sth on, look after sth/sb.

**Idiom:** a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words, e.g. never mind, keep an eye on sth, etc.

**Transitive verb:** a verb which needs a direct object, e.g. The police caught the man ['the man' is the direct object of the verb 'caught']. A verb which doesn't need a direct object is **intransitive**, e.g. Tim and his brother are always *arguing*.

**Informal:** a word or phrase which is informal is used mostly in spoken English. Formal English is more common in writing or with people you don't know very well.

Many words also have **synonyms**, which are words with the same meaning, e.g. 'big' and 'large' are synonyms in many contexts. The **opposite** is 'small'.

## C

## Word building

In the word *uncomfortable*, *un-* is a **prefix**, *comfort* is a **root**, and *-able* is a **suffix**. Other common prefixes include: *re-*, *in-* and *dis-*. Suffixes include: *-ity*, *-ment* and *-ive*.

## D

## Pronunciation

## NOTE

Dictionaries usually show stress with a ' before the main syllable, e.g. re'turn.

Dictionaries show the pronunciation of a word using **phonemic symbols**, e.g. book *'bʊk'*, before *'bɪfə:/*, cinema *'sɪnəmə/*, and so on.

Every word has one or more **syllables**, e.g. 'book' has one syllable, 'before' has two syllables, 'cinema' has three syllables, and so on.

For pronunciation, it is important to know which syllable has the **main stress**, e.g. on 'before' it is the second syllable (*be'fore*), and on 'cinema' it is the first syllable (*'cinema*), and so on.

## E

## Punctuation

full stop .    comma ,    brackets ( )    hyphen -    question mark ?

Hyphens are used to connect certain words or parts of a word together, e.g. a ten-year-old child.

# Exercises

4.1 There is one word missing in each line of the text. Where does the missing word go? What could it be? What part of speech is it?

Last year I went to → for my holiday. I spent the first week Seville staying with a couple of friends, and then I a train to Barcelona, where I spent another ten days. It is beautiful city and I had a marvellous time. I stayed in a very hotel right in the centre, but I didn't mind spending a lot money because it is a wonderful and very convenient. My brother recommended it; he goes Spain a lot and he stays anywhere else.

1 Spain (noun).....  
 2 .....  
 3 .....  
 4 .....  
 5 .....  
 6 .....  
 7 .....  
 8 .....  
 9 .....

4.2 In the dialogue below, find at least one example of the following: an uncountable noun, a plural noun, a phrasal verb, and an idiom.

- A: It's 8 o'clock. We'd better get a move on if we're going to meet Sue at the airport.  
 B: That's OK. Her flight doesn't get in until 8.50.  
 A: Yes, but it'll take us an hour to get to the airport – you know what the traffic is like.  
 B: OK. I'll just go and get changed.  
 A: What's wrong with your shorts?  
 B: I don't like driving in shorts. I'm going to put some jeans on.

4.3 Look at the underlined verbs in these sentences. Which are transitive? Which are intransitive?

- 1 She broke her leg.
- 2 Take off your jacket.
- 3 I got up at 7.30.
- 4 She doesn't like Chinese food.
- 5 We arrived late.
- 6 He told me to sit down.

4.4 How many syllables are there in each of these words?

English (2)	noun	decide	informal
before	adjective	education	opposite
preposition	adverb	understand	pronunciation

Now mark the main stress on each of the words.

4.5 Look at these words and answer the questions below.

happy    lucky    dangerous    cheap

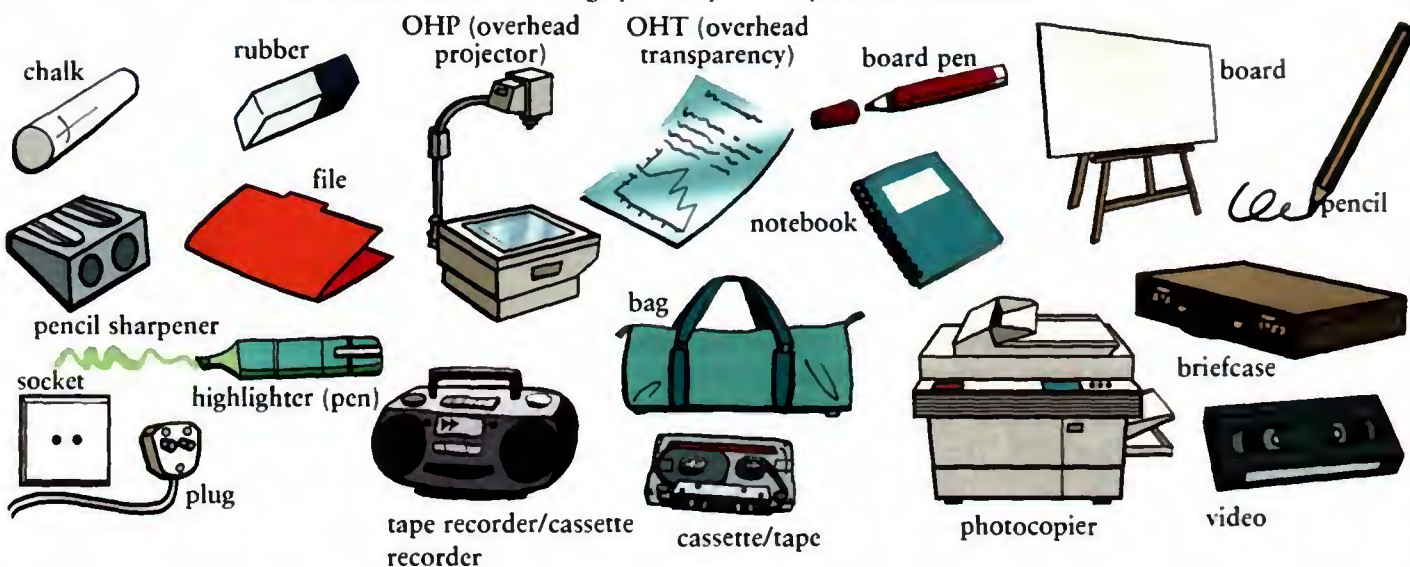
- 1 What part of speech are these words?
- 2 Change each one into an adverb.
- 3 Write down a synonym for the first two words.
- 4 Which prefix do you need to form the opposite of the first two words?
- 5 Write down the opposite of the last two words.

## 5

## Classroom language

## A Equipment

These are some of the things you may use in your classroom or school.



We can use some of these nouns as verbs: **video** a programme (= record it on video); **photocopy** an exercise; **highlight** new words; **file** some papers (= put them in a file).

## B Classroom activities

Things students or teachers do in the classroom:

**Look up** a word (= find the meaning of a word in a dictionary)

**Borrow** someone's dictionary or rubber (= use it and then return it)

**Rub out** mistakes in a notebook (= remove mistakes using a rubber)

**Plug in** the tape recorder (= put the plug in the electric socket)

**Turn up** the tape recorder if you can't hear it (= increase the volume) (*opp* turn down)

**Rub things off** the board (= remove writing from the board)

**Correct** students' English (= give the correct English if students make mistakes)

Things a teacher may ask students to do in the classroom:

**Could you clean** the board, Carlos? (= remove all the writing from the board)

**Write these words down.** (= write these words on a piece of paper/in a notebook)

**Enrique, could you swap places** (= change places) with Lorena?

**Kim, could you share** your book with Petra? (= use it together at the same time)

**Repeat** this sentence after me. (= say it again)

## C Questions about vocabulary

What does 'plug' mean? (~~NOT~~ what means plug?)

How do you pronounce it?

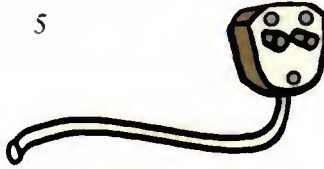
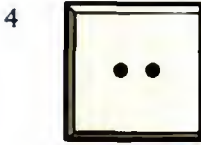
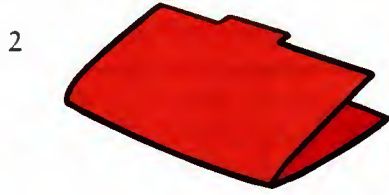
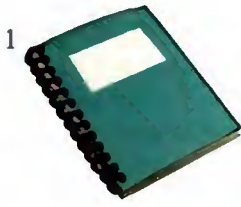
How do you spell 'bicycle'?

How do you use 'anyway' in a sentence?

What's the difference between 'lend' and 'borrow'?

# Exercises

5.1 Label these pictures, then check your answers on the opposite page.



5.2 Answer these questions.

- 1 What do you rub off the board? *writing*
- 2 What do you put in a tape recorder?
- 3 What do you put on an OHP?
- 4 What do you keep in a file?
- 5 What do you put in a briefcase?
- 6 What do you put in a socket?
- 7 What do you use a rubber for?
- 8 What do you use a photocopier for?
- 9 Why do you turn up a tape recorder?
- 10 Why do you share a book with someone?

5.3 Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right.

- |           |   |                      |
|-----------|---|----------------------|
| 1 correct | — | a places             |
| 2 clean   | — | b a word             |
| 3 borrow  | — | c someone's mistakes |
| 4 swap    |   | d the board          |
| 5 video   |   | e a dictionary       |
| 6 do      |   | f a programme        |
| 7 turn up |   | g an exercise        |
| 8 look up |   | h the tape recorder  |

5.4 Here are some answers. What are the possible questions?

- |            |   |   |
|------------|---|---|
| 1 A: ..... | ? | B: It means to exchange places.           |
| 2 A: ..... | ? | B: <u>/swop/</u> . Like 'shop' or 'stop'. |
| 3 A: ..... | ? | B: S-W-A-P.                               |

5.5 Think about your last lesson (in English or any other subject). Did you do any of these things?

- |                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Did you clean the board? | share a book with anyone?          |
| use a rubber?            | look up any words?                 |
| borrow anything?         | make any mistakes?                 |
| watch a video?           | write anything down in a notebook? |

### A With the meaning 'not'

Prefixes can be added to some words to give them a negative meaning.

happy	unhappy	like (v)	dislike (v)
possible	impossible	legal	illegal (= against the law/wrong)
correct	incorrect	regular	irregular, e.g. irregular verbs

#### NOTE

Word stress doesn't usually change, e.g. happy/unhappy; but it can to emphasise the negative:

A: Was he happy about the change?

B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

**un-** is the most common, e.g. **unfriendly**, **unable**, **unusual**, **unnecessary**, **unemployed** (= without a job), **untidy** (= not in order; also, in a mess), **unkind**, **unpleasant** (= horrible).

**in-** is often used before words with a Latin origin, e.g. **invisible** (= cannot be seen), **informal**, **inadequate** (= not good enough, e.g. The car park is inadequate for a big supermarket like that).

**im-** is used before some words beginning with 'm' or 'p', e.g. **impolite**, **impossible**, **impatient** (someone who is 'impatient' wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things), **immoral**.

**il-** can be used before 'l', e.g. **illegible** (= impossible to read because the writing is bad).

**ir-** is only used before a few words beginning with 'r', e.g. **irresponsible**.

**dis-** is used before some adjectives, e.g. **dishonest** (a 'dishonest' person is someone you cannot trust, and often does not tell the truth), and a few verbs, e.g. **dislike**, **disagree**.

### B Verb prefixes: un- and dis-

With some verbs, these prefixes can also mean 'the opposite of an action'.

The plane **appeared** in the sky, then suddenly **disappeared** behind a cloud.

I **locked** the door when I left, but then I **lost** the key and couldn't **unlock** it when I got back.

I **got dressed** (= put on my clothes) and had my breakfast.

I **got undressed** (= took off my clothes) and got into bed.

I had to **pack my suitcase/do my packing** (= put everything in it) very quickly, so when I **unpacked** (= took things out) at the hotel, most of my clothes looked terrible.



### C Other verb prefixes with specific meanings

**re-** (= again) The shop closed down but it'll **reopen** next month.

I failed my exam but I can **retake/redo** it next year.

**over-** (= too much) My boss is **overdoing** it at the moment. (= working too hard)

I went to bed very late and I **overslept** (= slept too long) this morning.

The shop assistant **overcharged** me.

(= asked me for too much money)

**mis-** (= badly or incorrectly) I'm afraid I **misunderstood** what he said.

Two of the students **misread** the first question.



Maybe I overate.

# Exercises

6.1 What's the opposite of these words? (The words in the last column are verbs, the rest are adjectives.)

- |                   |                 |                  |               |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1 <u>un</u> happy | 5 .....patient  | 9 .....polite    | 13 .....lock  |
| 2 .....correct    | 6 .....regular  | 10 .....visible  | 14 .....pack  |
| 3 .....legible    | 7 .....friendly | 11 .....employed | 15 .....agree |
| 4 .....possible   | 8 .....formal   | 12 .....honest   | 16 .....like  |

6.2 What's the reverse of these actions?

- |                                  |               |
|----------------------------------|---------------|
| 1 do one's packing <u>unpack</u> | 3 appear      |
| 2 lock the door                  | 4 get dressed |

6.3 Agree with these sentences, using a synonym from the left-hand page for the underlined words.

- 1 It's against the law, isn't it?  
Oh yes, it's illegal.
- 2 His room is always in a mess, isn't it?  
Yes, it's very .....
- 3 He took off his clothes!  
Yes, he got .....
- 4 This handwriting is impossible to read.  
Yes I know, it's completely .....
- 5 She can never wait for five minutes, can she?  
No, she's very .....
- 6 The conference centre wasn't good enough for 500 people, was it?  
No, it was completely ..... for that number.
- 7 She's horrible sometimes.  
Yes, she can be very .....
- 8 I'm afraid they sometimes steal things and tell lies.  
I know. They're both .....

6.4 Complete the verbs in these sentences.

- 1 I completely disagree ..... with him on this subject.
- 2 I'm sorry, I mis..... her message.
- 3 We un..... as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
- 4 She was here a minute ago, then she dis..... . I don't know where she is now.
- 5 My homework was so bad that I'll have to re..... it.
- 6 Her alarm clock didn't go off and she over.....
- 7 She finally managed to un..... the door and we were able to go inside.
- 8 I dis..... the film, but the others enjoyed it.
- 9 I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re..... it in September.
- 10 She's over..... things at the moment. She needs a complete break from her job.
- 11 The post office shuts for lunch but it should re..... at 2.00 pm.
- 12 I was very angry because they over..... me by about £5 in that shop.

6.5 Keep several pages in your notebook for verbs or adjectives which combine with these prefixes. You can add new words to your lists and test yourself at the same time.

# Noun suffixes

## A Verb + noun suffix

<i>verb</i>	<i>suffix</i>	<i>noun</i>
improve (= get better)	-ment	improvement
govern (= control affairs of a city or country)		government
manage (= direct or control a business)	-ion	management
elect (= choose somebody by voting)		election
discuss (= talk about something seriously)		discussion
inform (= tell someone something)	-ation	information
jog (= running to keep fit or for pleasure)	-ing	jogging
spell (e.g. S-P-E-L-L)		spelling

There has been a big improvement in the economy. Who do you think will win the election?  
The problems are due to bad management. I'm not very good at spelling.

## B Adjective + noun suffix

<i>adjective</i>	<i>suffix</i>	<i>noun</i>
weak ( <i>opp</i> strong)	-ness	weakness
happy		happiness
ill (= sick/not well)	-ity	illness
stupid ( <i>opp</i> intelligent, clever)		stupidity
active		activity
similar (= almost the same; <i>opp</i> different)		similarity

We have a weak government. What's her main weakness as a manager?  
She was ill for a long time. Hepatitis is a very serious illness.  
The two boys are quite similar. There is a similarity between all three sons.

## C Pronunciation

Adding a suffix to a verb or adjective may change the pronunciation.

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>
educate	education
advertise	advertisement

<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>
similar	similarity
stupid	stupidity

## D -er/-or and -ist

These suffixes can be added to nouns or verbs. They often describe people and jobs.

-er	-er	-or	-ist
ballet dancer	bus driver	television actor	artist, e.g. Picasso
pop singer	shop manager	film director	economist
murderer (= person who kills someone)	professional footballer	translator	psychologist
	employer	computer operator	journalist

# Exercises

7.1 Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

verb	noun	adjective	noun
educate	.....	stupid	.....
improve	.....	happy	.....
jog	.....	weak	.....
govern	.....	similar	.....
spell	.....	active	.....
hesitate	.....	sad	.....
arrange	.....	popular	.....

7.2 Combine words on the left with the correct suffix on the right to complete the text.

improve	televis	weak	govern	-ment	-ity	-ness
elect	educate	manage	stupid	-ion	-ation	

In his first broadcast on (1) television since he won the (2) ..... last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and (3) ..... his top two priorities.

And in a strong attack on the previous (4) ....., he said that the present (5) ..... of the British economy was caused by their (6) ..... and bad (7) ..... . He said things were going to change, and he hoped the British people would be able to see a big (8) ..... in the economy by the end of the year.

7.3 Write down the name of the person who does these things as a job.

- 1 drive driver .....      3 act .....      5 economics .....
- 2 translate .....      4 psychology .....      6 football .....

7.4 Match words from left and right to find the names of eight jobs.

pop	bus	psychologist	dancer
shop	child	singer	manager
film	ballet	operator	driver
computer	professional	footballer	director

7.5 Complete the definitions below.

- 1 An employer is a person or company that employs people .....
- 2 A murderer is a person who .....
- 3 A bank manager is a person who .....
- 4 A television actor is a person who .....
- 5 A translator is a person who .....
- 6 A lorry driver is a person who .....
- 7 A journalist is a person who .....
- 8 An artist such as Picasso is a person who .....



# Adjective suffixes

## A Noun or verb + suffix

<i>noun or verb</i>	<i>suffix</i>	<i>adjectives</i>
danger, fame	-ous	<b>dangerous, famous</b> (= known by lots of people)
music, politics, emotion, economics, industry	-al	<b>musical, political, emotional</b> (= have or show strong feelings), <b>economical</b> (= saves you money), <b>industrial</b> (= connected with industry and factories)
cloud, sun, fog, dirt	-y	<b>cloudy, sunny, foggy, dirty</b> ( <i>opp</i> clean)
attract, create	-ive	<b>attractive</b> (= pretty, good-looking); <b>creative</b> (= ability to produce new ideas; with imagination)

The roads were **dangerous** this morning: it was foggy and I couldn't see far.

He was very **emotional** when he said 'goodbye'.

Did you buy a diesel car because it's more **economical** than petrol?

I'm afraid you'll have to clean the floor – it's very **dirty**.

## B -able

This common suffix creates adjectives from nouns and verbs:

an **enjoyable** evening    a **comfortable** chair    Jeans are still **fashionable**.

**suitable** (= right/correct for a situation), e.g. A grey suit is very **suitable** for a wedding.

Sometimes **-able** means 'can be done':

**washable** (= can be washed), e.g. Is this jacket **washable**?

**reliable** (= can be trusted), e.g. I've never had a problem with the car – it's very **reliable**.

Words ending **-able** quite often express the opposite meaning with the prefix **un-**:

**unsuitable** (= not right/correct for a situation), e.g. Jeans are **unsuitable** for weddings.

**unbreakable** (= cannot be broken), e.g. The glass in the shop window is **unbreakable**.

Words ending **-ible** sometimes add the prefix **in-** to form an opposite:

**incomprehensible** (= cannot be understood), e.g. This street map is **incomprehensible**.

**invisible** (= cannot be seen), e.g. Trees surround the house, so it's **invisible** from the road.

## C -ful and -less

**-ful** often means 'full of' or 'having the quality of the noun':

**careful** (= doing sth with care and attention), e.g. **careful** driver

**helpful** (= able to help), e.g. Her advice was very **helpful**.

**painful** (= giving pain), e.g. It was **painful** when I hit my hand.

**useful** (= has a lot of use), e.g. I found it a **useful** book.

**thoughtful** (= kind and thinks of others)



painful

thoughtful

**-less** often means 'without':

**careless** (= without care, and causing mistakes), e.g. His work is full of **careless** mistakes.

**useless** (= without use and often terrible), e.g. This knife is **useless** – it won't cut anything.

**homeless** (= with nowhere to live), e.g. Many families are **homeless** because of the war.

# Exercises

8.1 Write an adjective (or adjectives) formed from these nouns or verbs. Cover the opposite page first.

- |                           |            |            |
|---------------------------|------------|------------|
| 1 danger <i>dangerous</i> | 7 care     | 13 sun     |
| 2 attract                 | 8 thought  | 14 music   |
| 3 create                  | 9 politics | 15 comfort |
| 4 cloud                   | 10 enjoy   | 16 fame    |
| 5 suit                    | 11 pain    | 17 rely    |
| 6 use                     | 12 dirt    | 18 emotion |

8.2 Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives from the opposite page.

- You must be very *careful* ..... when you drive in wet weather.
- Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very .....
- The tourist information office was very ....., and told us everything we needed to know.
- This is a very ..... road, you know. There were three serious accidents on it last year.
- It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of that table.
- This bag is very ..... : I take it to work and when I go on holiday.
- We've never had problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very .....
- The factory is in the ..... part of the city, and it's not very attractive.
- A 100 gram bag is 80 pence, but the 200 gram bag is only £1.20, so it's more ..... to buy the larger bag.
- It's terrible that there are so many ..... people in a country that is so rich.
- Teenagers want to be ....., and wear all the latest styles.
- I can't understand a word of these instructions – they're .....

8.3 How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix *-less*?

- 1 wonderful    2 useful    3 awful    4 careful    5 beautiful

What are the opposites of the other words (the ones without *-less*)?

8.4 Match adjectives from the left with the most suitable nouns from the right.

homeless    famous  
careless    useful  
comfortable    cloudy  
industrial    enjoyable

actor    bed  
party    mistake  
advice    area  
family    morning

8.5 From the adjectives on the opposite page, choose two or three which could describe each of these people or things. (You can use the same adjective more than once.)

- Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart *famous, creative, musical*
- the weather
- someone's driving
- an area of a city
- a car
- yourself



# Nouns and verbs with the same form

Many words in English function as noun and verb, or verb and adjective, or noun and adjective, with the same form.

What's the answer? (noun) I must clean my room. (verb) I don't like the cold. (noun)  
 Answer the question. (verb) It's a clean room. (adj) I don't like cold weather. (adj)

The same word form can have different meanings, but this unit looks at examples where the meaning is the same or similar, and concentrates on nouns and verbs with the same form.

## A Noun and verb



**brake** (= stop a car using the brake on the floor)  
**diet** (= eat less to lose weight)  
**guess** (= give an answer without knowing the facts)

**ring** (= telephone)  
**queue** (= wait in a line of people)  
**murder** (= kill someone)

Many common words can function as noun and verb with the same form and meaning: *drink, rest, look, cost, swim, wash, push, pull, reply, kiss, chat* (= a casual conversation *infnl*) [also *practise* (v) and *practice* (n)].

## B Which verb?

It is often more natural in English to use the verb + noun structure (e.g. had a guess) and not the verb (e.g. guessed). You need to know which verbs to use with the nouns.

<i>verb</i>	<i>verb + noun</i>
I didn't know the answer, so I <b>guessed</b> .	I didn't know the answer, so I <b>had a guess</b> .
We <b>rested</b> for a while.	We <b>had a short rest</b> .
She <b>braked</b> suddenly.	She <b>put on the brakes</b> suddenly.
He needs to <b>diet</b> .	He needs to go on a <b>diet</b> .
I'm going to <b>ring</b> him.	I'm going to give him a <b>ring</b> .
I <b>looked</b> in the paper.	I <b>had a look</b> in the paper.
I <b>dreamt</b> about you last night.	I <b>had a dream</b> about you last night.
We had to <b>queue</b> for half an hour.	We had to <b>wait in a queue</b> for half an hour.

# Exercises

## 9.1 What word is being defined? (The first letter has been given to you.)

- |   |        |
|---|--------|
| 1 Give an answer without knowing the facts      | g..... |
| 2 Eat less in order to lose weight              | d..... |
| 3 Wait in a line of people                      | q..... |
| 4 Kill someone                                  | m..... |
| 5 Telephone                                     | r..... |
| 6 Press your lips against another person's lips | k..... |
| 7 Have a casual conversation                    | c..... |
| 8 Images in your mind when you are sleeping     | d..... |

## 9.2 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined nouns as verbs. Change or add words if necessary.

*Example* There was a lot of rain yesterday.  
*It rained a lot yesterday.*

- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| 1 We had a long <u>wait</u> .                     | We .....   |
| 2 This apple has got a strange <u>taste</u> .     | This ..... |
| 3 We waited in the <u>queue</u> for half an hour. | We .....   |
| 4 The <u>cost</u> of the holiday was about £500.  | The .....  |
| 5 I wrote a <u>reply</u> to his letter yesterday. | I .....    |
| 6 She gave me a <u>smile</u> this morning.        | She .....  |

## 9.3 Rewrite these sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns. The meaning must stay the same.

*Example* They want to rest for a bit.  
*They want to have a rest for a bit.*

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 I'll <u>ring</u> him this evening.                 | I'll .....                    |
| 2 I'll <u>diet</u> if necessary.                     | I'll .....                    |
| 3 If you don't know, just <u>guess</u> .             | If you don't know, just ..... |
| 4 I <u>braked</u> but I still couldn't stop in time. | I .....                       |
| 5 I <u>dreamt</u> about my mother.                   | I .....                       |
| 6 Did you <u>look</u> in the paper?                  | Did you .....                 |

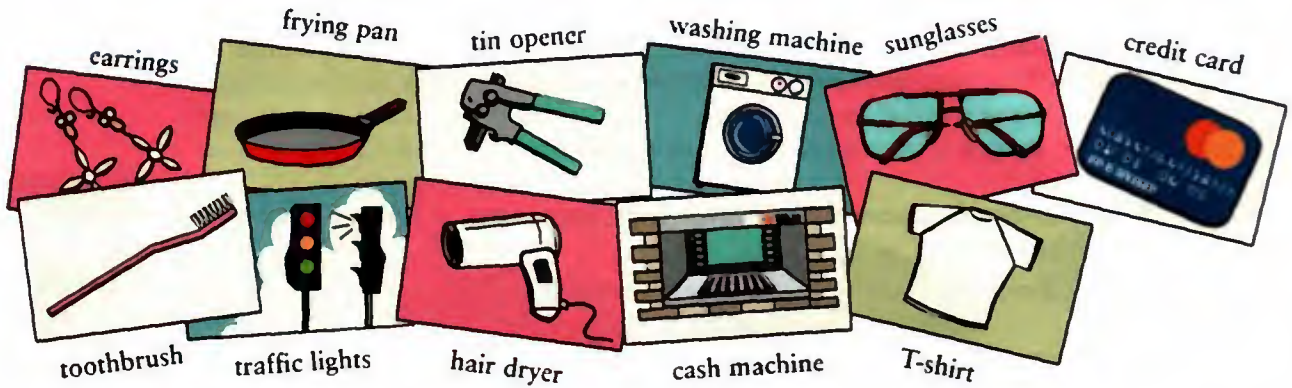
## 9.4 Sometimes the same word can be a verb and noun but the meaning changes. Read these pairs of sentences. Do the verb and noun have a similar meaning, or are they different in meaning?

- 1a We had a long wait for the bus.
- b If we wait any longer, we may miss the train.
- 2a I gave him the book.
- b Did you book the table in the restaurant?
- 3a They take a break after an hour's work.
- b Did he break his arm skiing?
- 4a I go for a run most mornings.
- b I was late so I had to run to get to school on time.

# Compound nouns

## A Formation

A compound noun is formed from two words, and occasionally three, to create a single new idea.



dining room (= room where you eat meals)

science fiction (= stories about the future)

writing paper (= paper for writing letters)

mother tongue (= your first language)

bus driver (= person who drives buses)

bus stop (= where buses stop for people to get on)

haircut (e.g. My hair's long; I need a haircut.)

traffic jam (= long line of cars moving very slowly)

babysitter (= person who looks after children when parents are out)

box office (= place where you buy cinema or theatre tickets)

travel agent (= job of a person who makes travel arrangements for us)

film star (e.g. Tom Cruise, Meg Ryan)

income tax (= tax you pay on your salary)

dishwasher (= machine for washing dishes)

brother-in-law (= your sister's husband or wife's brother)

## B One word or two?

Some short common compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. **bedroom**, **postman**; a few are written with a hyphen, e.g. **T-shirt**, **make-up** (= stuff you put on the face, often on lips and around eyes, to be more attractive); but most are written as two words, e.g. **credit card**, **bus stop**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

## C Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part, e.g. **post** office, **income** tax, but sometimes it is on both parts, e.g. **science** **fiction**, **mother** **tongue**. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

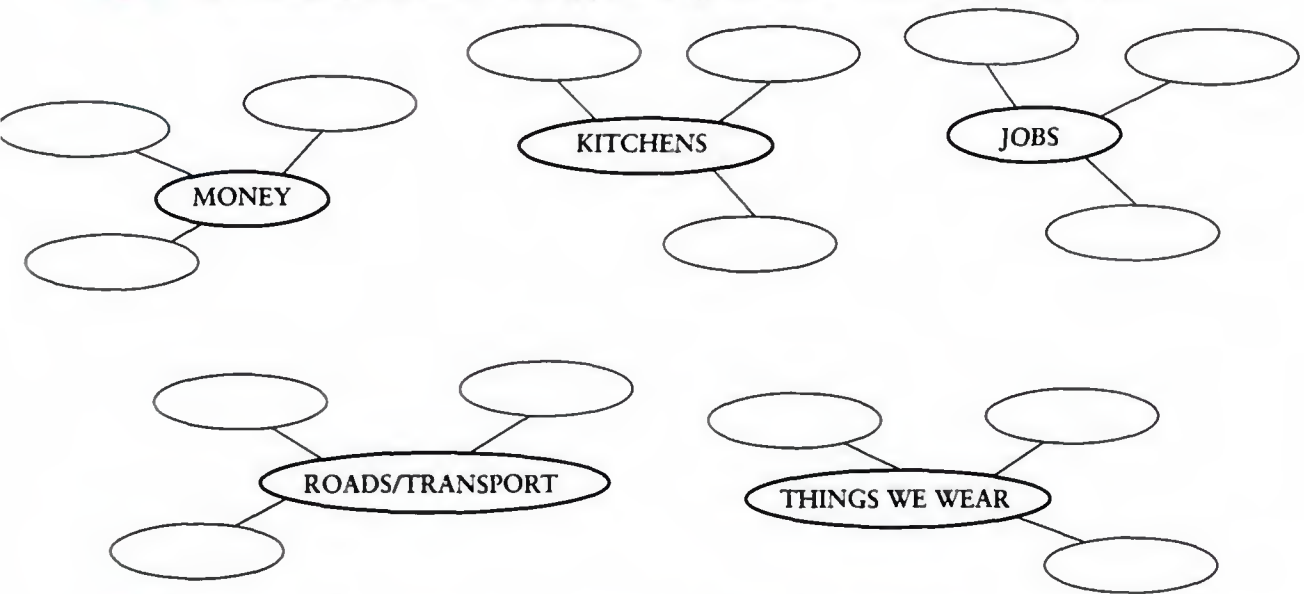
## D Forming new compounds

One part of a compound often forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

postman	film star	toothbrush	living room
postbox	pop star	toothpaste	waiting room
post office	rock star	toothache	chat room (= an area for communication on the internet)

# Exercises

10.1 Find compound nouns on the opposite page connected with each of these topics.



10.2 Complete each sentence with a suitable compound noun from the opposite page.

- 1 We booked our holiday through a *travel agent*.
- 2 I'm sorry I'm late. There was a terrible ..... on the motorway.
- 3 Humphrey Bogart was a famous ..... in the 1940s and 50s.
- 4 The ..... were red but he still didn't stop.
- 5 When I got to the dentist, I had to sit in the ..... for 40 minutes.
- 6 Mary wanted to go out, but she couldn't find a ..... for the children.
- 7 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
- 8 Most people have to pay ..... on their salary; the more you earn, the more you pay.
- 9 I washed my hair; then I discovered that the ..... wasn't working.
- 10 We waited at the ..... for 20 minutes, then three arrived at the same time.
- 11 My brother loves ..... , but I never read stuff like that about the future.
- 12 Your jeans were dirty so I put them in the ..... with mine.

10.3 Take one word (the first part or the second part) from each compound and create a new compound. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

Examples brother-in-law    mother-in-law  
                  postbox            post office

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1 dining room ..... | 5 traffic lights ..... |
| 2 film star .....   | 6 sunglasses .....     |
| 3 credit card ..... | 7 hair dryer .....     |
| 4 toothpaste .....  | 8 boyfriend .....      |

Now mark the main stress on each of the compound nouns you have created.

# Compound adjectives

## A Formation and pronunciation

A compound adjective is formed from two words, and occasionally three. The second part is often a present participle (e.g. *good-looking*) or a past participle (e.g. *well-known*). They usually have a hyphen before a noun, (e.g. a *well-known* actress, a *good-looking* man) and we usually pronounce both parts with equal stress.

## B Describing people

Many compound adjectives describe a person's appearance, character and situation.

This is Bill. He isn't **well known** (= famous), he isn't **well off** (= rich), and nobody says he's **good looking** (= very nice/attractive to look at). But he's a nice man – kind, friendly and easy going (= relaxed and easy to be with). Here he's wearing a **short-sleeved** shirt and a **brand-new** (= completely new) hat.



## C 'Well' and 'badly'

These adverbs combine with many past participles to form compound adjectives. We can use both of them with most of these participles, e.g. *well-paid* or *badly-paid* (NOT *badly-known*).

a **well-organised** team

a **well-equipped** computer room

a **well-written** story

a **well-known** writer (= famous)

a **well-paid** job (= good salary)

a **badly-behaved** child (= acting in a bad way)

a **badly-dressed** young man (= wearing old or

dirty clothes)

## D A 'five-minute' walk

We often combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective. The nouns in bold in these sentences, e.g. *walk*, *hotel* are often used with the particular adjectives.

It's a **ten-minute** walk to the shop. (= a walk of ten minutes)

He works in a **four-star** hotel. (= a hotel with a rating of four stars)

I gave her a **twenty-pound** note. (= a note with a value of twenty pounds)

Our flight finally left after a **two-hour** delay. (= the plane was two hours late)

The winner was a **ten-year-old** girl. (= a girl who is ten years old)

If you park your car there, you could get a **fifty-euro** fine. (= a penalty of €50 to pay for parking in the wrong place)

## E Common compounds

She used to have a **part-time** job – just mornings – but now she works **full time**.

Most people are **right handed**, but about 10% are **left handed**.

I went **first class** to Paris, but it was more expensive.

Mary bought a **second-hand** BMW. (= the car was not **brand new**, but new for her)

# Exercises

**11.1** Match words from the left-hand box with words from the right to form ten compounds.

Example *first-class*

first	well
easy	good
five	short
brand	second
part	left

new	known
class	time
looking	sleeved
hand	handed
going	star

**11.2** Complete the compound adjective in these sentences.

- 1 They were both wearing short-..... shirts.
- 2 Goran Ivanisevic is probably the most famous left-..... tennis player.
- 3 He's just bought a brand-..... car.
- 4 One girl was very badly ..... : she kept shouting and then threw food all over the floor
- 5 She's just got a .....-time job now. She works three hours a day, Monday to Thursday.
- 6 It was a very badly-..... article: terrible punctuation and lots of spelling mistakes.
- 7 They're very well ....., so they can go to expensive restaurants.
- 8 She's got a little shop near the market, where she sells second-..... things.
- 9 When I saw her, she was with a very good-..... man in a white suit.
- 10 Have you ever met a well-..... actor or politician?
- 11 I had a nice time with my cousin – he's good company and very easy .....
- 12 She has a seven-.....-old son.

**11.3** Find two examples to complete these compound adjectives.

- 1 well-<sup>known</sup>.....
- 2 .....-time
- 3 badly-.....
- 4 .....-handed

**11.4** Choose the most suitable noun to follow the adjectives in these sentences.

- 1 I stayed in a five-star ..... in London.
- 2 We didn't get to Malaga until midnight because we had a two-hour ..... at Heathrow.
- 3 She bought a paper and paid for it with a twenty-pound .....
- 4 It's just over a kilometre, so it's only about a fifteen-minute .....
- 5 I had to pay a forty-pound ..... for not having a parking ticket.

**11.5** Write about yourself using ten different compound adjectives from the opposite page. You can describe yourself, your personality, your family, your clothes, the place where you live, the journeys you make, etc. Compare your answers with someone else, if possible.



# Collocation (word partners)

## A What is collocation?

If you want to use a word naturally, you need to learn the other words that often go with it. This can be different from language to language. For example, in English we say:

I missed the bus. (= I didn't catch the bus) (NOT I ~~lost~~ the bus)

He had to go to hospital; it's a serious injury. (= a bad injury) (NOT a ~~grave~~ injury)

She was bitterly disappointed (= very disappointed/unhappy) with her exam result.

## B Verb + noun

The meaning of many of these examples may be clear, but did you know these verbs and nouns go together? Are they the same or different in your language?

start	{	a car (= turn on the engine)	tell	{	a story
		a family (= think about having a first child)			a joke (= a funny story)
					the truth ( <i>opp</i> tell a lie)

miss	{	a person (= be unhappy because a particular person is not there)
		a lesson (= not go to a lesson)

get on a bus (*opp* get off a bus)

waste time/money (= use it badly)

## C Adjective + noun

a soft { drink (= non-alcoholic drink)  
voice (*opp* a loud voice)

dry { wine (*opp* sweet wine)  
weather (*opp* wet weather)

a strong accent (*opp* a slight accent)  
(a) strong coffee (*opp* (a) weak coffee)

heavy { traffic (= a lot of cars on the road)  
rain (= raining a lot)  
smoker (= a person who smokes a lot)

hard work (= difficult physically or mentally)  
a hard question (= difficult to answer)

a great { success (= very successful)  
time (= an enjoyable time)

I can't understand his English because he has such a strong accent.

The conference was hard work but everyone said it was a great success.

There was heavy traffic in the city centre because of the wet weather.

We had a great time in Brazil – the beaches are fantastic.

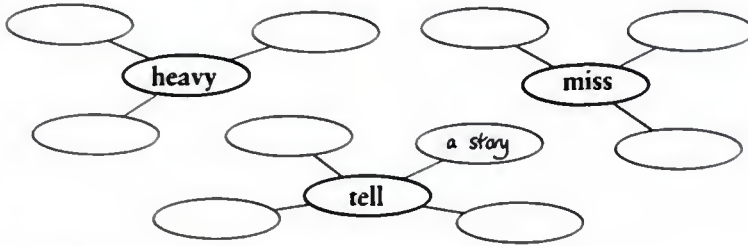
## D Adverb + adjective

The underlined adverbs in 1–3 mean *very*, the adverbs in 4–5 mean *fully/completely*. In each case, we often use these adverbs with the adjectives that follow them. Notice also the phrases in bold.

- 1 I'm terribly sorry to bother you (= to disturb you), but is Steven there?
- 2 She is well aware of the problem. (= she knows all about the problem)
- 3 It is vital important to make a note of common collocations in your notebook.
- 4 He's fast asleep. (= in a deep sleep)
- 5 She was wide awake (= fully awake) a minute ago.

# Exercises

12.1 You can keep a record of common collocations using diagrams. They are very clear on the page and you can add to them. Complete these.



12.2 Write the opposite.

- |                   |                 |                      |
|-------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| 1 get on the bus  | get off the bus | 5 an alcoholic drink |
| 2 a strong accent |                 | 6 tell the truth     |
| 3 strong coffee   |                 | 7 catch the bus      |
| 4 a soft voice    |                 | 8 sweet wine         |

12.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- I'm *terribly* ..... sorry I'm late, but I ..... the bus and had to wait ages for another one.
- He ..... everyone the same joke, and nobody laughed.
- We had snow in the night and I couldn't ..... the car this morning.
- Everyone said the party was a ..... success.
- I think they want to get married and ..... a family.
- We carried the suitcases up to the fourth floor, and it was very ..... work.
- It's ..... important that we finish this work by the end of the week.
- If this ..... rain continues, I don't think he'll come.
- I don't drink ..... coffee at night because it keeps me awake.
- I really ..... my family when I stayed in Australia on my own last year.
- I'm sure she is ..... aware of the problem.
- I ..... my time on that course; it was terrible.
- When I went into the children's room, the boys were both ..... asleep, but Angela was ..... awake, reading a Harry Potter story.

12.4 The adjectives on the left can all mean 'very big', but we often use them with the nouns on the right. Use a dictionary to find the correct collocations, and then complete the sentences below. You will need to look at the example sentences in the dictionary, perhaps at the adjectives and the nouns.

wide      vast  
large      broad

size      range  
shoulders      majority

- A: What ..... do you take?    B: Medium or .....
- Fortunately the shop I go to has a ..... of shirts and jumpers to choose from.
- I've got very ....., but my waist is quite small.
- A few men can't find clothes to fit them, but the ..... are small, medium or large.

# Idioms and fixed expressions

## A

### What is an idiom?

An idiom is a group of words with a meaning that is different from the individual words. Sometimes the meaning is easy to understand; sometimes it is difficult to understand from the individual words. These examples move from 'easy to understand' to 'more difficult to understand'.

I've **changed my mind** about those shoes. (= changed my decision or opinion)

I'm tired today because I had a **late night**. (= went to bed later than usual) (*opp* an early night)

I'm trying to write an essay but I'm **getting nowhere**. (= not making progress)

You find fast food restaurants **all over the place**. (= everywhere)

My wife and I **take it in turns** to cook. (= I cook one day, she cooks the next, etc.)

I'm sorry but I don't think I can **make it** (= come) on Friday. I'm really busy.

They asked us to **keep an eye on** (= watch/look after) the house while they're away.

I **feel like** (= want) a drink; I **feel like going out** this evening. (= want to go out)

We should **get rid of** some of this stuff. (= remove it/throw it away)

That boy really **gets on my nerves**. (= is very annoying; makes me angry)

The answer's **on the tip of my tongue**. (= I know it, but can't remember it at this moment)

## B

### Pairs of idioms

These pairs are related in meaning and sometimes they are used together.

**On the one hand/on the other hand** (= used to contrast opposite points of view)

I'm not sure about these new apartments. **On the one hand** they provide homes for people, which is good. But **on the other hand**, we have lost the only piece of open land in the area.

**In the short term/in the long term** (= a short or long period of time in the future)

**In the short term** we can manage here, but **in the long term** we will need a bigger place.

If we do this, it will be cheaper **in the long term**. (= over a long period of time)

**In theory/in practice** (used to contrast a general idea with reality)

**In theory** your plan looks very interesting; but **in practice**, it may be too expensive for us.

## C

### Common idioms

Some common idioms are used in everyday questions and replies.

A: Are you coming?

B: Yes, **hang on**. (= wait a minute)

A: **What's up?** (= What's the matter?)

B: Nothing.

A: I've forgotten to bring your book.

B: **Never mind**. (= it's OK, no problem)

A: Shall we go out?

B: Yeah, **if you like**. (= I am happy to do that)

A: Can I borrow your dictionary?

B: Sure, **go ahead**. (= help yourself; take it; do it)

A: I don't know which one to choose.

B: Well, **make up your mind**. (= make a decision)

A: What's the answer?

B: I **haven't a clue**. (= I don't know)

A: Would you prefer to stay in?

B: **It's up to you**. (= it's your decision)

# Exercises

## 13.1 Replace the underlined word(s) with an idiomatic phrase from the opposite page.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Is Rebecca here?<br>B: Yes, <u>wait a minute</u> . I'll get her.                     | 6 A: What's <u>the matter</u> ?<br>B: Nothing. Why?                                 |
| 2 A: How long does it take?<br>B: <u>I've no idea</u> .                                   | 7 A: Could you <u>look after</u> my things for a minute?<br>B: Yeah, sure.          |
| 3 A: Could I borrow this for a minute?<br>B: Yes, <u>take it</u> .                        | 8 A: Is John coming this evening?<br>B: No, I'm afraid he can't <u>come</u> .       |
| 4 A: I'm sorry I broke that glass.<br>B: <u>That's OK</u> . It's not important.           | 9 A: You'll have to <u>decide</u> soon.<br>B: Yes, I know, but it's very difficult. |
| 5 A: <u>Would you like to go to the cinema?</u><br>B: Yes, <u>I am happy to do that</u> . | 10 A: What time shall we leave?<br>B: I don't mind. It's <u>your decision</u> .     |

## 13.2 Complete the idioms in these sentences.

- 1 In the short ..... we don't need any help from the bank.
- 2 We take it in ..... to look after the dog.
- 3 Tell the children to be quiet – they're getting on my .....
- 4 The new traffic system sounds like a good idea in ..... ; but will it work?
- 5 Nowadays you can find internet cafés all over the .....
- 6 I planned to go to Greece for my holiday but I've changed my .....
- 7 I had to get ..... of all my magazines because they were taking up too much space.
- 8 What's in the fridge? I feel ..... something to eat.
- 9 I'm very tired this evening. I think I'll have an ..... night.
- 10 The answer was on the tip of my ..... but I just couldn't remember it.
- 11 It'll take us the whole day to drive to Scotland – the train is much faster. On the other ....., it'll be very convenient to have the car when we get there.
- 12 I'm ..... nowhere with this crossword; I just can't do any more.
- 13 I was going to invite my cousins, but I've ..... my mind.
- 14 I can't take all my furniture with me: I'll have to ..... rid of some of it.

## 13.3 It can be difficult to guess the meaning of an idiom, especially if you do not have the full context. Look at these examples (they are not presented on the opposite page).

- 1 The exam was a piece of cake.
- 2 They've gone for good.
- 3 I can make do with a small flat.

Here is a fuller context for the above idioms. Can you guess the meaning now?

- 1 A: Was the exam difficult?  
B: No, it was a piece of cake.
- 2 A: Do you think they'll ever come back to England?  
B: No, they've gone for good.
- 3 A: Do you really need a large flat?  
B: Well, it would be nice to have a big place, but I can probably make do with a small flat.

### A Verb + preposition

Some verbs are often followed by a particular preposition. Pay special attention to any that are different in your language.

I often **listen to** the radio.

Paul doesn't like it and I **agree with** him. (= have the same opinion)

I may go but it **depends on** the weather.

He **suffers from** (= has the illness of) a type of diabetes.

He **got married to** a girl he met in France. I don't know her name.

I think we should **apologise for** (= say sorry for) being late.

She has **applied for** (= made a written request for) a new job.

They were **waiting for** me at the airport.

Don't **worry** (= be nervous) **about** your exam; it'll be OK.

His teachers were **satisfied** (= pleased) **with** his progress.

She **complained** (= said she wasn't satisfied) **to** the manager **about** the food.

He **spends** a lot of money on clothes.

That dictionary **belongs to** Rolf. (= it is Rolf's dictionary)

They are going to **translate** the book **into** Spanish.

I'm **thinking of** going to France. (= it's a future possibility) [Used mostly in the continuous form.]

### B Prepositions that change the meaning



He **shouted to** me. (= to communicate from a distance)

He **threw** the ball **to** me. (= for me to catch it)



He **shouted at** me. (= he was angry)

Someone in the crowd **threw** a bottle **at** the police. (= in order to hit them; he was angry)

### C Adjective + preposition

I was never very good **at** mathematics. (*opp* bad at)

She is **afraid of** (= frightened of) flying.

I'm not very keen **on** fish. (= I don't like fish very much)

She is **similar to** (= in some ways the same as) her older sister, but very different from her brother.

He's very **interested in** photography.

I was **surprised at** (or **by**) the way he reacted – he's usually very calm.

I think she's **aware of** (= knows about) the problems in her class.

I'm **tired of** people telling me what to do. (= I've had enough and I want it to stop)

As it's the school holidays, the pool was **full of** children. (= lots of children in the pool)

There is something **wrong with** this TV. (= the TV is not working/functioning correctly)

# Exercises

## 14.1 Finish these questions with the correct preposition, then write a short answer for each one.

- |  |   |                           |
|--|---|---------------------------|
| 1 A: What exactly is she worried .....               | ? | B: <u>her exams</u> ..... |
| 2 A: What subjects is she good .....                 | ? | B: .....                  |
| 3 A: Who is she waiting .....                        | ? | B: .....                  |
| 4 A: What job is she applying .....                  | ? | B: .....                  |
| 5 A: What programme is she listening .....           | ? | B: .....                  |
| 6 A: What did she complain .....                     | ? | B: .....                  |
| 7 A: What did she apologise .....                    | ? | B: .....                  |
| 8 A: Who does this car belong .....                  | ? | B: .....                  |
| 9 A: I know she's angry but who's she shouting ..... | ? | B: .....                  |
| 10 A: What kind of films is she interested .....     | ? | B: .....                  |
| 11 A: What does the decision depend .....            | ? | B: .....                  |
| 12 A: What is she afraid .....                       | ? | B: .....                  |

## 14.2 Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the endings on the right.

- |                           |   |                               |
|---------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 He's tired              | — | a at me, but it missed.       |
| 2 She wasn't aware        |   | b for a job in Australia.     |
| 3 He threw the book       |   | c of working at weekends.     |
| 4 She complained          |   | d to the man across the lake. |
| 5 She said it was similar |   | e for the mistake.            |
| 6 She applied             |   | f at his choice.              |
| 7 She shouted             |   | g of clothes.                 |
| 8 He said it depends      |   | h to the one she has.         |
| 9 The suitcase was full   |   | i on that coat.               |
| 10 She spent over £200    |   | j of her mistakes.            |
| 11 She apologised         |   | k on the time they get there. |
| 12 I was very surprised   |   | l about the bad service.      |

## 14.3 Complete the sentences in a logical way. If possible, compare with someone else.

- My steak was overcooked, so I complained to the waiter about it.
- When I was a child I sometimes wore clothes that belonged .....
- Her teacher wasn't very satisfied .....
- In the summer a lot of people suffer .....
- I'm afraid there's something wrong .....
- The book is very successful and has been translated .....
- A lot of people are afraid .....
- I've always been interested .....
- I'm not very keen .....
- People in my country are very different .....
- For my next holiday, I'm thinking .....
- In the summer, places like Spain and Greece are full .....

## 14.4 A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition. Use a dictionary to find the preposition that often follows these words.

fond (adj)    concentrate (v)    rely (v)

### A Common patterns

Sometimes a preposition is used with a particular meaning in a number of expressions.

A book **by** Stephen King; a film **by** Steven Spielberg; a song **by** Elton John  
I heard it **on** the radio; I saw it **on** TV; we spoke **on** the phone (but I read it **in** the newspaper)

You can go **for** a walk, **for** a swim, **for** a drive, **for** a run

You can visit **in** the morning, **in** the afternoon, **in** the evening (but **at** night)

You can travel **by** car, **by** train, **by** plane, **by** bus (but **on** foot)

The man **in** the blue jumper, **in** the dark glasses (= wearing the blue jumper/dark glasses)

### B Fixed expressions

I took his pen **by** mistake. (= I thought it was my pen)

I did all the work **by** myself/**on** my own. (= without help from others)

The shoes are **made** **by** hand. (= not by machine)

The workers are **on** strike. (= they won't work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.)

I met them **by** chance. (= it wasn't a planned meeting; it was luck)

The children are **on** holiday. (= they are having a holiday)

There are two million **out** of work. (= without a job)

I think Marianne's **in** love with him. (= she loves him)

The building's **on** fire. (= it is burning)

Why are they always **in** a hurry? (= need to do things or go somewhere very quickly)



He broke the plate **by** accident. (= he did not want to do it; it was a mistake)



He broke the plate **on** purpose. (= he wanted to do it and intended to do it)

### C 'In time' or 'on time'?

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and the students are usually here **on** time. (= at 8.30)

If we hurry, we'll be there **in** time. (= before the time we need to be there; we won't be late)

We were tired of waiting, so **in** the end we went home. (= finally, after a long period)

**At** the end of the book they get married. (= in the last part)

The two men have been **in** business (= worked as businessmen) for many years.

They're both **in** Germany **on** business. (= they are there for work, not a holiday)

I'll see you **in** a moment. (= very soon)

I can't speak to you **at** the moment. (= right now/at this moment)

# Exercises

## 15.1 Complete these sentences with the correct preposition. Cover the opposite page first.

- |                                 |                                     |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I saw it ..... TV.            | 11 I went ..... the afternoon.      |
| 2 They came ..... car.          | 12 He came ..... foot.              |
| 3 They are all ..... strike.    | 13 The clothes are made ..... hand. |
| 4 He is here ..... business.    | 14 She broke it ..... accident.     |
| 5 I did it ..... my own.        | 15 He did it ..... purpose.         |
| 6 It was written ..... Goethe.  | 16 I'll see you ..... a moment.     |
| 7 We went ..... a walk.         | 17 She's always ..... a hurry.      |
| 8 I read it ..... a magazine.   | 18 It's very quiet ..... night.     |
| 9 He's ..... holiday this week. | 19 We met ..... chance.             |
| 10 She took it ..... mistake.   | 20 I think they're ..... love.      |

## 15.2 Replace the underlined words with a suitable phrase from the opposite page.

*Example* The meeting was planned for 11 and we got there at 11.  
The meeting was planned for 11 and we got there *on time*.

- 1 I wrote the reports without help from anyone else.
- 2 Did you get to the cinema before the film started?
- 3 Most of the factory is burning.
- 4 She's making a phone call.
- 5 I saw the advertisement when I was watching TV last night.
- 6 He opened her letter because he thought it was addressed to him.
- 7 It was a very long journey but finally we got there.
- 8 He gets killed in the last scene of the film.
- 9 I'm afraid I'm very busy right now.
- 10 I saw her yesterday but we didn't plan to meet.

## 15.3 Respond to these questions using a suitable prepositional phrase. Look at the example first.

*Example* A: Was it the man wearing the blue shirt?  
B: No, the one *in the white shirt*.

- 1 A: Did she hit him on purpose?  
B: No, she did it .....
- 2 A: Did the others help him?  
B: No, he did it .....
- 3 A: Did they go by car?  
B: No, they went .....
- 4 A: Are they here on holiday?  
B: No, they're here .....
- 5 A: Did you read about the accident in the newspaper?  
B: No, I heard about it .....
- 6 A: Has he got a job at the moment?  
B: No, I'm afraid he's .....
- 7 A: Did they fly?  
B: No, they went .....
- 8 A: Do they really like each other that much?  
B: Yes, they're ..... . Isn't that sweet?



# Apologies, excuses and thanks

## A Apologies (= saying sorry)

We can apologise (= say sorry) in different ways in different situations.

	<i>situation</i>
(I'm) sorry. I'm (very/terribly) sorry. I beg your pardon. ( <i>fml</i> )	When you close the door in someone's face, or sit in someone's seat
I'm sorry to disturb you. I'm sorry I'm late.	When you interrupt/speak to someone who is working When you are late for an appointment
(I'm) sorry to keep you waiting.	Someone is waiting to see you and you are busy. You can also say: I won't be long. (= I will be free soon)

In formal situations we often use apologise and apology.

I must apologise for being late. I would like to apologise for the delay. Unfortunately, ...

Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending out your order.

[a common phrase in business letters]

## B Excuses and promises

### NOTE

**Be/get delayed** means to be late because of a problem that you cannot control.

If the situation is important we can give an explanation or excuse after the apology. An excuse is the reason for the apology – it may or may not be true.

I'm sorry I'm late, but I was delayed/got held up at the airport.

I'm sorry I'm late, but my train was cancelled. (= the train was on the timetable but did not run)

If you are responsible for a problem, you can offer or promise to do something about it.

I'm sorry about the mess in here – I'll clear it up. (= I will make everything tidy/in order)

I'm sorry about the confusion over the plans – I'll sort it out. (= I will solve the problems)

## C Reassuring people

When people apologise to us, it is common to reassure them (= tell them that 'everything is OK'). Sometimes we use two expressions to emphasise that 'it's OK'.

A: I'm sorry I'm late.

A: I'm afraid I forgot to bring the books.

B: That's OK. Don't worry.

B: Never mind. It doesn't matter.

## D Thanks and replies

These are the most common ways of thanking people in everyday situations, with typical replies.

A: Here are the books you wanted.

A: I'll answer that.

B: Oh, thank you (very much).

B: Oh, thanks (a lot).

A: That's OK.

A: No problem.

A: I'll post those letters for you.

B: Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you. [This is polite and a bit more formal.]

# Exercises

## 16.1 Complete these dialogues with a suitable word. Contractions (e.g. I'm) count as one word.

- 1 A: I'm very ..... sorry.  
B: That's OK.
- 2 A: I'm sorry ..... late. The 7.30 train was ..... and I had to catch the 7.50.  
B: That's OK. No .....
- 3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting.  
B: That's OK. Never .....
- 4 A: I think the boss has got a real problem with this contract.  
B: Yes, but I'm sure he'll ..... it out.
- 5 A: I've got your CDs.  
B: Oh, thanks a .....
- 6 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting.  
B: That's OK. It doesn't .....
- 7 A: I'm busy right now but I won't be .....
- 8 A: I'll carry your bags for you.  
B: Thanks. That's very ..... of you.
- 9 A: I ..... your pardon.  
B: That's OK. No .....
- 10 A: I'm sorry ..... the room; it's very untidy.  
B: That's OK. I'll clear it ..... later.



## 16.2 What could you say in these situations? (If it is an apology, give an explanation.)

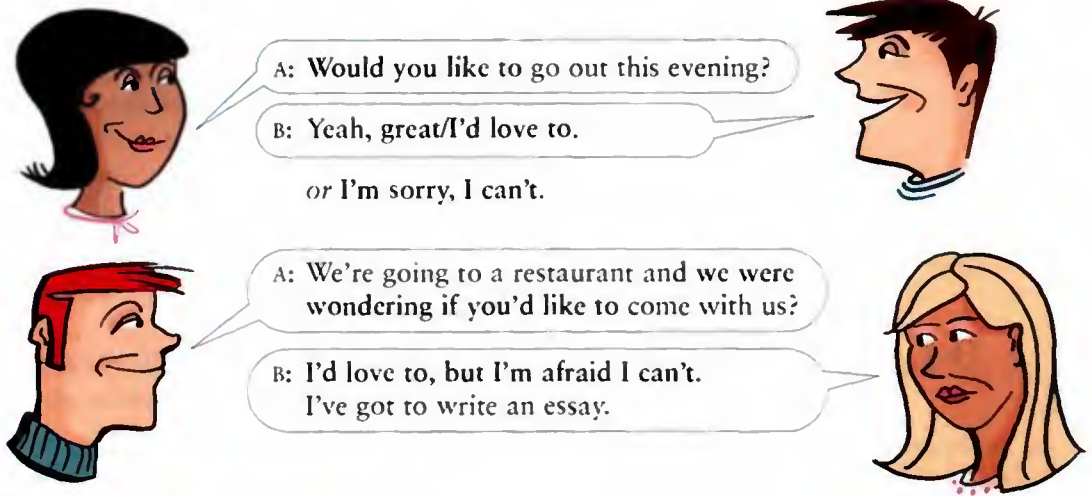
- 1 You get on a bus at the same time as another person and he/she almost falls over.  
I'm terribly sorry. / I beg your pardon. I didn't see you there.
- 2 You arrange to meet friends in the centre of town but you are 20 minutes late.  
.....
- 3 Your car has broken down. You're pushing it to the side of the road and a stranger offers to help.  
.....
- 4 A friend borrows a pen, then loses it. When they apologise, you want to reassure them.  
.....
- 5 You need to see your boss, but she's busy. What do you say as you go into her office?  
.....
- 6 A colleague at work tells you that a number of files are in the wrong order and he doesn't know what to do. When he apologises, how can you reassure him, and what can you offer to do?  
.....
- 7 You were unable to go to a meeting with a client. Now you phone to explain.  
.....
- 8 Your company promised to send some information about new products to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and must now write to explain.  
.....

## A Requests and replies

Notice that the phrases get longer when the requests get bigger.

- 1 A: Could you pass me the salt?          A: Could I possibly borrow your dictionary?  
B: Yeah, sure.                              B: Yes, help yourself. (= yes, take it)
- 2 A: Do you think you could (possibly) lend me two or three pounds?  
B: Yeah, sure.    or    No, I'm afraid I can't. } I haven't got any money on me. (= with me)  
   No, I'm afraid not.
- 3 A: I was wondering if I could (possibly) leave work half an hour early today?  
B: Yeah, no problem.    or    Well, it's a bit difficult (actually), because ...

## B Invitations and replies



## C Suggestions and replies

Suggestions are ideas for things to do/say/make, etc.

*Asking for suggestions*

What shall we do tonight?

Where shall we go this evening?

What do you fancy doing (= want to do) this evening? (*informal*; notice the *-ing* form after fancy)

*Making suggestions*

How about (or What about) going to the cinema? (notice the *-ing* form)

Perhaps we could just get a pizza or something like that.

Why don't we try that new club in the main square?

Do you fancy going to that Italian restaurant? [This can be a suggestion or an invitation.]

*Replies*

Positive: Yeah, great/fine/that's a good idea/that sounds great.

Neutral: Yeah, if you like. (= if you want to go, then I am happy to go)  
Yes, I don't mind. (= it's OK for me) (~~NOT for me it's the same~~)

Negative: I think I'd rather (= I would prefer to) stay in and watch TV.

# Exercises

## 17.1 Correct the mistakes in this dialogue. There are six, including the example.

- Would*  
A: ~~Do~~ you like to go out this evening?  
B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.  
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about go to see a film?  
B: No, I think I'd rather to stay in and do my homework.  
A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: OK. We could go tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, great.  
A: Right. What film shall we see?  
B: For me it's the same.

## 17.2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable word. Contractions (e.g. *isn't*) count as one word.

- A: Could you ...*possibly*..... open that window? It's very hot in here.  
B: Yeah, .....
- A: Clive and Sally are here at the moment and we were ..... if you'd like to come over for a meal this evening?  
B: Yes, I'd ..... to.
- A: What do you ..... doing this evening?  
B: I don't know really. Any ideas?  
A: Why ..... we go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.  
B: Yeah, that's a great .....
- A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?  
B: How ..... going to the beach if the weather's nice?  
A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.  
B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.  
A: Yeah, OK, if you .....
- A: What ..... you like to do this weekend?  
B: I don't ..... . You decide.

## 17.3 Respond to each of these requests, invitations and suggestions. If possible, do this activity with someone else: one of you asks the questions, the other answers.

- Could I borrow a pen for a minute?
- Do you think you could post a letter for me?
- I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me?
- Would you like to go out this evening?
- I've got some tickets for a concert. Do you fancy coming with me?
- How about going to a football match at the weekend?
- Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English for an hour?
- We could invite some other people from our English class to meet us as well.
- I know you're busy but could you help me with this essay?
- Do you fancy going to the cinema?

# Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

## A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book/girlfriend? (= asking about a specific person/thing)  
 What do you think about cosmetic surgery? (= asking about a general topic)  
 How do you feel about working with the others?

## B Introducing your own opinion

(Personally) I think Paula was probably right.  
 (Personally) I **don't think it's** a good idea. (NOT I ~~think it's not~~ a good idea)  
 In my opinion we need to change the direction of the company. [This is more formal.]

## C Having strong opinions

These adjectives are common when we give opinions.  
 I thought it was a **brilliant** idea. (= a fantastic idea)  
 She thought the pictures were **disgusting**. (= terrible, very unpleasant, not acceptable)  
 His plan is just **ridiculous**. (= absurd and stupid)  
 I think it's a really **original** book. (= new and different from anything else)

## D Giving the opinion of others

According to the newspaper (= in the opinion of the paper), she knew nothing about it.  
 The newspaper says the President knew weeks ago. (NOT It ~~is written~~ in the newspaper.)

## E Agreeing with someone

If we want to show we agree with someone, we can do it like this:  
 A: I think we should put the money in the bank.  
 B: Yes, I agree (with you). or Yes, I think you're (absolutely) right.

## F Disagreeing with someone

It is common to begin by agreeing before you give a different opinion.

possibly, but don't you think ...  
 Yes, perhaps/maybe, but I'm not sure that ...  
 you could be right, but don't forget ...

If we disagree but not completely, we often use these expressions:  
 Yes, I see what you mean, but ...  
 Yes, I take your point, but ...

## G Strong disagreement

I totally disagree (with you).  
 I'm afraid I don't agree (with you) at all.

# Exercises

**18.1** Complete these questions in three different ways to ask people their opinion.

- 1 ..... these shoes? Do they look OK?
- 2 ..... the plan to change the examination system?
- 3 ..... having more responsibility?

**18.2** Fill the gaps with a suitable word from the opposite page.

- 1 A: What did you think ..... the film?  
B: Well, ..... I didn't like it.
- 2 ..... to the radio this morning, we won't know the result until tomorrow.
- 3 Yes, I take your ....., but I still think the book was too long.
- 4 I ..... disagreed with her, which is unusual.
- 5 I know she has very strong ..... on this subject – she talks about it all the time.

**18.3** Rewrite these sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 I think you're right. AGREE  
I agree with you.
- 2 I think the club needs new players. OPINION  
.....
- 3 I totally disagree with you. AT ALL  
.....
- 4 The newspaper says terrorists started the fire. ACCORDING  
.....
- 5 Yes, I take your point, but I'm not sure I agree. MEAN  
Yes, I .....
- 6 How do you feel about giving children more freedom? THINK  
.....

**18.4** Match the words on the left with the correct definition on the right.

- |              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 disgusting | a absurd and stupid            |
| 2 ridiculous | b fantastic                    |
| 3 original   | c terrible and very unpleasant |
| 4 brilliant  | d new and different            |

**18.5** Continue these conversations. You can agree and add another reason, or disagree and add a different point of view. Remember, if you disagree, start with a short expression of agreement first. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.







- 1 A: A lot of women are very happy to stay at home and be housewives.  
B: .....
- 2 A: The state shouldn't give money to people who don't want to work.  
B: .....
- 3 A: People from developing countries need all the help we can give them.  
B: .....

# Likes, preferences and interests

## A What do you like?

### NOTE

Most verbs and expressions on the left can also be followed by an *-ing* form:  
 I love driving;  
 I don't mind working at the weekend.

 	<i>agree</i> 	<i>disagree</i> 
 I love rock music. I'm really into dance music. ( <i>informal</i> ) I like a lot of pop music. I quite like salsa and samba. I don't mind jazz. I'm not very keen on folk music. I don't like reggae.	So do I/me too. So am I/me too. So do I/me too. So do I/me too. Yeah, it's OK. Neither am I/me neither. Neither do I/me neither.	Really? I don't. Really? I'm not. Do you? I hate it. Oh, I'm not very keen on it. Oh, I can't stand it. Really? I love it. Oh, I quite like it.
 I can't stand opera. I hate classical music. (= I dislike it very much)	Neither can I/me neither. So do I/me too.	Really? I quite like it. Oh, I really like it.

## B And things like that

We can describe a list of things, e.g. likes or dislikes, with one or two examples, then finish with general phrases like these. We can also use them to ask about likes or dislikes.

She's very keen on poetry and drama and **that sort of thing**.

I try to eat healthy food – simple pasta and salads, and **stuff like that**.

My husband likes boxing and wrestling, but I hate **things like that**.

What kind of **things/sort of stuff** do you like?

## C Look forward to

I'm looking forward to going home. (= pleased and excited about going home soon)

I always look forward to my birthday. (= pleased and excited when it is going to happen)

I'm not looking forward to the exams because I haven't done much work.

I look forward to hearing from you. [This is a common way to end a formal letter.]

## D Which do you prefer?

*In general*

A: Which do you prefer, tea or coffee?

B: I prefer coffee to tea in the morning. But in the afternoon I usually drink tea.

*Specific occasion*

A: We can go to the cinema or the theatre – it doesn't matter. Which would you prefer?

B: I'd prefer to go to the cinema. or I'd rather go to the cinema.

'I'd rather' is the same as 'I'd prefer to', but is more common in spoken English.

## E What are you interested in?

A: Are you interested in Latin American music?

B: Yes, very (much). or No, not really. or No, it doesn't interest me (at all).

# Exercises

## 19.1 Correct the mistakes in these dialogues (one mistake in each).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: I love modern art.<br>B: Yes, so I do.                    | 5 A: Do you like tea?<br>B: Yes, but I prefer coffee than tea.       |
| 2 A: Do you like this?<br>B: Yes, I like very much.            | 6 A: Does he like football?<br>B: No, he's not interesting in sport. |
| 3 A: Would you like to go out?<br>B: No, I'd prefer stay here. | 7 A: I don't like his new CD.<br>B: No, so do I.                     |
| 4 I'm looking forward to see you next week.                    | 8 I don't mind to help them.   |

## 19.2 Complete the phrases in bold in these sentences.

- My sister loves Robbie Williams, but I **can't** ..... him.
- He likes windsurfing and waterskiing and **that sort of** .....
- They're not very **keen** ..... sightseeing.
- Do you really enjoy things ..... **that**?
- Are you looking** ..... to your holiday?
- I love the cinema, but this particular film **doesn't** ..... me at all.
- Carole is **really** ..... modern art at the moment. Personally, I hate it.
- (*formal letter*) We look forward to ..... from you.

## 19.3 Rewrite the sentences using the word on the right. The meaning must stay the same.

- |  |            |
|--|------------|
| 1 I hate these new shoes.<br><u>I can't stand these new shoes.</u> | STAND      |
| 2 I think they'd prefer to go home.<br>.....                       | RATHER     |
| 3 I don't find his books interesting.<br>.....                     | INTEREST   |
| 4 I don't really like that sort of thing.<br>.....                 | THINGS     |
| 5 I find archaeology very interesting.<br>.....                    | INTERESTED |
| 6 I think the new building is OK.<br>.....                         | MIND       |

## 19.4 Agree with each of these sentences using 'so' or 'neither' and the correct verb.

- |  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| 1 I love this ice cream. <i>So do I.</i> | 4 I can't work with music on. |
| 2 I like strawberries.                   | 5 I'm single.                 |
| 3 I don't like cold tea.                 | 6 I'm not married.            |

Now write 'me too' or 'me neither' next to each of your answers.

## 19.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Compare with someone else if possible.

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| I really like ..... and ..... | I'm looking forward to .....     |
| and things like that.         | I'm not looking forward to ..... |
| I don't mind .....            | I'm interested in .....          |
| I can't stand .....           | ..... doesn't interest me.       |
| I prefer ..... to .....       |                                  |



# Frequently asked questions

It will help you to learn these common questions as fixed expressions.

## A Personal questions

questions	possible answers
Where are you from? Where do you come from?	Italy.
What do you do? (= What's your job?)	I'm a film director.
What are you doing at the moment?	I'm making a film.
Are you married?	No, I'm single.
How old are you? (= What's your age?)	I'm 27.
What's your address/phone number?	It's ...

## B Everyday questions

### NOTE

The last two constructions are very similar in meaning. Often you can use either, but remember not to confuse the forms. (*How's ...?* and *What's ... like?* NOT *How's it like?*)

questions	typical answers
How are you? or How's it going? ( <i>informal</i> )	Fine, thanks. or Not bad. How about you?
What are you doing this evening?	Nothing special/much. (= I have no plans)
What's the matter? (= What's the problem?)	Nothing. Why?
Have you got the time? (= Do you know the time?)	Yeah, it's five past three.
How much is that (necklace)? (= what's the price?)	It's £35.99.
What sort/kind of (cheese do you like)?	I like most cheese – especially hard cheese.

How was (the party)? (= tell me your opinion of it)

What's (the flat) like? (= describe it to me and tell me what you think of it)

## C Place and distance

A: I live in Italy.

B: Whereabouts? (= where exactly in Italy)

A: How far is it? (= what distance is it?)

B: About ten miles.

A: How do I get to the (railway station)?

B: Sorry, I don't know.

## D 'Time' questions

SITUATION: You are on holiday in Ireland for two weeks. On the evening of the fourth day you meet someone in a bar. These are typical questions they may ask you.

questions	answers
How long have you been here?	Four days.
How long are you staying? } How long are you here for? }	Two weeks. or Another ten days.
How much longer are you staying?	Ten days.
Is this the first time you've been to (Dublin)?	Yes, it is. or No, I've been before. I came ...

# Exercises

## 20.1 Complete each dialogue with a suitable word.

- 1 A: What do you do ?  
B: I make TV programmes.
- 2 A: Are you ..... ?  
B: No, I'm married, actually.
- 3 A: What are you doing this evening?  
B: Nothing ..... . Why?
- 4 A: How do I ..... to the Tourist Information Office from here?  
B: I'm sorry, I don't know.
- 5 A: ..... was the film like?  
B: Brilliant.
- 6 A: They've been in the flat for a year now.  
B: Yeah. And how much ..... are they planning to stay?
- 7 A: ..... was the lecture?  
B: Very interesting.
- 8 A: What ..... of car does he drive?  
B: I don't know.

## 20.2 Here are some answers. What could the questions be?

- 1 I'm a doctor. *What do you do?*
- 2 Yes, it's almost four o'clock.
- 3 I'm 23 next month.
- 4 It's about five kilometres.
- 5 Usually French or Italian, but occasionally Chinese food.
- 6 Sorry, I don't know. I'm a stranger here myself.
- 7 It's very large – there are six bedrooms and the kitchen is fabulous.
- 8 I have no plans at all. I'll probably watch TV.
- 9 We arrived last Sunday.

## 20.3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a word or phrase of similar meaning.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 A: How long are you <u>staying</u> ? <i>here for</i><br>B: Two weeks. | 4 A: <u>How's your steak</u> ?<br>B: Oh, it's delicious.         |
| 2 A: How <u>are you</u> ?<br>B: Fine. And you?                          | 5 A: Is this <u>your first visit</u> to Spain?<br>B: Yes, it is. |
| 3 A: <u>Where exactly</u> do you live in Italy?<br>B: In Rome.          | 6 A: What's the <u>problem</u> ?<br>B: Nothing.                  |

## 20.4 You are on holiday in Prague. Complete this conversation with a person you meet on the third day.

- A: How ..... here?  
B: Just a couple of days.  
A: Really? And ..... ?  
B: Until next Friday.  
A: Is this the ..... ?  
B: No, I came last year.

# Common responses

## A

### Short responses

<i>questions</i>	<i>short response</i>
Are you going to the party tonight? Is Tom going to meet us?	I think so. <i>or</i> I don't think so./I doubt it. Yes, I hope so. (= I don't know but I want it to happen)
Is it going to rain?	I hope not. ( <del>NOT I don't hope so</del> )
Are you working this weekend?	I'm afraid so. (= Unfortunately, I am)
Can you come to the match?	I'm afraid not. (= I'm sorry, but no I can't)

## B

### Responding with interest and enthusiasm (= strong feeling of interest and enjoyment)

<i>statements</i>	<i>enthusiastic responses</i>
She finally got her visa to travel.	Really? That's great.
He's passed his driving test.	Oh, that's brilliant.
We're going camping in Greece.	Oh, that sounds wonderful.
I'm going to meet some actors.	Really? That sounds interesting.
They're having a baby.	Oh, how fantastic.
I've got a new job.	Wow! How exciting.

We can respond to bad news using the same constructions but different adjectives.

Really? That's dreadful.    Oh, that sounds terrible.    Oh, no. How awful.

## C

### Responding with disappointment

I can't go to the party this evening.  
Sam isn't feeling well, so he's staying here.

I think it's going to rain for our picnic.

Oh, what a pity/that's a pity.  
Oh, what a shame/that's a shame.  
(= what a pity)  
Oh, what a nuisance/pain. [We use this when we are angry about a situation.]

## D

### Responses of agreement

These responses all agree to do something, or they permit the speaker to choose and make the decision. The way we say these phrases makes it clear if we are happy or unhappy.

What time shall we go?	Whenever you like. (= We can go when you want)
What do you want to do?	Whatever you like.
Where shall we put these chairs?	Wherever you like.
Do you want to go out?	I don't mind. (= I am happy to go out, or stay in)
Shall we take a taxi?	Yeah, if you like. (= that's OK with me)

## E

### Remember to respond!

It is important to show you are listening. These are common ways we do it.

mmm    uh huh    yeah    OK    I know    sure    right/I see (= I understand)

# Exercises

**21.1** Check the pronunciation of the underlined words in the Index at the back of the book. Practise saying the phrases.

I doubt it.      I'm afraid so.      Oh, what a nuisance.      That sounds dreadful.

**21.2** Complete the last word of these dialogues. Practise them with a partner if possible.

- 1 A: Can we still get tickets?  
B: I hope .....
- 2 A: Are you working tomorrow?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid .....
- 3 A: Is the price going up?  
B: Well, it's already expensive, so I hope .....
- 4 A: Are you going?  
B: I doubt .....
- 5 A: Are there any left?  
B: I don't think .....
- 6 A: Have you got any change for the coffee machine?  
B: I'm afraid .....

**21.3** Choose the best response on the right for each of the questions or statements on the left.

- |   |                          |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1 Tom can't come because he's working.      | a Whenever you like.     |
| 2 We're staying in a very expensive hotel.  | b I'm afraid so.         |
| 3 Do you want to watch the end of the film? | c Oh, what a pity.       |
| 4 Does he often get angry like this?        | d Oh, that's a nuisance. |
| 5 We can't get in – Joe's got the key.      | e Yeah, if you like.     |
| 6 What time do you want to start?           | f Oh, that sounds great. |

**21.4** Replace the underlined word or phrase with another word or phrase that has the same meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A: She's ill.<br>B: Oh, what a <u>pity</u> .                 | 4 A: Is it still busy at this time of year?<br>B: No, I <u>don't think so</u> . |
| 2 A: Do you want to go?<br>B: <u>I don't mind</u> .            | 5 A: What do you want to do?<br>B: <u>I don't mind</u> .                        |
| 3 A: We're going on Concorde.<br>B: Oh <u>that's</u> exciting. | 6 A: He fell off his bike and broke his arm.<br>B: Oh, <u>how awful</u> .       |

**21.5** Respond to these statements in a suitable way. Practise with someone else if possible.

- 1 I'm going to spend three weeks in Australia.
- 2 Alex has lost your watch.
- 3 Do you want to finish this later?
- 4 Where shall we go?
- 5 I've just won £1,000.
- 6 I can't go tomorrow. I have to work.
- 7 Peter has lost his wallet with all his credit cards.
- 8 I wanted to speak to Karen, but she's out all day.

# Greetings, farewells and special expressions

## A Greetings: 'hello'

How do you do? *or*  
Hello. Nice to meet you.

Hi/Hello. How are you?

Good morning, good  
afternoon, good evening

Used in formal situations when you meet someone for the first time. The reply can also be **How do you do?** or **Pleased/nice to meet you.**

A common greeting when you meet someone you already know. (Also **How's it going?** *infml*) The usual reply is: **Fine, thanks. And you?** Or possibly: **Not bad. How about you?** These expressions are used at different times of the day (most people say **Good morning** until lunchtime). British people do not usually say **Good day**, but Australians do.

## B Farewells: 'goodbye'

Nice to meet you. *or*  
Nice to have met you.  
See you later/tomorrow.

Bye. See you soon.

Goodnight.

A: Have a nice weekend.  
B: Yes. Same to you.

In formal situations, when you say goodbye to someone you have just met for the first time.

If you plan to see someone you know later the same day/ the next day.

You know you will see someone again, but have no plans to meet them.

When you say goodbye to someone late at night, or if you (or they) are going to bed.

When you say goodbye to a colleague/friend on Friday afternoon. You can also reply: **You too.**

## C Happy occasions and celebrations

Happy Birthday

To someone on his/her birthday. You can also say **Many happy returns.**

Happy/Merry Christmas

To someone just before or on Christmas Day (25 December).

Happy New Year

To someone at the beginning of the year.

Congratulations

To someone who has just achieved something, e.g. passed an exam, got a job, etc. We can also say **Well done.**

## D Expressions for special situations

Excuse me a To get someone's attention, e.g. **Excuse me.** Is this your hat?

b When you want to get past other people (on a bus or in a crowded room).

c To tell others you are going to leave the room.

Sorry a To say sorry, e.g. you stand on someone's foot.

b When you want someone to repeat what they said. (With this meaning, the voice must rise at the end of the word.)

Cheers Used to express good wishes when you have a drink with other people.

Informally it can also mean 'goodbye' and 'thank you'.

Good luck To wish someone well before a difficult situation, e.g. exam or job interview.

Bless you To someone when they sneeze. They can reply: **Thank you.**

### NOTE

There is no special phrase when people start eating. In restaurants, waiters may say: **Enjoy your meal.**

# Exercises

## 22.1 What message could you write in a card to these people?

- 1 A friend. Next week is 25 December. *Happy Christmas*
- 2 A friend who is 21 tomorrow.
- 3 A friend. It will be 1 January in three days' time.
- 4 A very good friend who has just passed some important exams.
- 5 A friend who is going to take his driving test in three days' time.
- 6 A friend you will visit when you return from your holiday, but you're not sure when.

## 22.2 Complete the conversations in a suitable way.



## 22.3 What could you say in these situations?

- 1 You are in a meeting. Someone enters the room and says you have an important telephone call. What do you say as you leave? *Excuse me. I won't be long.*
- 2 Someone says something to you but you didn't hear all of it. What do you say?
- 3 You met a new business client for the first time 15 minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say?
- 4 You are in a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them?
- 5 You are staying with some English friends. What do you say to them when you leave the room in the evening to go to bed?
- 6 You are in the street. A woman walks past you and at the same time something falls out of her bag. She has her back to you. What do you say?
- 7 A friend tells you they have just won some money.
- 8 Another friend is going for a job interview this afternoon.

## 22.4 When do we use these expressions? Do you have similar ones in your language?

Hard luck.    Say 'cheese'.    Watch out!    Keep your fingers crossed.

# Phrasal verbs (I): form and meaning

## A Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb + adverb or preposition, and occasionally a verb + adverb and preposition.

The price of petrol is **going up** (= increasing) again.

He **fell over** (= fell to the ground) and hurt his knee.

She's trying to **find out** (= learn/discover) the name of that new hotel.

Who's going to **look after** (= take care of) the children when their mother is in hospital?

If you don't understand the meaning, **look it up**. (= find the meaning in a dictionary)

He doesn't **get on with** (= have a good relationship with) his parents. (verb + adv + prep)

## B Meaning

Sometimes the adverb or preposition doesn't change the meaning, but makes it sound more natural.

I didn't **wake up** until 7 o'clock.

I'm **saving up** for a new computer.

**Hurry up** or we'll be late.

She **stood up** and went over to the door.

Sit **down** and be quiet.

He told me to **lie down** on the bed.

Sometimes an adverb adds a particular meaning. For example, **back** can mean 'return'.

I'm going to **take that jacket back** to the shop; it's too small.

You can look at the books but remember to **put them back** on the shelf.

More often, the adverb or preposition changes the meaning of the verb: 'take off' doesn't mean the same as 'take', and 'get on' doesn't mean the same as 'get'. Here are some examples:

It took her a long time to **get over** (= get better/recover from) her illness.

We'll take a short break and then **carry on** (= continue) with the meeting.

My wife has decided to **give up** (= stop) smoking.

I can't make any sandwiches – we've **run out of** bread. (= no bread is left; it is finished)

I've told them we can't **put the meeting off**. (= change the time of the meeting to a later date)

## C Multiple meanings

Be careful: many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

It was so hot I had to **take off** (= remove) my jacket.

I'm always nervous when the plane **takes off**. (= leaves the ground)

I've got a lot of work to **get through** (= finish) before Friday.

I tried phoning him, but I couldn't **get through**. (= make contact and talk to him)

My alarm clock didn't **go off** (= ring) this morning.

The bomb could **go off** (= explode) at any minute. [See picture.]

The fish will **go off** (= go bad) if you don't put it in the fridge.

I **picked up** most of the rubbish. (= took it from a place, using my hands)

I have to **pick Jane up** (= collect her in my car) from the station.



## Exercises

- 23.1** Complete the phrasal verbs. Remember to put the verb into the correct form.
- 1 I don't think they ever found out how the man escaped.
  - 2 The children went round the school and ..... up all the rubbish.
  - 3 This milk smells horrible; I think it has ..... off.
  - 4 I rang the tourist information office but I couldn't ..... through. It's engaged all the time.
  - 5 The relationship was difficult at first, but I think she ..... on with him quite well now.
  - 6 If she's still ill tomorrow, we'll have to ..... off the trip to France until later in the month.
  - 7 I agreed to ..... after my sister's cat when she goes to France.
  - 8 We can ..... on with this exercise while the others are in the library.
  - 9 Our English teacher said we should ..... through the textbook by the end of the course.
  - 10 I'm afraid this photocopier has ..... out of paper, but you can use the one in my office.

- 23.2** Complete these sentences in a logical way.
- 1 It will take her a long time to get over her illness.
  - 2 The plane took off .....
  - 3 He had to look it up .....
  - 4 I don't really get on with .....
  - 5 She came in and took off .....
  - 6 I've decided to give up .....
  - 7 Who is going to look after ..... ?
  - 8 I went to the garage to pick up .....
  - 9 I'm afraid we've run out of .....
  - 10 My rent is going up .....

- 23.3** Look at the dictionary entry for 'go off', and match the meanings with the sentences below.

**go off** 1 **LEAVE** to leave a place and go somewhere else *She's gone off to the pub with Tony.*  
2 **FOOD** UK informal If food goes off, it is not good to eat any more because it is too old.  
3 **STOP** If a light or machine goes off, it stops working. *The heating goes off at 10 o'clock.*  
4 **EXPLODE** If a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires. 5 **MAKE NOISE** If something that makes a noise goes off, it suddenly starts making a noise. *His car alarm goes off every time it rains.*

- 1 When the light goes off, the machine has finished.
- 2 My alarm clock went off early this morning.
- 3 I think this meat has gone off.
- 4 The bomb went off without any warning.

- 23.4** Write two sentences for each of these phrasal verbs to show their different meanings.

pick up   take off   go off   get through



# Phrasal verbs (2): grammar and style

## A Grammar: intransitive verbs

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive. They don't need an object after the verb, and we cannot put another word between different parts of the verb.

He **grew up** in a city. (= spent his childhood/developed into an adult) (NOT He grew ~~in a city up~~.)

Don't wait out there. Please **come in**. (= enter)

I'm going to **stay in** (= stay at home) this evening.

We **set off** (= started the journey; usually a long journey) at about 7.30.

## B Grammar: transitive verbs

Many phrasal verbs are transitive: they need a direct object after the verb. You can usually put the object between the different parts of the verb, or after the phrasal verb.

Put on your shoes. ✓      Turn on the TV. ✓      Take off your coat. ✓

Put your shoes on. ✓      Turn the TV on. ✓      Take your coat off. ✓

If the object is a pronoun, it **must** go in the middle.

Put them on. ✓ (~~Put on them~~.)      Turn it on. ✓ (~~Turn on it~~.)      Take it off. ✓ (~~Take off it~~.)

## C In dictionaries

You can use a dictionary to check the grammar. Most dictionaries show it like this:

**carry on, get by** (= intransitive phrasal verb)

I can **get by** in French. (= I can manage in French, but I don't speak it well.)

**put sth** ↔ **on, throw sth** ↔ **away** (= transitive phrasal verb)

Did you **throw those books away**? (= get rid of them/put them in a rubbish bin)

Did you **throw away those books**?

**get over sth, look after sb/sth** (= verb + preposition + object)

Maria will **look after** (= take care of) the children. (Maria will **look after them**.)

## D Style: formal or informal?

Most phrasal verbs are more common in spoken English. In written English there is often a more formal word with the same meaning. (The other words in bold are often used with these verbs.)

**make sth up** = invent/create sth (from your imagination), e.g. We had to **make up** a story.

**leave sth out** = omit sth (= decide not to do sth), e.g. You can **leave out** question 7.

**sort sth out** = solve sth (such as a problem), e.g. We asked the computer guy to **sort it out**.

**turn sb/sth down** = reject sth (= say *no* to sth), e.g. I offered him £50, but he **turned it down**.

Some phrasal verbs are used in written English if there is no other easy way to express the meaning.

**wake up**, e.g. I always **wake up** early, even at weekends.

**break down** (= go wrong/stop working), e.g. The car **broke down** on the motorway.

**take off** (= leave the ground), e.g. The plane couldn't **take off** because of bad weather.

**break into sth** (= enter by force, often illegally), e.g. Thieves **broke into** the house and stole £500.

# Exercises

**24.1** Correct any mistakes with word order in these sentences. Be careful: some are correct.

- 1 He's putting his boots on.
- 2 I told the children I'd pick up them after school.
- 3 She grew on a farm up.
- 4 We set off very early this morning.
- 5 It's a big problem but the man will sort out it.
- 6 I think she made that story up.
- 7 We know there were two thieves, but do you know how they broke the house into?
- 8 I said I'd look after them if necessary.

**24.2** Make these texts more informal by changing the underlined verbs to phrasal verbs.

- 1 The cost of living is increasing all the time and I am now finding it quite difficult to manage on my salary. I can probably continue for a few months, but after that I may have to look for another job.
- 2 She told us to enter, but then we had to remove our shoes.
- 3 The teacher told half the class to invent a story to go with the picture in our books, while the other half did Exercise 5. She said we could all omit Exercise 4 if we wanted to.
- 4 I don't know why he rejected my offer of help because the company is in a lot of trouble and they've got no one to solve the problems.

**24.3** Fill the gaps to complete the phrasal verbs in these sentences.

- 1 I'm afraid the photocopier has just broken .....
- 2 I couldn't do the second question, so I left it .....
- 3 Put your coat ..... if you're cold.
- 4 If there are problems with the computer, I usually have to sort it .....
- 5 He told me he was 25, but I don't believe him. I think he's making that .....
- 6 You're not going to throw ..... that food, are you?
- 7 Why couldn't the plane take ..... ?
- 8 I think she grew ..... in a small village.
- 9 We'll get there by seven if we set ..... now.
- 10 They offered him the job but he turned it .....

**24.4** Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 Could you lie down on the floor ..... ?
- 2 I'm not very good at making up .....
- 3 She asked me to turn on .....
- 4 Two men tried to break into .....
- 5 We have asked an engineer to come and sort out .....
- 6 Are you going to stay in ..... ?
- 7 Why did you leave out ..... ?
- 8 I'm afraid we broke down .....
- 9 Can you get by ..... ?
- 10 I grew up .....

**24.5** There are many phrasal verbs in other units. Find three phrasal verbs in each of these units: 52, 53, 61, 79, 80.

# Have and have got

## A Have vs have got

We can use *have* or *have got* to talk about possessions, relationships, illnesses and some other states. *Have got* is more common in spoken English.

I've got an old CD player.	I haven't got a car at the moment.
She's got two brothers.	Have you got the time? (= What time is it?)
He's got a headache.	It hasn't got a swimming pool.

- In negative sentences, we can use *haven't got* or *don't have*.  
I **haven't got** a car/I **don't have** a car. (NOT I ~~haven't~~ a car.)
- We don't use *got* in short answers, and it isn't common in the past tense.  
A: **Have you got** any brothers or sisters? B: No, I **haven't**. (NOT No, I ~~haven't got~~)  
I **had** a car when I was at college. (NOT I ~~had got~~)
- The verb form used in the question is usually the same in the answer.  
A: **Do you have** a car? A: **Have you got** a car?  
B: Yes, (I do). B: Yes, (I have).

## B Have + noun

When the same word can be a noun or a verb, e.g. *wash*, it is common to use *have* + the noun, and not the verb on its own, e.g. *I'm going to have a wash*. (NOT *I'm going to wash*.) *Have got* is not used here.

I always **have** a quick shower when I get up. (= shower)

Let's **have** a rest before we go on. (= rest/stop doing an activity and relax)

I often **have** a sleep after lunch. (= sleep) [We use this expression for a short period of sleep.]

This computer game is really hard. Would you like to **have a try**? (= try it)

I **had a dream** about you last night. (= dreamt)

Let me **have a think** before I decide. (= think about sth for a period of time)

We use *be* + adjective and not *have* + noun in these expressions:

She was **lucky**. I'm **hungry**. (= I want something to eat.) I'm **thirsty**. (= I want a drink.)

## C Have + object

have breakfast/lunch/a meal, etc. (= eat)	I <b>had</b> steak but Paul just <b>had</b> a sandwich.
have a drink (= drink sth)	<b>What time do you have</b> breakfast?
have a party	Let's <b>have a drink</b> before dinner.
have a baby (= be pregnant or give birth)	I'm <b>having a party</b> for my birthday.
have a look (= read or examine)	Mary is <b>having a baby</b> next month.
have a nice/great/terrible/etc. time	Could I <b>have a look</b> at your paper? (= read it)
have an argument (= angry discussion)	The doctor <b>had a look</b> at my knee. (= examined it)
have a word with sb (= speak to sb)	We <b>had a very nice time</b> in Switzerland.
have the bill (= receive it in a restaurant)	They <b>had an argument</b> about the holidays.
have a problem + (with) or (-ing)	I <b>had a word</b> with the teacher about my homework.
	Could I <b>have the bill</b> , please?
	I'm <b>having a problem</b> with this exercise.
	I <b>had a problem</b> opening the door.

# Exercises

## 25.1 Transform these sentences from *have* to *have got*, or *have got to have*.

- 1 I have a new CD player. I've got a...
- 2 I don't have a job at the moment.
- 3 Has he got any change for the machine?
- 4 She hasn't got much money.
- 5 We don't have a video at school.
- 6 A: Do you have an English dictionary?  
B: Yes, I do.

## 25.2 Now change the form of *have* to *have got* where possible. Make any other changes that are necessary.

- 1 Do you have a car? Have you got a car?
- 2 Have you seen her today? You can't change the form here.
- 3 We have a small garden.
- 4 I think I have a cold.
- 5 A: Do you have a spare pen? B: No, sorry.
- 6 Someone told me she has a new boyfriend.
- 7 Let's have lunch.
- 8 They had an exam yesterday.
- 9 I have a new computer.
- 10 Excuse me. Do you have the time?

## 25.3 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 I'm tired. I think I'll have a sleep.
- 2 I had a funny ..... about you last night. I woke up laughing.
- 3 I'm exhausted. Can we have a ..... ?
- 4 She's having her 21st birthday ..... next week. Are you going?
- 5 I need to have a ..... before I decide what to do.
- 6 Did you have a ..... finding the place without a map?
- 7 The weather was terrible on our holiday. We didn't have a very good .....
- 8 We had ..... in a little restaurant, then went for a walk in the afternoon.
- 9 There's a problem with the car, so I asked the garage to have a ..... at it.
- 10 I had a terrible ..... with my sister; I haven't spoken to her for days.

## 25.4 What can you ask in these situations? Use *have* + a noun and start each question *Could I ...?*

- 1 You want to pay in a restaurant. *Could I have the bill, please?*
- 2 You would like to look at someone's newspaper.
- 3 You want to speak to your teacher.
- 4 You are in a friend's house and you are thirsty.
- 5 Someone asks you if you want to buy their CD player, but you're not 100% sure if you want it.

## 25.5 Express these sentences in a different way using *have* + a noun. Keep the meaning the same and start each one with *Mary ...*

- 1 Mary is speaking to one of the boys. *Mary is having a word with one of the boys.*
- 2 Mary is pregnant.
- 3 Mary found it very difficult to work the video.
- 4 Mary examined my bad shoulder.
- 5 Mary really enjoyed herself in Ireland.

## A Things we make

a mistake (= an error)  
a meal (= prepare)

money (= become rich)

friends

a decision

a noise

progress (= become better)

a difference (= have an effect on a situation)

He made a few mistakes in the test.

I don't usually make a meal in the evening if I'm busy. I'll make lunch today.

He made a lot of money when he was in America.

I made a lot of friends in Australia last year.

Think about it before you make a decision.

I can't work when the children make a lot of noise.

Her English is good now; she's made a lot of progress.

Sarah tried to help but it didn't make any difference.

The extra money makes a big difference to us.

## B Things we do

homework

the housework (= cleaning)

a subject (= study a subject)

a course

the shopping (= buy food)

research (= detailed study)

sb a favour (= do sth to help sb)

well (= succeed; *opp* badly)

something/nothing/anything

I forgot to do my homework last night.

My mother does all the housework in our house.

What subjects do you do at school?

Did you do English at school?

I did a one-week course in word processing.

I always do the shopping at the weekend.

He's doing research in physics at Rome University.

Could you do me a favour? I haven't got any coffee.

Could you lend me some?

I did well at Spanish, but my sister did very badly.

Those kids do nothing all day.

I didn't do anything last night.



## C Things we take

an exam (also 'do')

a photo

a break (= short period of rest)

a decision (also 'make')

a shower (also 'have')

a bus/train/plane/taxi (also 'get')

periods of time (= time we need to do sth)

a seat (= sit down)

time off (= time away from work for holidays or to do sth)

I'm going to take four exams next month.

She took lots of photos on holiday.

OK, let's take a break for ten minutes, then we'll continue.

I'm not very good at taking decisions.

I'm just going to take a shower before lunch.

We were late, so we took a taxi to the airport.

It takes me half an hour to walk to school.

How long does it take you to do an exercise?

Please come in. Take a seat.

I took a few days off work and we went away.

Could I take this afternoon off?

# Exercises

**26.1** Underline the correct verb(s) in italics. Be careful: in some sentences both verbs are correct.

- 1 I couldn't *do/make* my homework last night.
- 2 When do you *take/do* your next exam?
- 3 Did he *do/make* many mistakes?
- 4 I don't often *make/do* the housework.
- 5 Did you *maketake* many photos?
- 6 I think I've *done/made* a lot of progress.
- 7 I want to *do/make* a course in English.
- 8 We must *take/make* a decision soon.
- 9 He is *doing/making* research in chemistry.
- 10 They *did/made* a lot of noise during the party.

**26.2** Replace the underlined phrase with a phrase from the opposite page. Use the verb in brackets.

*Example* I'll clean the house at the weekend. (do) *do the housework*

- 1 I buy my food on Saturday morning. (do)
- 2 He is definitely improving. (make)
- 3 OK, let's stop work and relax for 15 minutes. (take)
- 4 Could you help me and post this letter for me? (do)
- 5 Now I have a car it changes things a lot. (make)
- 6 They both want to become rich. (make)
- 7 When are they going to decide? (make)
- 8 I'm afraid she failed in both exams. (do)
- 9 Please sit down. (take)
- 10 I want to have a week's holiday. (take)

**26.3** Complete the sentences in the past tense about each of the pictures. Use verbs from the opposite page.



1 Sally / this morning



2 Maria / after dinner



3 Simon / of me this morning



4 Michael / in his exams

**26.4** Choose three of these things. How long does it usually take you to do them? Write sentences, and compare with someone else if possible.

*Example* It usually takes me about 25 minutes to get to work.

get to college/work  
check your e-mail

eat lunch  
wash your hair

do your English homework  
put on your make-up

# Give, keep, break, see

## A Give

I'll give you a ring this evening. (= phone you this evening)

Could you give me a hand? (= help me)

I'll give you a lift home. (= take you home in my car)

In spoken English *give* + noun is often used instead of a verb on its own, e.g. He gave me a kiss, instead of He kissed me.

Other examples are:

He gave me a push. (= pushed me)

He gave me a (big) smile. (= smiled at me)

He gave me some advice. (advised me)

He gave me a hug. [See picture.]



## B Keep

*Keep* (+ noun/pronoun) + adjective (= to make sth/sb stay in a particular state)

These gloves will keep your hands warm.

That raincoat will keep you dry.

Running helps me to keep fit. (= stay healthy)

Please keep quiet. (= remain quiet)

*Keep* + *-ing* (= to do sth again and again; often sth that you don't want to happen)

I keep losing my glasses.

She keeps interrupting me.

I keep getting backache.

I try to keep in touch with old school friends. (= stay in contact, e.g. phone/write to them)

I'm sorry to keep you waiting.

## C Break

If you break a record, you do something faster or better than anyone else before, e.g.

He broke the world 100 metres record with a time of 9.79 seconds.

I didn't know I was breaking the law. (= doing something wrong/against the law)

Who's going to break the news to her family? (= give her family the news)

It'll break her heart (= make her very unhappy) to see her son like this.

## D See

A: She didn't have your number, so she couldn't phone.

B: Oh, I see. (= I understand)

A: It's easier to carry two smaller suitcases.

B: Yes, I see what you mean. (= I understand what you are saying.)

They're doing experiments to see (= find out) how people react when they are under stress.

A: Do you think we need the car?

B: I'll see (= find out) what the others think.

A: Is that John at the door?

B: Yes, I'll see (= find out) what he wants.

I don't see the point of practising six hours a day. (= I don't understand the reason/I think it's crazy.)



# Exercises

**27.1** Match each verb with two nouns on the right to form common phrases.

- |         |                  |                  |
|---------|------------------|------------------|
| 1 break | in touch         | the law          |
| 2 give  | somebody a hand  | somebody's heart |
| 3 keep  | somebody waiting | somebody a lift  |

**27.2** Fill the gaps with verbs from the opposite page.

- 1 She gave me a big smile when I got to work this morning.
- 2 He said he was sorry to ..... us waiting.
- 3 That's the second time she's ..... the record.
- 4 Before we make a decision, let's ..... what Patricia says.
- 5 He just came up to me and ..... me a big hug.
- 6 I don't know what the problem is, but I ..... getting headaches.
- 7 I don't know when the next bus is due – I'll go and ..... what the timetable says.
- 8 A: There's something wrong with this door. B: Yes, I ..... what you mean.
- 9 I'll have to ..... the news when they get here.
- 10 I don't ..... the point of spending a lot of money on children's clothes – they only last for a few months and then they're too small.

**27.3** Complete these dialogues using a verb + noun construction with the same meaning as the underlined words and phrases.

- 1 A: Did you take them in your car?  
B: Yes, I gave them a lift.
- 2 A: Did you phone her?  
B: Yes, I ..... last night.
- 3 A: Have you ever committed a crime?  
B: No, I've never ..... in my life.
- 4 A: Have you stayed in contact all this time?  
B: Yes, I've tried to ..... as much as possible.
- 5 A: This is going to make her terribly unhappy.  
B: Yes I know. It'll .....
- 6 A: Could anyone help me with this?  
B: Yeah, I'll .....

**27.4** Complete the sentences with a suitable adjective or *-ing* form.

- 1 This umbrella should keep you .....
- 2 I don't know why she keeps ..... – it wasn't a very funny story.
- 3 I never drink coffee at night; it keeps me .....
- 4 If you do lots of exercise, it'll keep you .....
- 5 It's really stupid, but I keep ..... to lock the door when I go out.
- 6 They're making a lot of noise in there. Could you tell them to keep ..... ?

**27.5** Can you translate the phrases in bold on the opposite page into your own language? If so, do you use the same verb in your own language?



# Leave, catch and let

## A Leave

leave home/work (= depart/go out from)  
 leave school/work/a husband/a wife  
 (= permanently)  
 leave sth/sb somewhere (= allow sb/sth  
 to stay/remain in a place)  
 leave sth somewhere (= forget sth)  
 have got sth left (= the amount  
 that remains)

leave a message

leave sb alone (= go away/don't disturb sb)

I always leave home before 8 am.  
 She left her job last year to have a baby.  
 No one really knows why she left her husband.  
 You can leave your coats in my bedroom.  
 I left my things at home; I'll pick them up later.  
 I left my books on the bus. It was so stupid.  
 I had £100 yesterday, and now I've only got  
 £20 left.

Have we got any coffee left, or did we drink  
 it all?

He wasn't in, so I left a message on his  
 answerphone.

Leave Boris alone – he's working.

## B Catch

catch a bus (= take/travel by)  
 catch a criminal (= find and take)  
 catch a cold/flu (= get)

not catch (= not hear what sb said)

catch a ball  
 catch sb doing sth (= see sb when they  
 are doing sth wrong)



We can walk or catch a bus; I don't mind.  
 The police caught the man outside the bank.  
 My girlfriend has a cold and I think I caught it  
 from her.

I didn't catch what he said. Is it platform 3 or 4?  
 I'm sorry, I didn't catch your name.

I had to run to catch the ball.

My mother caught me taking food out of the fridge.



## C Let

let sb do sth (= permit sb to do sth)

let sb know (= tell sb 'yes' or 'no')

let's ... (= introducing a suggestion)

let me see (= a phrase we use to give  
 ourselves time to think)

let me do sth (= offering to do sth)

I let my sister borrow my car.  
 My parents won't let me stay in the flat.  
 I'll let you know tomorrow about the holiday.  
 If you want to come, could you let me know?  
 Oh, come on, let's go out this evening.  
 Let's try that new bar in the main square.

A: What time shall we leave?

B: Er ... let me see ... er ... how about six o'clock?

Let me help you (with the washing up).

Let me give you a lift (to the station).

# Exercises

## 28.1 Fill the gaps in these sentences and dialogues with a suitable verb.

- 1 We can walk to the High Street and then ..... a bus to the cinema.
- 2 (*on the phone*) I'm afraid Paul's out. Do you want to ..... a message?
- 3 I asked Dad, but he won't ..... me borrow the car.
- 4 The teacher ..... them talking to each other in the exam, so they could be in trouble.
- 5 I put everything in my bag for school, then ..... it on the kitchen table.
- 6 A: Is it OK if I ..... my bike in front of the apartment?  
B: Yes, sure.
- 7 A: I'm sorry, I didn't ..... your name. B: Michael.
- 8 A: What shall we do?  
B: Er, ..... go to the swimming pool.

## 28.2 Complete the phrases in bold in these sentences.

- 1 Please leave me ..... ; I'm trying to finish this essay.
- 2 I'm sorry, I **didn't quite** ..... what you said.
- 3 If you want any more tickets, just let me .....
- 4 A: How many people can we take in the bus?  
B: Ooh ... er, let me ..... er ... about 30, I think.
- 5 We can't make an omelette – we **haven't got** any eggs ..... . You had the last one yesterday.
- 6 Do you want me to leave a ..... on his answerphone?
- 7 You have to ..... the ball, then throw it to someone else.
- 8 I **caught a** ..... on holiday and I've still got it. I feel terrible.

## 28.3 Each sentence beginning below has two possible endings. Choose the correct combinations.

- 1 She left  
a me use her mobile.  
b her bags at the station.
- 2 She let  
c the bus outside the supermarket.  
d the man trying to steal her handbag.
- 3 She caught  
e her job because it was boring.  
f us go home early today because it's my birthday.

## 28.4 Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.

- 1 A: I don't know how to do this.  
B: OK, let me have a look .....  
A: Oh, thanks.
- 2 A: I'm just going to do the washing-up.  
B: Oh, let .....  
A: No, you don't have to do that. Sit down.
- 3 A: I have to go to the station.  
B: Well, let .....  
A: Oh, that's very kind of you.
- 4 A: Do you want to come next week?  
B: I don't know. I'll let ..... tomorrow.

## 28.5 Would you let your best friend do these things? Ask somebody else the same questions if possible.

borrow your bike or car for the weekend  
live in your home while you're away  
choose clothes for you in a shop  
decide where you are both going for a holiday

# Get: uses and expressions

## A

### Meanings

Get is an informal word and is very common in spoken English. It has many meanings.

RECEIVE	I got a couple of letters this morning. You get a certificate at the end of the course.
FIND/BUY	I got my ticket for the match yesterday. Where did you get those shoes? She's trying to get a new job.
BECOME	It gets dark very early in December. My hands are getting cold.
ARRIVE/REACH	When did you get here? I can't get there before 7 pm. I'll phone when I get home.
FETCH	Could you get the books from the cupboard? Wait here while I get the car.

## B

### Get + past participle

We use this structure in particular expressions. It is more natural than just using the verb.

get married (= marry) get divorced (= divorce)	Rob and Sarah have just got married. They got divorced last year. (= the marriage ended officially)
get dressed (= dress) get undressed (= undress) get changed (= change clothes) get lost (= lose your way)	I got dressed quickly and went out. He got undressed and got into bed. I need to go home and get changed first. I got lost on my way to the station.

## C

### Get + adjective

Get (= become) combines with many adjectives that often describe a change in state.

It's getting	hot/cold dark ( <i>opp</i> light) late better/worse busy	I'm getting	hot/cold tired better/worse hungry ready (= preparing)
--------------	--	-------------	--

## D

### Phrases and phrasal verbs

I get on very well with my sister. (= have a very good relationship with my sister)

How are you getting on? (= What progress are you making? e.g. with an exercise or in general)

Is it difficult to get to know people? (= meet people and make friends)

We should get rid of these books. (= sell them/throw them away; remove them)

My alarm wakes me up at 7, but I don't usually get up (= get out of bed) until 7.15.

Those boys get on my nerves (= annoy me and make me angry). They don't do any work.

# Exercises

**29.1** Write a synonym for 'get' in each of these sentences.

- 1 Where can I get something to eat round here?
- 2 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute.
- 3 What time did they get here last night?
- 4 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs.
- 5 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full.
- 6 I normally get about four or five letters a week.
- 7 This book is getting quite interesting.
- 8 I must get some stamps before I go home.
- 9 He sent the letter last week but I didn't get it until yesterday.
- 10 Do they often get here early?

**29.2** Complete the dialogues using *getting* + a suitable adjective. Add other words if necessary.

- 1 A: It's *getting cold in here*.....  
B: Yes, it is. I'll turn on the heating.
- 2 A: I'm .....  
B: OK, let's have something to eat then.
- 3 A: I'm .....  
B: Yes, me too. I'll open the window.
- 4 A: It's .....  
B: Yes, it is. I think I'll go to bed.
- 5 A: It's .....  
B: Yes, it is. I'll put the lights on.
- 6 A: I'm .....  
B: No, you're not. You're getting much better. You understand a lot now.

**29.3** Rewrite each of these sentences using an expression with 'get'. The meaning must stay the same.

- 1 I had to put on my clothes very quickly.  
I had to *get dressed very quickly*.....
- 2 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?  
How do you ..... ?
- 3 I have a good relationship with my boss.  
I .....
- 4 We would like to throw away most of the furniture in this room.  
We would like to .....
- 5 Someone told me you're doing a new course. How's it going?  
Someone told me you're doing a new course. .... ?
- 6 The people in my class really annoy me.  
The people in my class .....
- 7 They're preparing to go out.  
They're .....
- 8 My sister told me to get out of bed.  
My sister told me to .....

**29.4** Write down examples of 'get' that you see or hear, then try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to get an idea of the ways in which this important word is used in English.

# Go: uses and expressions

## A

### Come vs go

With **go** the movement is usually away from the speaker; with **come** the movement is towards the speaker. For example, you are at school and the time is 9.30 am.

I had to **go** to Jimmy's to pick up some books. Then I went to the post office before I **came** to school.

Sometimes the speaker imagines they are in another place. When Thomas meets Marta in Spain, he invites her to stay at his home in Switzerland. He says: 'Would you like to **come** and visit me in Bern?' (He lives there, so her movement is towards him.)

We can also imagine that the listener is in a different place. Talking to Marta, Thomas says: 'I'll **come** to your flat at 7.30 pm.' (She will be at home, so his movement is towards her.)



### NOTE

There is a similar difference between **bring** and **take**:

**Take** the mobile phone with you, then Peter can use it. He can **bring** it back here tomorrow.

## B

### Different meanings of 'go'

- When you leave a place in order to do an activity, you often express it in these ways.
 

<i>go + -ing form</i>	<i>go (out) + for a + noun</i>
We could <b>go shopping</b> .	Why don't we <b>go (out) for a walk/drive</b> ?
They all went <b>sightseeing</b> .	They decided to <b>go (out) for a drink</b> .
I'd like to <b>go swimming</b> .	She wants to <b>go (out) for a meal</b> .
- Go** can describe a changing state (usually a bad one) with certain adjectives.
 

My dad's **going grey** (= his hair is going grey) and I'm **going bald**. (= losing my hair)  
 The company **went bankrupt** last year. (= lost all its money and had to stop operating)  
 My grandmother is **going deaf**. (deaf = cannot hear)  
 Our 12-year-old dog is **going blind**. (blind = cannot see)  
 He'll **go mad** (= get very angry *infml*) if you wear his jacket.
- When you want to say/ask if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere.
 

Does this bus **go** to the National Gallery?  
 This road **goes** through the mountains.
- Go and get** means fetch.
 

Could you **go and get** the glasses from the kitchen?
- When you talk about the usual position for something.
 

The dictionaries **go** on the bottom shelf.  
 Does this table **go** next to the wall?

## C

### Expressions with 'go' as noun and verb

I've never tried bungee jumping but I'd love to **have a go**. (= try it)

**How's it going?** (*infml*) (= How are you? or What progress are you making? e.g. with an exercise)

I'd like to see the film. Why don't we **go together**? (= go somewhere with another person/people)

It's time to **go**. (= time for us to leave)

# Exercises

**30.1** Complete the dialogue using the correct form of *come*, *go*, *bring* or *take*. (Two verbs are possible in one of the answers.)

A: What time are you (1) going ..... to Jim's party this evening?

B: I'm not sure because Chris is (2) ..... here first, and then we'll (3) ..... together.

A: Right. Do you know what's happening about the music?

B: Yeah, I'm going to (4) ..... some CDs, and Sue is (5) ..... her guitar. But I'll probably leave quite early, so could you (6) ..... my CDs back here tomorrow?

A: Yeah, sure. What time?

B: Well, I want to (7) ..... to the shops in the morning. Could you (8) ..... before ten?

A: Yeah, no problem.

**30.2** Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase. The meaning must stay the same.

1 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station? *take me*

2 Some people aren't interested in scuba diving but I've always wanted to have a go.

3 Hi, Sue. Nice to see you again. How's it going?

4 Could you go and get my handbag from the other room?

5 If you want, we could go with each other.

**30.3** Complete these sentences with an *-ing noun* (e.g. riding), or *for a + noun* (e.g. for a walk).

1 I went ..... this morning and bought some books and clothes.

2 We didn't have much food in the house, so we decided to go out .....

3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new bar near the square?

4 I wanted to go ..... because it was my first time in Rome.

5 My brother has just got a new sports car. We could go ..... at the weekend.

6 The pool is at the end of the road, so we often go .....

**30.4** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

1 Don't put the desk in the corner. It doesn't go there .....

2 You can always wear a hearing aid if you go .....

3 If business doesn't improve they could go .....

4 You can always dye your hair (= change the colour) if you start going .....

5 And you can wear a wig (= false hair) if you go .....

6 If the dog comes into the house with wet feet, my aunt will go .....

7 He's going ....., but he's hoping to get a guide dog next year.

8 You don't need to go on your own. We could go .....

**30.5** Look up 'go' in a good English dictionary. Find two or three new meanings (including phrasal verbs and idioms) that you think may be useful to you. Try to learn them. Write down the meanings with example sentences in your notebook. Write a translation as well if you want.

# The senses

## A The five basic senses

These are: **sight**, **hearing**, **taste**, **touch** and **smell**. For each one we use a basic verb, which can be followed by an adjective or noun in these constructions.

It **looks** terrible. (= from what I could see)

He **sounds** German. (= from what I heard)

It **tastes** strange. (= from tasting it)

It **feels** soft. (= from touching it)

It **smells** wonderful. (= from smelling it)

We can also use the verbs as nouns.

I didn't like **the look** of the fish.

Do you really like **the taste** of olives?

It **looks like** a wedding cake.

It **sounds like** a good idea.

This **tastes a bit like** chicken.

It **feels like** wool.

This **smells like** garlic.

We could hear **the sound** of church bells.

She hates **the smell** of petrol.

## B See, look (at) and watch

Compare these examples of **see** (= able to see) with **look (for) sth** (= search for, try to find), **look (at) sth** (= pay attention to sth, usually not moving and for a short time) and **watch** (= pay attention to sth not moving, usually for a long time).

I can't see a thing without my glasses. (= I'm not able to see anything)

I can't find my keys and I've **looked** (= searched/looked carefully) everywhere.

The police have been **watching** that man for weeks.

If you **look at** (= look carefully) the map, you can **see** (= are able to see) the mountains on the left.

He ran into me because he wasn't **looking**. (= paying attention) [the speaker seems angry]

He ran into me because he didn't see me. (= wasn't able to see me) [the speaker is not angry]

Sometimes two verbs are possible in one context; sometimes only one.

I saw/**watched** a great programme on TV last night. [For TV, we can use either verb.]

I saw a great film last night at the cinema. [For the cinema, we only use see.]

## C Hear and listen (to)

**Hear** means to be able to hear; **listen (to)** means to pay attention to things you hear.

Compare:

I couldn't **hear** what she said. (= I was physically unable to hear)

I can sometimes **hear** the trains from my bedroom. (= I am able to hear without trying)

I don't know what she said because I wasn't **listening**. (= I wasn't paying attention)

I was **listening** to the radio (= paying attention to it), when I **heard** a strange noise outside.

Sometimes we can use **hear** (but not in the progressive form) to mean 'listen to'.

I know he's dead – I **heard** it on the radio last night. (= I heard it when I was listening)

## D Touch

Don't **touch** those wires – they're dangerous.

You have to **press** that button to start the machine.

I don't feel safe up here. Could you **hold** my hand?



# Exercises

**31.1** Complete the sentences using words from the box. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

banana sore brother salmon photograph silk  
~~new~~ ripe doorbell horrible fresh old socks

- 1 Those shoes look *new*..... When did you buy them?
- 2 I don't think I'll try these peaches yet; they don't feel .....
- 3 This milk smells ..... I'll open another bottle.
- 4 We had some fruit which tasted a bit like .....
- 5 My feet are feeling very ..... after that run.
- 6 I love the smell of ..... bread.
- 7 That painting actually looks like a .....
- 8 I met Malcolm the other day and he really looks like his .....
- 9 It's a pink fish but it doesn't taste like .....
- 10 This cheese is terrible – it smells like .....
- 11 Your telephone sounds just like a .....
- 12 This dress was quite cheap but it feels like .....

**31.2** Complete the sentences below the pictures using *looks/tastes/feels* + adjective.



- 1 This man ..... 2 This pillow ..... 3 This apple .....

**31.3** Underline the correct verb in brackets. (Both verbs are correct in one case.)

- 1 I was (listening to/hearing) the radio when I (listened to/heard) a terrible noise outside.
- 2 The government is going to introduce new laws about noisy neighbours – I (listened to/heard) it on the radio this morning.
- 3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't (listen to/hear) it.
- 4 I don't know if this is an antique; we'll get an expert to come and (look at/see) it.
- 5 They wanted to stay and (watch/look at) the programme, but it was a bit late.
- 6 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't (hearing/listening to) what I was saying.
- 7 Can you bend over and (touch/press) your toes?
- 8 You have to (touch/press) the eject button if you want to get the video out.
- 9 Could you (touch/hold) this video for a moment while I move the TV?
- 10 If you (watch/look) carefully, you can (look/see) how the man does the trick with those cards.

**31.4** Complete these sentences about your own likes and dislikes.

I love the smell of ..... I hate the smell of .....

I love the sound of ..... I hate the sound of .....

I love the taste of ..... I hate the taste of .....



# Partitives: a bag of ..., a bit of ...

There are many different words used to describe a particular quantity of something.

## A Containers (e.g. a bag) and contents (e.g. of shopping)



## B With uncountable nouns

Certain words make uncountable nouns countable in order to describe a specific quantity, e.g. Has anyone got a sheet of paper I can have? Other examples are:

a piece of toast      a piece of cake      a piece of wood  
 a slice of ham      a slice of bread (= a thin piece)      a drop of milk (= a little)

We use *piece* with the nouns above and some abstract nouns, e.g. a piece of advice, but the most common phrase in spoken English is *a bit*: we use it with a wide range of nouns.

a bit of advice    a bit of bread    a bit of luck    a bit of time    a bit of news

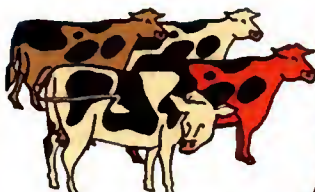
## C A pair of ...

Some nouns have two parts, e.g. trousers (two legs) and shoes (left and right). You can use *pair of* to specify the number, e.g. a pair of skis, two pairs of shoes, three pairs of shorts.

## D Groups of things

### NOTE

**Gang** has a negative meaning: it suggests a group of young people who may cause trouble.



a herd of cows



a group of people



a bunch of flowers



a gang of youths/  
kids/teenagers



a bunch of grapes

# Exercises

## 32.1 Complete the phrases below the pictures.



- |                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 a ..... of milk    | 5 a ..... of water        |
| 2 a ..... of tea     | 6 a ..... of orange juice |
| 3 a ..... of fruit   | 7 a ..... of paint        |
| 4 a ..... of matches | 8 a ..... of coffee       |

## 32.2 Contents come in different containers. Are these normal or unusual? If they are unusual, change them and make them normal.

*Example* a glass of soup    Unusual: It's usually a bowl or cup of soup.

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 a vase of coffee       | 5 a bowl of milk       |
| 2 a jug of wine          | 6 a tube of cigarettes |
| 3 a jar of mustard       | 7 a bag of salt        |
| 4 a carton of toothpaste | 8 a tin of tomatoes    |

## 32.3 Complete these sentences with a suitable noun.

- I gave her a big bunch ..... of flowers from my garden.
- The police are looking for a ..... of youths who may be responsible for the damage.
- I cut about six ..... of ham and put them on a plate.
- They own a large ..... of land on the coast.
- I did a ..... of homework last night, then went out.
- The teacher told us to take a blank ..... of paper, then write our names at the top.
- A small ..... of people gathered outside the embassy.
- I need at least two ..... of socks inside these shoes.
- I asked him for a ..... of advice.
- I like to put a ..... of cream in my coffee.
- Have you seen that old ..... of boots I use for gardening?
- I've got a ..... of time, so I can help you now if you like.

## 32.4 Underline any words in (brackets) which are wrong in these sentences.

- I asked her for a (bit/piece) of advice.
- I asked for a (piece/sheet) of cake.
- There was a (group/gang) of journalists outside her house.
- My lunch consisted of two (slices/pieces) of bread and a small (bunch/group) of grapes.
- She hit me over the head with a small (piece/bit) of wood.
- I'm in a hurry, but I've still got a (bit/piece) of time.
- We had a (piece/bit) of luck this morning: we won some money!
- Could I have a (piece/bit/drop) of milk in my coffee?

# Uncountable nouns and plural nouns

## A Uncountable nouns

### NOTE

You can make many uncountable nouns singular using different nouns, e.g. **a piece of toast, a news item**, etc. In spoken English we use **a bit** with many nouns, e.g. **a bit of information, a bit of advice**.

Uncountable nouns, e.g. information, homework, advice:

- don't have a plural form, e.g. **information** (NOT ~~informations~~)
- are not used with the indefinite article, e.g. (some) **homework** (NOT ~~a homework~~)
- are used with a singular verb, e.g. **my advice is ...** (NOT ~~my advice are ...~~)

The uncountable nouns below are often countable in other languages. Look at them carefully, and also notice the other words in bold that are often used with them.

Perhaps we could get some more **information** about the concert off the internet.

She gave **me** lots of **advice** about the best dictionary to buy.

Are we going to sell all the **furniture**? (= tables, chairs, armchairs, desks, etc.)

My **knowledge** (= what I know) of German is very limited. (= very little)

You need a lot of **camping equipment**. (e.g. tent, sleeping bag, things for cooking, etc.)

She's worked hard and she's **making good progress**. (= she is improving/getting better)

Is there any more **news** about the rail strike?

The teacher gave us a lot of **homework** last night.

I always put my camera in my **hand luggage**. (= bags you carry with you on the plane)

Would you like some more **toast**? (= bread that is heated and brown on both sides)

## B In dictionaries

Learners' dictionaries show countable nouns with a (C) and uncountable nouns with a (U). Some nouns can be countable with one meaning and uncountable in another.

book (C)

housework (U)

hair (U)

hair (C)

The **books** are on the table.

I did a lot of **housework** (= cleaned the house) **this morning**.

My **hair** is getting very long. I must get it cut.

I'm starting to get a **few grey hairs** now.

## C Plural nouns

Plural nouns, e.g. trousers, stairs, sunglasses:

- have a plural form and aren't used with 'a/an', e.g. **trousers** (NOT ~~a trouser~~)
- usually take a plural verb, e.g. These **stairs are** dangerous (NOT ~~These stairs is ...~~)
- can sometimes be made singular using a **pair of**, e.g. a **pair of sunglasses**

Here are some other nouns that are usually plural:

I've just bought a pair of **trainers**.

These **shorts** are too long.

I bought new **pyjamas** when I went into hospital.

The **scissors** are on the table.

I often wear **sunglasses** for driving.

You can **weigh yourself** on the **scales** in the bathroom.

He couldn't hear me because he was wearing **headphones**.



# Exercises

33.1 Check the pronunciation of the underlined words in the Index. Practise saying the phrases.

my knowledge of German      camping equipment      buy some furniture  
hand luggage      a pair of pyjamas      I want to weigh myself

33.2 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 I need some informations.
- 2 The teacher has a news about the school trip.
- 3 The furnitures are very old.
- 4 I'm looking for a new jeans.
- 5 Your hairs are getting very long.
- 6 Do you have a scissors?
- 7 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday.
- 8 Do you think she's making a progress with her English?
- 9 These trousers is too small.
- 10 She gave me some good advices.

33.3 Mark these nouns countable, uncountable, or countable and uncountable. If they can be both, write sentence examples to show the difference.

cup      housework      coffee      spaghetti      money      coin      work      travel

33.4 Complete these dialogues using a suitable plural noun or uncountable noun from the opposite page. Make sure the form of each word is correct. Look at the example first.

*Example* A: It's too hot for jeans. B: You need a pair of shorts.

- 1 A: I have to cut this paper into three pieces.  
B: You need .....
- 2 A: I can't see because the sun is in my eyes.  
B: You need .....
- 3 A: I don't know what to do when I leave school.  
B: You need .....
- 4 A: My room looks so empty.  
B: You need .....
- 5 A: I want to find out how much I weigh.  
B: You need .....
- 6 A: I can't play my music loud because my mother always complains.  
B: You need .....

33.5 Read this short text from a radio broadcast. Find two uncountable nouns and one noun always used in a plural form. (These words are not included on the opposite page.)

*Traffic on the M3 motorway has been terrible this morning because of the bad weather and the roadworks near Basingstoke, and there have been long delays for motorists heading into London. Drivers are advised to choose an alternative route if at all possible.*

# Verbs + *-ing* form or infinitive

## A

### Verb + *-ing* form

Some verbs are followed by an *-ing* form if the next word is a verb. Here are some of them.

enjoy	finish	imagine	admit	avoid
feel like ( <i>informal</i> )	(don't) mind	can't stand	give up	deny

I've lived in New Zealand all my life; I can't **imagine** *living* anywhere else.  
Some people can't stand (= hate) *working* at the weekend but I don't **mind**.  
(= for me it's OK)

His doctor told him to **give up** *smoking*. (= stop smoking)

I always try to **avoid** *going* through the city centre. (= stay away from it)

At the police station, he **admitted** *stealing* her money, but **denied** *taking* the computer.  
(= he said 'yes' he took the money, but 'no' he didn't take the computer)

Do you **feel like** *going* out (= want to go out) this evening?

### Verb + infinitive

## B

Some verbs are followed by an infinitive if the next word is a verb.

decide	want	seem	appear
hope	forget	expect	mean
manage	refuse	promise	offer

It's a long walk so I **offered** to take them in the car.

I **expect** (= think or believe something will happen) to get the results before next week.

I **meant** (= planned/intended) to get the information, but I **forgot** (= didn't remember) to phone.

It was hard work but we **managed** to finish it. (= we were able to finish it but it was difficult)

I asked her to carry the suitcases but she **refused** to help. (= she said 'no')

They **promised** to phone me as soon as they arrived. (= they said they would)

## C

### Verb + *-ing* form or infinitive

Some verbs can be followed by an *-ing* form or infinitive and the meaning is very similar, e.g. love, like and prefer. But with some verbs there is a difference in meaning:

I **remembered** to buy my grandmother a birthday card. (= I didn't forget to buy one)

I **remember** making cards for her when I was small. (= it's one of my memories from the past)

## D

### Verb + infinitive without 'to'

Two common verbs are followed by an object + infinitive without 'to': **make** someone do something, and **let** someone do something.

My parents **make** me do my homework every night. (= They force me to do my homework.)

My parents **let** me go out at the weekend. (= They allow/permit me to go out.)

# Exercises

**34.1** Underline the correct word(s). Be careful: in two sentences, both possibilities are correct.

- 1 We decided (to work/working) during our holiday.
- 2 She promised (to help/helping) us.
- 3 I don't feel like (to go/going) for a walk at the moment.
- 4 She hopes (to spend/spending) some time in the mountains this summer.
- 5 Do you actually like (to go out/going out) when it's raining?
- 6 I can't imagine (to eat/eating) pasta every day of the week.
- 7 Most of the time she prefers (to work/working) on her own.
- 8 I don't remember (to go/going) to the zoo when we stayed in Madrid.
- 9 He hopes (to finish/finishing) his thesis by the end of the month.
- 10 I don't mind (to help/helping) you if I'm not busy.

**34.2** Complete part (c) of each sentence in a suitable way, starting with a verb.

- 1 Most people want:
 

a to be rich	b to get married	c .....
--------------	------------------	---------
- 2 A lot of people can't stand:
 

a getting wet	b getting up early	c .....
---------------	--------------------	---------
- 3 Most people enjoy:
 

a going to parties	b lying on a beach	c .....
--------------------	--------------------	---------
- 4 On hot days most people don't feel like:
 

a working	b eating big meals	c .....
-----------	--------------------	---------
- 5 Most people expect:
 

a to be happy	b to find a job they will like	c .....
---------------	--------------------------------	---------
- 6 A lot of people don't mind:
 

a washing up	b ironing	c .....
--------------	-----------	---------
- 7 Some parents make their teenage children:
 

a wear certain clothes	b do housework	c .....
------------------------	----------------	---------
- 8 Other parents let their teenage children:
 

a wear what they like	b stay out all night	c .....
-----------------------	----------------------	---------

Now think about each of the above statements. Are they true, and are they (or were they) true for you?

**34.3** Read the story and answer the questions below.

When Julie was 17, her father said she could go on holiday with two school friends. He also said that he would lend her the money for the hotel, but she must pay for the flight and her entertainment. Julie was delighted and said she would bring him back a wonderful present, and pay him back in six months. First they had to decide where to go. They looked at lots of brochures and finally agreed on a two-week holiday in the south of France. They had a great time, but unfortunately Julie spent all her money and forgot to buy a present for her father.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 What did Julie's father let her do? | He let <u>her go on holiday with friends</u> ..... |
| 2 And what did he offer to do?        | He offered .....                                   |
| 3 But what did he refuse to do?       | He refused .....                                   |
| 4 In return what did Julie promise?   | She promised .....                                 |
| 5 What did the three girls decide?    | They decided .....                                 |
| 6 What did Julie forget?              | She forgot .....                                   |

# Verb patterns

## A Verb + object

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>
They	discussed (= talked about)	the film for hours.
Did she	answer	the question?

## B Verb + object + question word

### NOTE

There is no direct object after **explain**:  
He explained ~~me~~ what to do.

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>question word</i>	
I	told	them	where	to find it.
She	asked	(us)	why	we were late.
He	showed	everyone	what	to do.

## C Verb + object + infinitive

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>object</i>	<i>infinitive</i>
She	asked	everyone	to leave.
They	told	us	to wait outside.
The doctor	advised	him	to stay in bed.
I	wanted	the others	to help us.
He	persuaded	me	to go to the party.
She	warned	them	to be careful. (= think/pay attention)

**Warn** (= tell someone of a possible danger, and often tell them what they should(n't) do)

She warned the children not to swim near the boats.

**Persuade** (= make somebody change their mind/opinion)

John wanted to get the new car now, but I persuaded him to wait.



## D Verb + 'that' clause

<i>subject</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>(that) clause</i>
He	said	(that) it was good.
She	suggested	(that) we go together.
He	mentioned	(that) the film was tonight.

**Mention** (= say or write a fact or piece of information)

When I spoke to the secretary, she didn't mention (that) our teacher was ill.

## E Verb + (object) + preposition

I asked the taxi driver for directions to the hotel.

They **blamed** me for the accident. (= they said I was responsible for it/it was my fault)

She **complained** (to the manager) about the service. (= said she was not satisfied with it)

The manager **apologised** for the noise outside the restaurant. (= the manager said sorry)

# Exercises

## 35.1 Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 She said me the film was terrible. *She said the film was terrible*
- 2 He told it's impossible.
- 3 The teacher is going to explain you what to do.
- 4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
- 5 Can we discuss about my report?
- 6 I want that he leaves.
- 7 You must answer to the question.
- 8 I apologised my mistake.
- 9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
- 10 I asked to the waiter for a knife.

## 35.2 Complete the sentences with a suitable verb. (There may be more than one answer.)

- 1 They watched the film together and then they *discussed* ..... it in small groups.
- 2 I didn't understand the exercise but she ..... me what to do.
- 3 She wasn't satisfied with her room, so she ..... to the manager.
- 4 My suitcase was very heavy, so I ..... the hotel porter to carry it.
- 5 Martin knew the area was dangerous but he didn't ..... me when I went there.
- 6 I didn't want to go at first but she ..... me.
- 7 I didn't feel well and my mother ..... me to stay at home and rest.
- 8 She lost all her money but she didn't ..... it when I phoned her.
- 9 I don't think it was my fault but they still ..... me for it.
- 10 She didn't know the way, so I ..... how to get there.

## 35.3 Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 Some of them were getting hungry so I suggested .....
- 2 They were making a lot of noise next door and I told .....
- 3 Paula went to that new Greek restaurant and said .....
- 4 We read the book for homework and discussed .....
- 5 She didn't have any money, so she wanted .....
- 6 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn't persuade .....
- 7 She said there were strange noises outside her flat, so I advised .....
- 8 The team played badly but most of the newspapers blamed .....
- 9 The water can make you ill and I warned .....
- 10 If you don't understand the instructions, someone will explain .....

## 35.4 When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. So look at the grammar information about a word in a good dictionary, and always look carefully at the example sentences, then write one or two of your own. Do it for these three examples. What patterns from the opposite page are used after these verbs?

order      recommend      prevent

Example ask 1 + object + question word, e.g. I asked her what to do.  
2 + object + infinitive, e.g. I asked them to help me.  
3 + (object) + preposition, e.g. I asked (her) for some advice.



## A

## 'Scale' and 'limit' adjectives

LIMIT	SCALE	SCALE	LIMIT
terrible awful dreadful	(very) bad	OK (very) good	marvellous terrific great

Adjectives such as 'good' and 'bad' can be anything from weak to strong, e.g. quite good or very good. Adjectives at the end of the scale only have one extreme meaning and are often used on their own. We can make them stronger with 'absolutely' or 'really', e.g. absolutely great, really awful.

<i>scale</i>	<i>limit</i>	<i>scale</i>	<i>limit</i>
(very) small big tired interesting surprised	(absolutely) tiny huge/enormous exhausted fascinating astonished	(very) pleased cold nice frightened (= afraid of) hungry	(absolutely) delighted freezing delicious (food only) terrified starving ( <i>informal</i> )

## B

Adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed*

A large group of adjectives can have an *-ing* or *-ed* ending. The *-ing* ending describes a person, thing or situation; the *-ed* ending describes the effect on someone of this person, thing or situation.

It was such a boring party. Most people left before 11 pm – they were so bored.  
I think the students are depressed because the weather is very depressing at the moment.

Other examples of adjectives ending *-ing* and *-ed* are:

surprising/ed	astonishing/ed
tiring/ed	exhausting/ed
interesting/ed	fascinating/ed
frightening/ed	terrifying/ed
confusing/ed	exciting/ed
embarrassing/ed	disappointing/ed



John isn't very good at French, so I was quite surprised when he passed the exam – and I was absolutely astonished at his result. He got 98%.

I thought it was very exciting when I first got on a plane. Then we took off and flew into bad weather. I was terrified.

London has lots of streets with the same name; it's very confusing for tourists.

Greg was very disappointed when they lost the match. Then, the next day, his girlfriend left him, so now he's really depressed.

One of our teachers often forgets my name. It was funny at first, but now it's a bit embarrassing.

# Exercises

**36.1** Write one limit adjective with a similar meaning to these scale adjectives. Cover the opposite page before you begin.

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 bad <i>awful</i> ..... | 6 good .....        |
| 2 small .....            | 7 cold .....        |
| 3 tired .....            | 8 big .....         |
| 4 surprised .....        | 9 hungry .....      |
| 5 interesting .....      | 10 frightened ..... |

**36.2** Rewrite this postcard using limit adjectives where possible to give a more positive and/or more extreme effect. Make any other changes that are necessary and include *absolutely* once or twice.

Dear Sandy

Arrived on Sunday evening after ~~a very tiring~~ *an exhausting* journey. We're very pleased with the hotel – our room is big and the food is nice. We've been lucky with the weather as well – it's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach. Tomorrow we're planning to walk to a village a couple of kilometres along the coast. In this weather, I'm sure we'll be really tired by the time we get back, but it does sound an interesting place, so I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.

Love,  
Benita

---



---



---



---

**36.3** Complete the dialogues using a suitable 'limit' adjective in the correct form (-ing or -ed).

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A: I was very <u>interested</u> in her talk.<br>B: Yes, it was absolutely <i>fascinating</i> ..... | 4 A: Was the journey very <u>tiring</u> ?<br>B: Yes, I was .....                              |
| 2 A: You weren't <u>frightened</u> , were you?<br>B: Yes, it was absolutely .....                    | 5 A: Are you <u>hungry</u> ?<br>B: Yes, I'm absolutely .....                                  |
| 3 A: It was a <u>surprising</u> decision, wasn't it?<br>B: Yes, everyone was .....                   | 6 A: I expect you were very <u>pleased</u> with your score.<br>B: Yes, I was absolutely ..... |

**36.4** Think of an adjective from the opposite page to describe how the people felt in these situations.

- 1 They walked ten miles, then spent the afternoon cutting down trees. *exhausted*
- 2 From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach.
- 3 They wore jeans to the party but when they arrived everyone was wearing very formal clothes.
- 4 One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station.
- 5 My brother has a flat and it's usually in a terrible mess – he's very untidy. But yesterday when I visited him, the place was incredibly tidy. In fact everything looked new.

# Prepositions: place

## A

## At, on, in

## NOTE

She lives in  
Danver Road.  
BUT She lives  
at 43 Danver  
Road.

at a point/place	I met her at the bus stop. He's at work (i.e. not at home).	She lives at 43 Danver Road. They're at a party tonight.
on a surface	The book's on the desk. They sat on the floor.	We put the picture on the wall. Don't put it on the sofa.
in an area or space	A country in Africa. He's in the kitchen.	She lives in Poland. The key's in the top drawer.

## B

## Opposites



up



down



into



out of



over/above



under/below



in front of



behind

Over/above and under/below are very similar in meaning, but over and under sometimes suggest movement. For example:

When we flew over Paris we couldn't see much because we were above the clouds.  
Below us was the river which ran under the bridge.

## C

## Other common prepositions of place

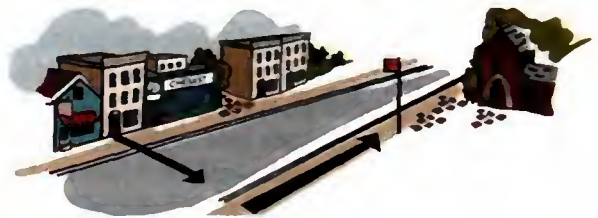
We drove along one side of the lake, then round the top shore, past the old castle, and finally through the village.



We came over the bridge and parked next to the house, which was opposite the hotel.



Our house is between two shops and it's near a bus stop. You just go across the road and walk along the other side towards the church.



# Exercises

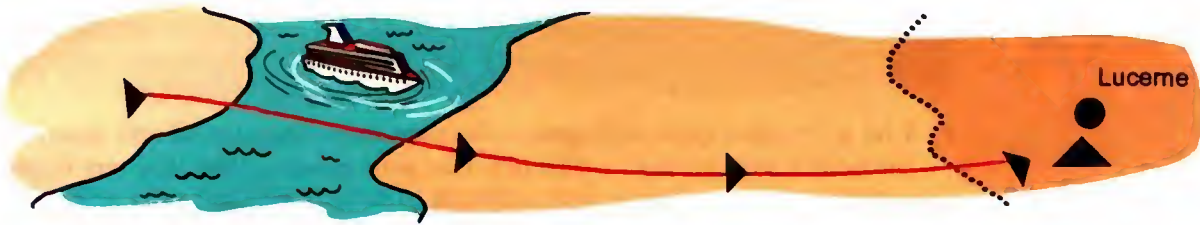
## 37.1 Fill the gaps with *at*, *on* or *in*.

- 1 I put the books ..... the table.
- 2 The butter is ..... the fridge.
- 3 We saw them ..... the bus stop.
- 4 I met her ..... a party.
- 5 She works ..... Moscow.
- 6 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
- 7 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
- 8 I left my books ..... school.
- 9 There was still a lot of snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
- 10 He lives ..... a very nice area.

## 37.2 Complete these dialogues using the opposite preposition.

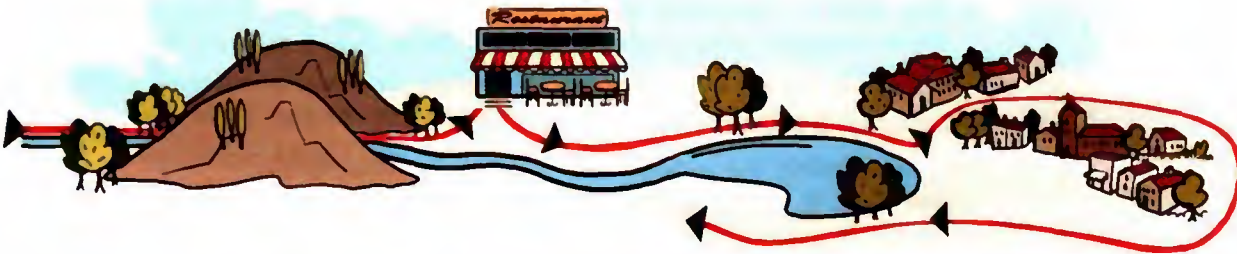
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Was he standing in front of you?<br>No, <u>behind me</u> . | 4 Did you see her get into the car?<br>No, but I saw her get ..... |
| 2 Is it up the hill to his house?<br>No, it's .....          | 5 Does she live in the flat above you?<br>No, she's .....          |
| 3 Did you climb over the fence?<br>No, we got .....          |  |

## 37.3 Look at this picture and complete the description of the route you took on the first day.



We took the boat (1) ..... the channel, then we drove (2) ..... France and (3) ..... Switzerland, where we spent the first night (4) ..... a small town quite (5) ..... Lucerne.

Now look at this picture and complete the description of the second day.



The next morning we walked (6) ..... a river which ran (7) ..... two mountains. We had lunch (8) ..... a small restaurant and then walked (9) ..... the small town of Stans before heading back.



# Exercises

## 38.1 Organise these mixed-up words into correct sentences.

- 1 brother often us Sundays visits on my
- 2 me ever phones she hardly
- 3 have leg my broken never I
- 4 summer ever saw I hardly him the during
- 5 get occasionally I early up
- 6 lose often I glasses quite my

## 38.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has the same meaning.

- 1 She seldom goes to conferences now.
- 2 The cinema was fairly full.
- 3 There were almost 50 people there, you know.
- 4 I thought it was a bit disappointing, didn't you?
- 5 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week.
- 6 We frequently ask them to turn their music down.

## 38.3 Respond to these sentences using 'rather' to show a positive surprise. (You can also add 'actually' at the end of the sentence; this is very common in spoken English.)

- 1 A: Was it a boring evening?  
B: No, it was rather interesting, actually.
- 2 A: Were the children very noisy?  
B: No, they .....
- 3 A: I've heard it's a very dirty town. Is that true?  
B: No, it .....
- 4 A: Was the weather bad?  
B: No, it .....

## 38.4 Change the underlined adverbs to make these sentences more positive.

- 1 I thought they were very good. I thought they were incredibly good.
- 2 He's been getting quite good marks in his exams.
- 3 It's a pretty nice house.

Change these adverbs to make them less negative.

- 4 John said the flat was very small.
- 5 They said it was fairly boring.
- 6 The clothes were very expensive.

## 38.5 Put a frequency adverb into each of these sentences to make a true sentence about yourself. Make sure you put the adverb in the correct place.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I buy clothes I don't like.           | 4 I clean my shoes.                         |
| 2 I remember my dreams.                 | 5 I speak to strangers on buses and trains. |
| 3 I give money to people in the street. | 6 I lose things.                            |

Now think about each of your answers to the above sentences. Do you think they are:  
a fairly typical?    b slightly unusual?    c extremely unusual?

If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

# Time and sequence

## A When/as soon as

I'll phone my uncle **when** I get home.

As soon as I get home I'll phone my uncle.

**When** you've finished this exercise you can go home.

You can go home as soon as you've finished this exercise.

The meaning is the same, but **as soon as** suggests it is more immediate. **When** and **as soon as** can be followed by the present tense or the present perfect [but not *will*].

## B Two things happening at the same time

Pat got ready **while** I cooked the dinner. [Two actions that need similar periods of time.]

The accident happened **while** I was on my way to work. [A longer action 'on my way to work' and a shorter action 'the accident'. We can also use **when** or **as** here.]

I saw him (**just**) as I came out of the office. [For two short actions happening at the same time we use **as**, and we can add **just** for emphasis, e.g. He opened the door **just as** I rang the bell.]

## C One thing after another

We met the others in the café, and **then/afterwards** we went to the match.

I finished my homework, and **after that/afterwards** I played some computer games.

**After** my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.

We had something to eat **before** we went out.

We can also follow **before** and **after** with an *-ing* form:

**After** visiting New York, I ...      We had something to eat **before** going out.

## D A sequence of actions

We had a great holiday. **First of all** we stayed in St Moritz. **Then/After that** we drove down the coast for a few days. **Finally**, we went back to Switzerland to visit friends.

- We can use **afterwards** instead of 'after that', and especially if one thing happens soon after another, e.g. We had a couple of drinks, then **afterwards** we went back to the flat.
- If something happens after a lot of time or problems, you can use **eventually** or **in the end**, in place of **finally**, e.g. The weather was bad and the traffic was awful, but **eventually** we got there.

## E A sequence of reasons

There are different combinations of words and phrases we can use here:

WORKER: Why can't we buy the new photocopiers now?

MANAGER: **First(ly)** we haven't got enough money. **Second(ly)** the new models are not available yet. **And third(ly)** the ones we have will be OK for at least six months.

- In spoken English we can start with **for one thing**, followed by **and for another (thing)**.  
A: What's wrong with that washing machine?  
B: Well, **for one thing** it's too big to go in the space. **And for another**, it's very noisy.
- For a second or final reason, we also use **anyway** in spoken English.  
We can't go to that club because it's too far. **Anyway**, I'm not a member.

# Exercises

## 39.1 Underline the correct word(s) in brackets. Sometimes both answers are correct.

- 1 We can have lunch (when/as soon as) we've finished this.
- 2 I'll give them your message as soon as I (get/will get) there.
- 3 Maria cleaned the kitchen (as/while) I did the bathroom.
- 4 We must go to that gallery before (leave/leaving).
- 5 I had problems at the shop but (eventually/finally) they gave me back my money.
- 6 The phone rang (while/just as) I was shutting the front door.
- 7 The letter arrived (while/just as) we were having lunch.
- 8 We spent the morning in the park and (after that/afterwards) we went home for lunch.

## 39.2 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 I'll give you the answers when you've finished.
- 2 We had a game of squash and afterwards .....
- 3 I'll meet you as soon as .....
- 4 I must remember to lock the back door before .....
- 5 He thinks he dropped the letter as .....
- 6 I worked with a partner. I looked up half of the words while .....
- 7 We had to wait for hours but eventually .....
- 8 If we phone his home, he probably won't be there. Anyway, .....
- 9 I saw him break the window just as .....
- 10 I knew she was angry as soon as .....

## 39.3 Add a final sentence (starting with a suitable link word or phrase) to each of these dialogues.

- 1 A: Why do you want to stay in this evening when we could go to Karl's party?  
B: Well, for one thing because my ex-boyfriend will be there and I really don't want to see him. And .....
- 2 A: What did you do?  
B: First of all we spent a few days in Paris. After that we took the train down to Marseilles and stayed with friends. ....
- 3 A: Why can't we send one of our staff to the conference?  
B: Firstly, I don't think that the company should send anyone to the conference. ....

## 39.4 You spent a weekend at a hotel and had these problems:

- There was very little variety in the food.
- The service was very slow.
- When you mentioned this to the staff, they were very rude.

The manager was on holiday during your stay, so you have decided to send a letter of complaint. Write the next part of this letter and then look at the model answer for the whole letter on page 219.

*Dear Sir,  
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Hotel, and I'm afraid it was not a very enjoyable stay. Firstly, ...*



**A** Also, as well, in addition**NOTE**

In addition and **what's more** are more common in written English.

You can link two ideas in one sentence using **and**, e.g. The food is excellent **and** very good value. When we put this information in two sentences, we can use these link words.

The restaurant has excellent food. It's **also** very good value.

The food is excellent in that restaurant. It's very good value **as well** (or **too**).

You get very good food in that restaurant. **What's more**, it's open every day of the week.

The set menu is £15, which is excellent value. **In addition**, they give you a free glass of wine.

**B** Although, despite, in spite of**NOTE**

It is common to include **still** for emphasis in these sentence contrasts.

When you contrast two ideas in one sentence, and the second idea is surprising or unexpected after the first, you can use these link words at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.

She still won the game, **although/though** she had a bad knee.

**Although/though** some people were getting tired, we decided to carry on for a bit longer.

They went for a walk **despite the fact that** it was raining.

**Despite** having no money, he still seemed very happy.

They got there on time **in spite of** the delay.

**In spite of** all the problems, we still enjoyed the trip.

**Despite/in spite of** can be followed by a noun, an *-ing* form, or a clause beginning **the fact that ...**; **although** is only followed by a clause, e.g. **Although** she had ...

**C** However

**But** contrasts two ideas in one sentence; **however** contrasts two ideas in two sentences. **Though** can be used in a similar way in spoken English, but it comes at the end of the clause.

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. **However**, he is a good teacher.

We didn't like the town that much. **However**, the hotel was wonderful.

I didn't like the film at all. It was better than sitting at home, **though**.

They told us the shop was next to the station. We never found it, **though**.

**D** Whereas, however

**Whereas** and **however** can contrast a fact or opinion about one person, place or thing, with something different about other people, places or things. The second fact is a contrast but not always a surprise. Notice that **whereas** contrasts two ideas in a single sentence.

Sarah is careful **whereas** Christopher makes lots of mistakes.

The south is hot and dry **whereas** the north gets a lot of rain.

Most big cats such as tigers like to live alone. Lions, **however**, spend a lot of time in groups.

Marcel said it was very interesting. **However**, most of them thought it was a fairly stupid film.

## Exercises

**40.1** Organise these words into two groups: words that link ideas with a similar meaning, and words that show a contrast between ideas.

although	in addition	whereas	as well
however	also	what's more	despite

**40.2** Underline the correct word(s) in brackets. Both answers may be correct.

- 1 (Although/In spite of) we left late, we still got there in time.
- 2 It was a fantastic evening (although/in spite of) the terrible food.
- 3 We have decided to go (in spite of/despite) the cost of the tickets.
- 4 They enjoyed the course, (although/whereas) it was very difficult.
- 5 I love the sea (what's more/whereas) most of my friends prefer the mountains.
- 6 We've found a lovely villa near the lake. (In addition/What's more) it has its own swimming pool, and we have free use of the owner's car.
- 7 We told John the car was too expensive. (However/Although), he still bought it.
- 8 Most people tried to help us. They were very friendly (too/as well).
- 9 It's busy during the week. At the weekend, (however/whereas), it's very quiet.
- 10 My uncle owns the factory opposite. He (also/however) runs the restaurant next door.

**40.3** Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

<p>A</p> <p>He went to school today</p> <p>He always worked hard at school</p> <p>He's got the right qualifications.</p> <p>He didn't pass the exam</p> <p>He decided to take the job.</p>	<p>B</p> <p>although</p> <p>in spite of</p> <p>However,</p> <p>whereas</p> <p>What's more.</p>	<p>C</p> <p>it's not really what he wants.</p> <p>he's the most experienced.</p> <p>the help I gave him.</p> <p>he didn't feel very well.</p> <p>most of his classmates were lazy.</p>
--	--	--

**40.4** Fill the gaps with a suitable link word or phrase.

- 1 ..... the fact that they were busy, they still helped us.
- 2 It took me two hours to do it ..... the others finished in half an hour.
- 3 People say the hotel is very good. ...., it's quite cheap.
- 4 People say the hotel is terrible. ...., it's quite cheap.
- 5 She managed to get there, ..... she didn't have a map like the others.
- 6 It's not the best dictionary you can buy. ...., it's better than nothing.
- 7 She's the youngest in the group, and she's better than most of them .....
- 8 I think you can do it. It won't be easy, .....
- 9 Mike is always here on time ..... his brother is late at least twice a week.
- 10 The food's not as good as it was. ...., they've put their prices up.

**40.5** Complete these sentences in a logical way.

- 1 I understood what she was saying although .....
- 2 I was able to follow what she was saying whereas .....
- 3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
- 4 If you buy a season ticket, you can go when you like. What's more, .....
- 5 The exam was very difficult. However, .....
- 6 Although it's a long film, .....

# Similarities, differences, comparisons, exceptions

## A Similarities

These are ways of saying that two or more things are similar, or have something the same. Peter is like his brother/similar to his brother in many ways. (= they are the same in many ways)

Tom and Mark are very similar.

We have similar taste in music/art/etc. (= we like the same music/art/etc.)

There is a similarity between them.

Maria and Rebecca both passed their exams. (= Maria passed and Rebecca passed)

But neither wants to go to university. (= Maria doesn't want to go and Rebecca doesn't want to go)

I really like my cousin, and we have a lot in common. (= we have many of the same interests)

## B Differences

His early films are very different from his later ones.

The two brothers are completely different. (= different in every way)

Paula is quite unlike (= completely different from) her sister.

They have nothing in common. (= they have no hobbies, interests or beliefs that are the same)



## C Comparisons

When we compare two or more things, we study them to see how they are similar or different.

We want to compare the prices before we decide which one to buy.

If you compare this one with the others, I'm sure you'll see a difference.

House prices in the north are very low in comparison with London and the south.

Our new flat is very big compared with/to our old one. (= if you compare it with/to our old one)

## D Exceptions

An 'exception' is when we make a general statement about things or people and then say that one thing or person is not included, or is different from the others.

It snowed everywhere except (= but not) the west coast.

The museum is open every day except/apart from Sunday(s).

Everyone heard the fire alarm except/apart from the two boys in room 7.

We all agreed it was a good idea with the exception of George – but he always disagrees.

'Except' and 'apart from' have a similar meaning, but 'except' is more common. 'Except' can also be followed by 'for'.

Except for a few tourists, the streets were empty.



# Exercises

## 41.1 Fill the gaps with the correct preposition(s).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 He's similar ..... my brother.        | 6 Everyone came apart ..... Sean.                    |
| 2 She's different ..... the others.     | 7 We all agreed ..... the exception<br>..... Pat.    |
| 3 It's cheap compared ..... the others. | 8 It's nice ..... comparison<br>..... the other one. |
| 4 They have a lot ..... common.         |  |
| 5 There is a similarity ..... them.     |  |

## 41.2 Read the information, then complete the sentences below with a word or phrase.

### MICHEL

is 21 and lives with his parents. He works in a shoe shop. He is shy, works hard, and is good at sport. He would like to become manager of a sports shop.

### PHILIPPE

is 22 and lives alone. He is at university. He is clever but lazy, and spends most of his time at parties. He has no plans for the future.

### PAUL

is 20 and lives with his parents. He works in a bank and one day he wants to be manager. He's good at football.

- Michel and Paul are very ...*similar*.....
- Philippe is quite ..... the other two.
- Paul and Michel have a lot .....
- Paul and Philippe have almost nothing .....
- Paul and Michel both .....
- Neither of them .....

## 41.3 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right.

- |   |           |
|---|-----------|
| 1 She's like the others.<br>She's ... <i>similar to the others</i> .....                                | SIMILAR   |
| 2 Manuela is quite unlike her brother.<br>Manuela is completely .....                                   | DIFFERENT |
| 3 When you see their houses, you realise that our house is very small.<br>Our house is very small ..... | COMPARED  |
| 4 In her class, Carla was the only one who didn't pass the exam.<br>Everyone .....                      | EXCEPT    |
| 5 The two girls have completely different interests.<br>The two girls have .....                        | COMMON    |
| 6 It's free every day except Saturday.<br>It's free .....   | APART     |
| 7 Everyone liked it except William.<br>Everyone liked it .....  | EXCEPTION |
| 8 We like the same sorts of clothes.<br>We .....  | SIMILAR   |

## 41.4 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

- In my family, I think I am quite similar to .....
- I am ..... compared with the rest of my family.
- In comparison with Britain, my country is .....
- I think Britain is very different from my country because .....

# Reason, purpose, result, condition

## A Reason

I went home early **because/as** I was feeling a bit tired.

As I was feeling tired, I went home early. [We don't usually start a sentence with 'because'.]

I was feeling a bit tired, so I went home early. [This is very common in spoken English.]

The reason I went home early was **that** I was feeling tired.

We can also use **because of**, but with a different construction. Compare:

They go there **because** the weather is wonderful. [because + noun + verb]

They go there **because of** the wonderful weather. [because of + (adjective) + noun]

**Due** to means the same as **because of**, and is often used to explain the reason for a problem:

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. [Due to is often used after the verb 'to be'.]

## B Purpose

A 'purpose' is an intention or reason for doing something:

The **purpose** of the meeting is to plan the timetable. (= the reason for the meeting is ...)

We often introduce a purpose using **so (that)** or **in order to**:

I bought this book **so (that)** I can improve my English.

They went home early (**in order**) **to** watch the match on television.

We moved house **so (that)** we could send our children to this school.

She went into town (**in order**) **to** do some shopping.

In spoken English, we often say **so (without that)** and **to (without in order)**.

It is also common to use a modal verb, e.g. **can** or **could**, after **so that**.

## C Result

I left my ticket at home, **so** I had to buy another one.

They are a very big team **and therefore** they can get the best players.

I forgot to send the letters. **As a result**, no one knew about the meeting.

**So** is very common in spoken English, and usually links ideas in a single sentence.

**Therefore** is more formal, and can be used in a single sentence or to connect two sentences.

**As a result** is more common in written English, and usually connects ideas in two sentences.

## D Condition

You probably know **if**, but we also use other words to express conditions. Notice the tenses used.

We'll be late **unless** we leave now. (= if we don't leave now)

**Unless** the weather improves (= if the weather doesn't improve), we won't be able to go.

I have to go now, **otherwise** (= because if I don't) I'll miss the last bus.

You'll have to turn up the music, **otherwise** (= because if you don't) they won't be able to hear it.

You can borrow it as long as you bring it back by Thursday. (= but you must bring it back)

You can wear what you like as long as you look smart. (= but you must look smart)

# Exercises

**42.1** Combine the two sentences into one sentence using 'so', 'so that' or 'because'. More than one answer is possible in some sentences.

- 1 I didn't phone you. It was very late. *I didn't phone you because it was very late.*
- 2 I turned up the radio in the lounge. I could hear it in the kitchen.
- 3 The restaurant was full. We went to the bar next door.
- 4 I stayed at home. I was expecting a phone call.
- 5 It's a very large city. You have to use public transport a lot.
- 6 I learned to drive. My mother didn't have to take me everywhere.

**42.2** Rewrite these sentences using 'because of'. Make any changes that are necessary.

- 1 He couldn't play because his arm was broken. *He couldn't play because of his broken arm.*
- 2 She got the job because her qualifications are excellent.
- 3 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside.
- 4 She didn't go to school because she had a bad cold.
- 5 The light was very bad, so the referee had to stop the game.
- 6 The traffic was very heavy; I was half an hour late.

**42.3** Fill the gaps with 'unless', 'otherwise' or 'as long as'.

- 1 I must write that letter now, ..... I'll forget to do it.
- 2 I can meet you for dinner on Friday ..... I have to work late at the office.
- 3 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog ..... she takes it for a walk every day.
- 4 ..... there's a problem, I won't disturb you.
- 5 You can borrow my dictionary ..... you bring it back on Monday.
- 6 You'd better tidy your room, ..... your mother will get very angry.

**42.4** Read this memo from a manager to the staff. Fill each gap with a suitable link word/phrase.

**To:** All staff  
**From:** The Manager  
**Date:** 9th August  
**Subject:** Temporary roadworks

From next Monday, there will be roadworks on all major approach roads to the factory. (1) ..... this will create long delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning (2) ..... everyone arrives on time. The roadworks also mean that you won't be able to park on the street. (3) ..... it may be a good idea to leave your cars at home (4) ..... it is absolutely impossible for you to use public transport.

Thank you for your cooperation in this matter.

**42.5** These sentences are all about learning English. Complete them in a logical way.

- 1 I want to improve my English because .....
- 2 I bought myself a personal stereo so that I .....
- 3 I usually study English at the weekend as I .....
- 4 I always write words down in my notebook, otherwise I .....
- 5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, and therefore .....
- 6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, .....

# The physical world

## A The world and parts of the solar system



Why do people want to go into space? (= the area outside the earth where the stars and planets are)

I'd love to travel round the world.

You find oil in many parts of the world.

It's the coldest place on earth.

The hottest place in the world. (NOT ~~of~~ the world)

There's a five-hour time difference between Britain and New York.

Rio de Janeiro is only three hours behind London.

They're nine hours ahead of us in Sydney.

## B Physical features

### NOTE

Sometimes we need the definite article *the*, e.g. **the** Red Sea; sometimes no article is used, e.g. Mount Everest.

I travelled through the continent of Asia.

China is an enormous country.

We flew over the Atlantic Ocean.

We've got a small house near Lake Como.

The Nile is the longest river in Africa.

We went diving in the Red Sea.

We travelled into the Sahara Desert.

Parts of the Amazon rainforest are disappearing.

Few people have climbed Mount Everest.

Elba is an island just off the coast of Italy.



## C Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens. There is physical damage and people often die.



earthquake



hurricane



flood



volcano/volcanic eruption

The earthquake destroyed many homes. (= many homes are so badly damaged, they don't exist)

They say the hurricane could hit Florida today. (= reach Florida today with great force)

The floods have been terrible – hundreds of people have drowned. (= died from being under water)

There are many active volcanoes in the world, such as Mount Etna.

## Exercises

### 43.1 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 Would you like to go round the world if you had the chance?
- 2 Neil Armstrong was the first man to walk on the .....
- 3 On a clear night you can see lots of .....
- 4 Australia is in the ..... hemisphere.
- 5 If you think of time, is your country ..... Britain or ..... of Britain?
- 6 Is China the largest country ..... the world?

### 43.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 The Nile is a river .....
- 2 The Atlantic is .....
- 3 Greece is .....
- 4 The Sahara is .....
- 5 The Amazon is .....
- 6 The Mediterranean is .....
- 7 Africa is .....
- 8 Crete and Corsica are .....
- 9 Everest is the highest .....
- 10 Michigan and Eyrie are two of the Great .....

### 43.3 Fill the gaps in the text with the definite article (*the*) if necessary.

My journey took me across (1) ..... Atlantic Ocean from (2) ..... Europe to (3) ..... South America. I travelled through (4) ..... Amazon rainforest and down through the interior of (5) ..... Brazil. From there I headed north again, through Bolivia, round (6) ..... Lake Titicaca and up to Cuzco. Then I crossed (7) ..... Andes and finally arrived in Lima. For the last part of the journey I flew to (8) ..... Jamaica in (9) ..... West Indies.

### 43.4 What type of disaster is being described in each of these sentences?

- 1 It lifted a car off the ground, and then we saw it disappear down the street.
- 2 It was about two metres deep and we watched as our furniture just floated away.
- 3 The walls began to move visibly, and large cracks opened up in the ground.
- 4 The heat was incredible and we watched as the red hot lava came down the mountain.

### 43.5 Complete the sentences below using the correct form of the verbs in the box.

destroy   hit   dive   drown   climb   fly

- 1 Two children ..... in the floods when their boat capsized.
- 2 The earthquake ..... the village – there is nothing left.
- 3 It's a fantastic place to go ..... because the water is so clear.
- 4 The plane ..... over the Alps on the way back from Geneva.
- 5 They say the hurricane may ..... the islands later today.
- 6 They're going to ..... the south face of the mountain.



### A Weather conditions

Notice that it is very common to form adjectives by adding '-y'.

<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>
sun	sunny	wind	windy
cloud	cloudy	ice	icy
fog	foggy	shower	showery
heat	hot	humidity	humid

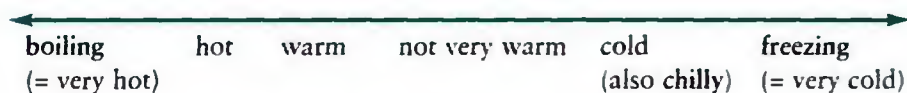
It was very cloudy in the morning, but then the sun came out (= appeared) in the afternoon. The accident happened in thick fog (= bad fog) on the motorway.

### B Rain

For light rain (= raining a bit) we can use **drizzle**, e.g. It was cloudy with a bit of drizzle. For heavy rain (= raining a lot) we often use **pour**, e.g. It's **pouring (with rain)** outside. Rain for a short period of time is a **shower**, e.g. We had several showers today – some quite heavy.

### C Temperature

thermometer



- A: How hot does it get in the summer?  
 B: It can reach about 35°. (= 35 degrees)  
 A: How cold does it get in the winter?  
 B: It often goes below 0. (= zero)

### D Wind

a breeze    a wind    a strong wind    a gale    a hurricane

A breeze is gentle and pleasant; a hurricane is over 100 km per hour and can be dangerous. It was a hot day but there was a gentle breeze. Her hair was blowing in the wind. The trees were damaged in the gale last night. The hurricane destroyed many buildings.

### E Thunderstorms

A period of very hot weather is sometimes called a **heatwave**, and it often ends with a **thunderstorm**. First it becomes very **humid** (= when the air feels wet), then you get **thunder and lightning**, and finally very heavy rain. Afterwards, it is often cooler and feels fresher.



# Exercises

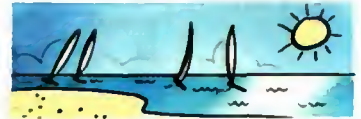
## 44.1 Identify the weather conditions in these pictures.



1 .....

2 .....

3 .....



4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

## 44.2 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 We had really thick ..... this morning.
- 2 When it's hot, you still get a lovely ..... off the sea.
- 3 I hope we don't get any more thunder and .....
- 4 We had a heavy ..... of rain this morning, but it only lasted a few minutes.
- 5 The hurricane completely ..... the village. There's nothing left.
- 6 It's quite hot when the sun ..... out.
- 7 What's the ..... today? It feels much colder than yesterday.
- 8 They said it was ten degrees below ..... in New York yesterday. That's too cold for me.

## 44.3 True or False? (If a sentence is false, change it to make it true.)

- 1 When it's foggy you need sunglasses. *False (When it's foggy you can't see very well.)*
- 2 It gets quite chilly in the desert in the evening.
- 3 Thunder makes a noise.
- 4 Lightning can kill people.
- 5 A shower is a type of wind.
- 6 If it is humid, the air will be very dry.
- 7 Heavy rain means that it is pouring with rain.
- 8 It often pours with rain in the desert.

## 44.4 Complete this text with suitable words.

An important influence on Japanese weather is the wind. During the summer it (1) ..... from the Pacific, causing (2) ..... and humid weather, but in winter, the north-westerly (3) ..... from Siberia are very cold and it (4) ..... heavily on the mountains in the north-west. The south-eastern parts receive cold dry air. Between June and mid-July, there is a period of very wet weather when the rice fields get the water they need. After that, there is less heavy rain, but the air is still (5) ..... . Autumn, however, is drier and usually very pleasant.

Write a paragraph about the weather in your own country, or a specific part of your country, e.g. your own region. Try to use as many words as possible from the opposite page.

# Animals and insects

## A Pets and farm animals

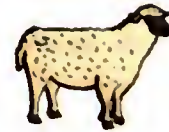
### NOTE

The word 'sheep' is the singular and plural form. A young sheep is called a **lamb**.

Many people keep pets (= own and look after domestic animals that live with people) in Britain.

The most common are dogs and cats, but people also keep mice (singular = a mouse), rabbits and goldfish.

Farm animals include: sheep, pigs, cows, horses, chickens and goats.



sheep



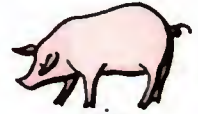
goat



rabbit



mouse



pig

## B Wild animals

You will find these animals in a zoo or in the wild. (= living free, e.g. in parts of Africa)



camel



bear



tiger



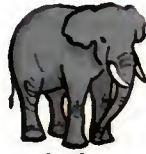
leopard



giraffe



gorilla



elephant



lion



monkey



zebra

Some animals that live in the wild are in danger of extinction (= they may not exist much longer), so it is important that we protect them. (= make sure they stay safe)

## C Insects



bee



ant



mosquito



butterfly



fly



spider

## D In the water, in the air and on the ground

Here are some creatures (= living things, e.g. animals and birds) that swim, fly or move along the ground (e.g. a snake).



whale



shark



eagle



snail



snake

# Exercises

**45.1** Look at the underlined letters in each pair of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Use the pronunciation guide in the Index to help you.

Examples    whale    water (different)  
                  cat      camel (same)

- |           |          |           |           |
|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 lion    | tiger    | 6 monkey  | mosquito  |
| 2 leopard | mosquito | 7 camel   | snake     |
| 3 bear    | eagle    | 8 leopard | shark     |
| 4 gorilla | giraffe  | 9 monkey  | butterfly |
| 5 spider  | wild     | 10 mouse  | cow       |

**45.2** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 I've only ever seen ..... animals on television, or in a zoo.
- 2 Some animals are in ..... of extinction.
- 3 I don't just hate spiders and mosquitoes – I hate all .....
- 4 We used to ..... animals on our farm.
- 5 Snakes can move along the ..... really fast if they want.
- 6 Some animals are disappearing – it's very important that we ..... them, so they continue to exist.

**45.3** Arrange these words into three groups: farm animals, wild animals, and insects.

monkey	horse	goat	fly
lion	zebra	elephant	pig
mosquito	tiger	bee	sheep
camel	ant	leopard	bear

**45.4** Complete the sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 They've got lots of pets: two dogs, four cats, and a .....
- 2 Their farm animals include cows, sheep and .....
- 3 The children love to see the 'big cats' at the zoo such as lions, tigers and .....
- 4 I hate most insects, but particularly mosquitoes and .....
- 5 We saw some really large animals at the safari park: elephants, giraffes and .....

**45.5** Start each sentence with a suitable creature from the opposite page.

- 1 Eagles ..... can fly at a great height.
- 2 ..... can swim very long distances.
- 3 ..... can understand lots of human commands.
- 4 ..... can run very fast.
- 5 ..... can travel through the desert for long distances without water.
- 6 ..... can be 30 metres in length.
- 7 ..... can eat leaves from tall trees.
- 8 ..... change their skin several times a year.
- 9 ..... can pick things up with their trunk.
- 10 ..... provide us with wool.

**A** Who speaks what where?

<i>country</i>	<i>nationality</i>	<i>language</i>
Argentina	Argentinian	Spanish
Brazil	Brazilian	Portuguese
Britain	British	English
China	Chinese	Mandarin (also Cantonese)
Egypt	Egyptian	Arabic
France	French	French
Germany	German	German
Greece	Greek	Greek
Israel	Israeli	Hebrew
Italy	Italian	Italian
Japan	Japanese	Japanese
Korea	Korean	Korean
Mexico	Mexican	Spanish
Poland	Polish	Polish
Russia	Russian	Russian
Saudi Arabia	Saudi Arabian	Arabic
Spain	Spanish	Spanish
Switzerland	Swiss	Swiss-German, French, Italian
The United States (USA)	American	English
Turkey	Turkish	Turkish

I come from Argentina, so I am Argentinian and my first language is Spanish. The capital is Buenos Aires, which has a population of more than 10 million people.

**B** Regions

There are some names for regions of the world that we often use.

Europe (e.g. Britain, Spain, etc.)

the Mediterranean (e.g. Italy, Spain, etc.)

the Far East (e.g. China, Japan, etc.)

the Middle East (e.g. Egypt, Iran, etc.)

the Caribbean (e.g. Jamaica, Trinidad, etc.)

South/Latin America (e.g. Brazil, Chile, etc.)

**C** The people

When we are talking about people from a particular country, nationalities ending in '-i' or '-(i)an' can be made plural with an 's', but most others are formed with the definite article (and no 's').

(The) Thais/Israelis

Brazilians/Russians

} are ...

The British

The French

} are ...

**D** Talking about people in general

These are common ways of talking about people 'in general'.

The British are generally ...

I think most French people are ...

Russians tend to be very ...

In general, Polish people are quite ...

# Exercises

**46.1** Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.

- 1 Write down three countries whose first language is English.
- 2 What language is spoken in Brazil?
- 3 Write down three languages spoken in Switzerland.
- 4 What language is spoken in Saudi Arabia?
- 5 What nationality are people from Poland?
- 6 What language is spoken in Mexico?
- 7 Where do people speak Hebrew?
- 8 Where do people speak Mandarin?

**46.2** What regions of the world are these countries in?

- |                |               |                        |             |
|----------------|---------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1 Germany      | <i>Europe</i> | 3 Jamaica              | 5 Japan     |
| 2 Saudi Arabia |               | 4 Corsica and Sardinia | 6 Argentina |

**46.3** Underline the main stress on the words in the box, and practise saying them.

Brazilian	Japan	Japanese	Egyptian
Arabic	Italian	Austria	Korea
Chinese	Germany	Saudi Arabia	Egypt

**46.4** Complete these sentences with the name of the people from the country on the right.

- |   |             |
|---|-------------|
| <i>Examples</i> I've worked a lot with <i>Germans/German people</i> . | GERMANY     |
| I've spent lots of time with <i>the French/French people</i> .        | FRANCE      |
| 1 We do a lot of business with .....                                  | JAPAN       |
| 2 I used to know a lot of .....                                       | ISRAEL      |
| 3 I have always found ..... very friendly.                            | BRAZIL      |
| 4 People often say that ..... are reserved.                           | BRITAIN     |
| 5 ..... are very organised.   | SWITZERLAND |
| 6 I met a lot of ..... on my trip to Moscow.                          | RUSSIA      |

**46.5** Complete these sentences.

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 Athens is the capital of ..... | 4 Moscow is the capital of ..... |
| 2 Ankara is the capital of ..... | 5 Warsaw is the capital of ..... |
| 3 Seoul is the capital of .....  | 6 Madrid is the capital of ..... |

**46.6** Answer these questions about yourself. If possible, ask somebody from a different country.

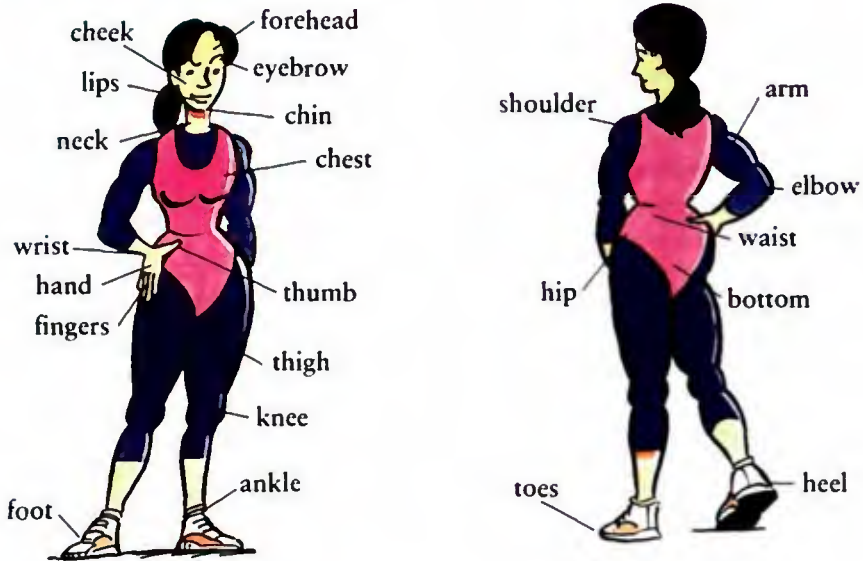
- 1 Where do you come from?
- 2 What's the total population?
- 3 What's your first language?
- 4 What's the capital city?

**46.7** Write this sentence in three more different ways to make it more of a generalisation.

'British people are polite.'    I think most British people are polite.

# The body and what it can do

## A Parts of the body



The outer part of the body is covered in skin, e.g. Too much sun is bad for your skin.

## B Physical actions

People **breathe** through the nose or mouth, and **breathe in and out** 12–15 times a minute. People **smile** when they're happy, and sometimes **smile at** people to be polite. Funny things make people **laugh** – for example, when someone **tells a joke**. People sometimes **cry** if they're unhappy or receive bad news. They **yawn** when they're tired or bored. People in some countries **nod their head** to mean 'yes', and **shake their head** for 'no'.

## C Common expressions



shake hands with somebody



bite your nails



fold your arms



blow your nose



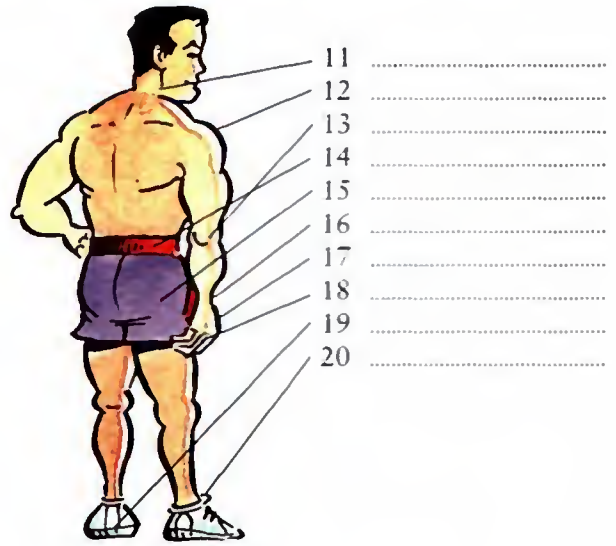
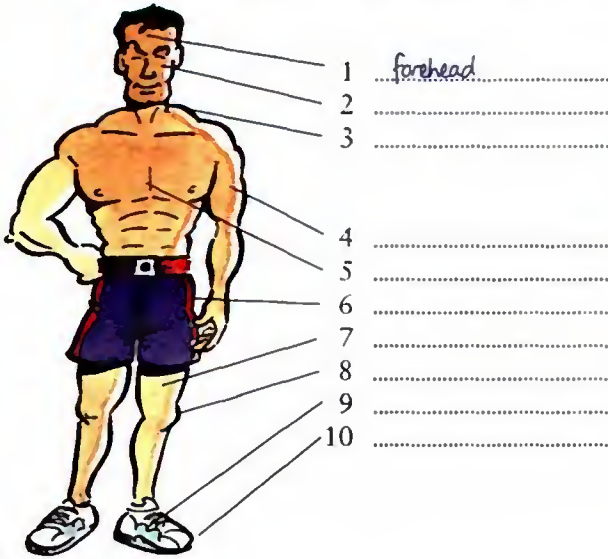
comb your hair

# Exercises

**47.1** Find 13 more words describing parts of the body, either across or down, in this word square.

C	E	L	B	O	W	A
H	T	I	A	E	N	R
I	O	P	C	Y	A	M
N	E	C	K	E	I	H
I	H	A	N	K	L	E
K	C	H	E	S	T	E
C	H	E	E	K	A	L

**47.2** How much of the picture can you label without looking at the opposite page?



**47.3** Match the verbs on the left with a part of the body on the right to form common expressions.

- |         |   |            |
|---------|---|------------|
| 1 shake | } | your arms  |
| 2 bite  |   | your nose  |
| 3 comb  |   | your nails |
| 4 fold  |   | your head  |
| 5 blow  |   | hands      |
| 6 nod   |   | your hair  |

**47.4** What do these actions often mean? (There may be several possible answers.)

- 1 People often smile when they're happy.....
- 2 They often breathe quickly after .....
- 3 They laugh when .....
- 4 They may bite their nails .....
- 5 They blow their nose .....
- 6 They shake their head .....
- 7 And nod their head .....
- 8 They cry .....
- 9 They yawn when .....



# Describing people's appearance

## A General descriptions

*Positive:* beautiful is generally used to describe women; handsome is used to describe men; good-looking and attractive are used for both. Pretty is another positive word to describe a woman (often a girl), meaning 'attractive and nice to look at'.

*Negative:* ugly is a very negative word; plain is negative but more polite.

## B Height and build



tall and slim



medium height and build



medium height and very muscular



short and fat

Another word for slim is thin, but with a more negative meaning, e.g. John is lovely and slim, but his brother is very thin. It is not very polite to say someone is fat; overweight is a bit less rude.

## C Hair



blond(e)



fair



brown



dark



black



straight



wavy



curly hair

## D Special features

The man on the left has very pale skin (= light skin). He also has broad shoulders, with a scar on his forehead. The other man has dark skin. He also has a beard and moustache.



## E Asking questions about a person's appearance

Q: What does she look like?

A: She's tallish, with short fair hair.

Q: How tall is she?

A: About 1 metre 65.

Q: How much does she weigh?

A: I don't know – roughly 50 kilos, I guess.

We can use about and roughly to mean 'more or less' when talking about height (= how tall someone is), weight (= how heavy is someone) or age. The suffix '-ish' can be used at the end of some adjectives to mean 'quite' and at the end of some numbers to mean 'more or less'.

She's got longish hair.

He's twentyish.

She's roughly 40.

# Exercises

**48.1** Complete these sentences in a suitable way. (More than one answer may be possible.)

- 1 He's got very muscular arms.
- 2 She's got blonde .....
- 3 He's got very pale .....
- 4 They've both got curly .....
- 5 I would say he was medium .....
- 6 Her brother has got very broad .....
- 7 Last time I saw him he had grown a beard and .....
- 8 Both men were very good- .....

**48.2** Replace the underlined word with a word which is more suitable or more polite.

- 1 He told me he met a handsome girl in the disco last night. *beautiful*
- 2 She's beautiful but her younger sister is really quite ugly.
- 3 I think Peter is getting a bit fat, don't you?
- 4 I think she's hoping to meet a few beautiful men at the tennis club.
- 5 Paul is very thin.

**48.3** You want to know about the following: someone's general appearance; their height; their weight. What do you need to ask? Complete these questions.

- 1 What ..... ?
- 2 How ..... ?
- 3 How much ..... ?

**48.4** Make these sentences less exact. Do it in a different way each time.

- 1 She's 20. *She's 20, more or less.*
- 2 I'm 75 kilos.
- 3 She's 1 metre 70.
- 4 They're both 30.

**48.5** Now answer these questions.

- 1 How tall are you?
- 2 How would you describe your build?
- 3 How much do you weigh?
- 4 What kind of hair have you got?
- 5 What colour is it?
- 6 Would you like it to be different? If so, what else would you like to change about your appearance?
- 7 Do you think you have any special features?
- 8 Are there any special features you would like to have?
- 9 Do you like beards?
- 10 Can you think of a famous woman you would describe as beautiful, and a famous man you would describe as good-looking?

If possible, ask another person these questions.

# Describing character

## A Opposites

### NOTE

**Sympathetic** doesn't mean 'nice' in English. We use it to describe a person who understands other people's feelings/problems, e.g. She was very **sympathetic** when I explained the problem.

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
warm and friendly	cold and <b>unfriendly</b>
<b>kind</b> (= cares about others)	<b>unkind</b>
nice, <b>pleasant</b>	horrible, <b>unpleasant</b>
<b>generous</b> (= happy to give/share)	<b>mean</b> (= never gives to others)
<b>optimistic</b> (= thinks positively)	<b>pessimistic</b> (= thinks negatively)
<b>easy-going</b> (= relaxed, calm)	<b>tense</b> (= nervous; worries a lot; not calm)
<b>sensitive</b> (= thinks about people's feelings)	<b>insensitive</b>
<b>honest</b> (= always tells the truth)	<b>dishonest</b>
<b>good fun</b> (= enjoyable to be with)	boring
<b>broad-minded</b>	<b>narrow-minded</b> (= unable to accept new ideas)

My parents are great and don't mind what I wear – they're very **broad-minded**.  
When I tried on the dress, the shop assistant said it would look better on a younger person. I know she was trying to be **honest**, but it was a bit **insensitive** of her.

## B What's he/she like?

He's very **self-confident**. (= feels he can do things, and is relaxed in social situations)  
When you first meet her she seems **shy**. (= finds it difficult to talk to people and make conversation)  
She doesn't **show her feelings**. (= you don't know what she is thinking or feeling)  
He's got a great sense of **humour**. (= laughs a lot and sees the funny side of life)

## C Describing character in work situations

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
<b>hard-working</b>	<b>lazy</b> (= never does any work)
<b>punctual</b> (= always on time)	not very punctual; always late
<b>reliable</b>	<b>unreliable</b> (= you cannot trust/depend on someone like this)
clever	<b>stupid</b>
<b>flexible</b>	<b>inflexible</b> (= a fixed way of thinking and unable to change)
<b>ambitious</b>	not ambitious (= no desire to be successful/get a better job)
has lots of <b>common sense</b> (= thinks in a practical way; doesn't do stupid things)	has no common sense; <b>an idiot</b> (= a stupid person)

## D First impressions

We use **impression** to talk about the effect that a person has on another person.  
She **made a very good impression** at her interview. (= had a positive effect on the interviewer)  
My **first impression** of him was a bit negative.  
She comes across as (= appears to be) quite serious.

# Exercises

49.1 Organise these words into pairs of opposites and put them in the columns below.

mean      clever      nice      lazy      relaxed  
 hard-working      tense      generous      unpleasant      stupid

positive	negative
clever	
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

49.2 Which prefix forms the opposite of these words? (You need three different prefixes.)

unhappy      flexible      friendly      honest  
 reliable      sensitive      kind      pleasant

49.3 How would you describe the person in each of these descriptions?

- 1 She's always here on time. *punctual*
- 2 He never bought me a drink in ten years.
- 3 She often promises to do things but half the time she forgets.
- 4 I don't think he's done any work since he's been here.
- 5 She finds it difficult to meet people and talk to strangers.
- 6 He can work in any of the departments – on his own or part of a team.
- 7 One of her qualities is that she is so aware of what other people think or feel.
- 8 I know Mike wants to be head of the department and then go on to a bigger company.

49.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 At work, James ..... across as serious and a bit boring, but outside of work he's completely different; he's really good .....
- 2 It's important to ..... a good impression on your first day in a new job.
- 3 I'm sure he can find the place; he just needs to use his common .....
- 4 Meeting new people doesn't worry her; she's a very self-..... young woman.
- 5 It's hard to know what Sam thinks – he doesn't really ..... his feelings.
- 6 Do you think ..... impressions are very important? I do.
- 7 I always have a laugh with my cousin – he's got a great sense of .....
- 8 She is so .....-minded: she cannot accept any ideas different from her own.

49.5 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives? Use a dictionary to help you.

kind      kindness      optimistic      punctual      lazy      confident      ambitious

49.6 Choose three words from the opposite page which describe you. Is there one quality you do not have but would like to have? What, in your opinion, is the worst quality described on the opposite page? If possible, compare your answers with a friend.

## A Feelings/emotions

<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective(s)</i>
love ( <i>opp</i> hate)	–
happiness ( <i>opp</i> sadness)	happy ( <i>opp</i> sad)
anger	angry
fear	afraid (of)/frightened (of)
pride	proud (of)
jealousy	jealous (of)
embarrassment	embarrassed/embarrassing (see Unit 36)

Pride can be a positive feeling when you (or people you know) have done something well.

I'm not a great photographer, but I'm proud of my pictures because I taught myself.

He was very proud when his wife became the first president of the organisation.

Jealousy is a negative feeling of anger/unhappiness, often if someone you love shows a lot of interest in others, or if someone has something you want and don't have.

My boyfriend gets very jealous when I talk to other boys.

He's jealous of his sister because she's more intelligent.

Upset is a common adjective, and means unhappy, sad, and sometimes angry.

He was upset when they didn't invite him. She gets upset if you shout at her.

## B How do you feel?

I felt very sad when I left university and all my friends.

It was a great feeling when I finished all my exams.

She had mixed feelings (= not sure what to think or feel) about leaving her job.

## C Ways of speaking, looking and walking

whisper (= speak very quietly)

shout (= speak in a very loud voice)

glance (at) (= look at sb/sth very quickly)

stare (at) (= look at sb/sth for a long time)

stroll (= walk in a slow casual way)

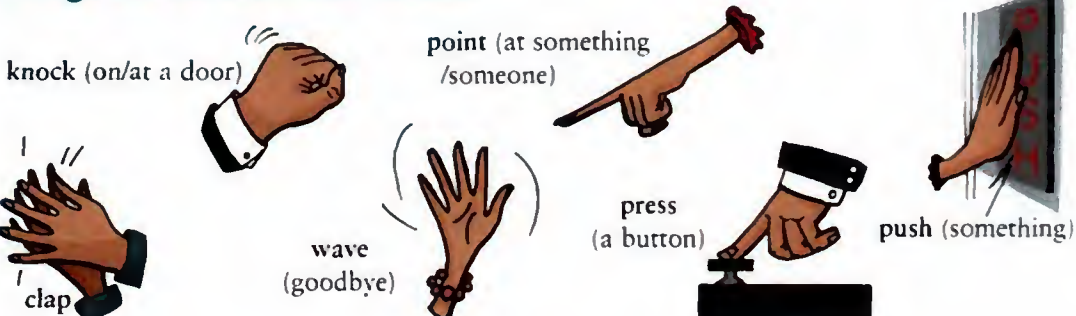
march (= walk quickly and with a clear reason)

These words can also function as nouns with no change in form.

I heard a shout from inside.

We had a stroll on the beach.

## D Things we do with our hands



# Exercises

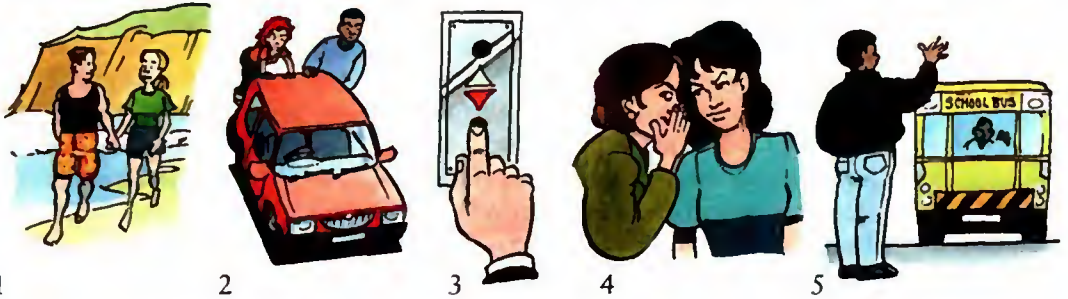
## 50.1 What nouns can be formed from these adjectives?

- |         |         |           |               |
|---------|---------|-----------|---------------|
| 1 sad   | sadness | 3 angry   | 5 happy       |
| 2 proud |         | 4 jealous | 6 embarrassed |

## 50.2 Find the logical ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 He was very proud when       | a someone stole his money.                       |
| 2 He was very jealous when     | b his father appeared on TV.                     |
| 3 He was very embarrassed when | c he heard his aunt had died.                    |
| 4 He was very angry when       | d he saw the man had a knife.                    |
| 5 He was very sad when         | e he sent her a birthday card on the wrong day.  |
| 6 He was very frightened when  | f his best friend went out with a girl he liked. |

## 50.3 What are these people doing? Describe their actions using words from the opposite page.



## 50.4 Replace the underlined words with a single verb that has the same meaning.

- 1 She stopped working and looked quickly at the clock.
- 2 As we were in the library, he spoke very quietly in my ear.
- 3 We walked casually along the beach and then stopped for a drink.
- 4 He made us all walk quickly up the hill.
- 5 The man kept looking at Susan, but she didn't seem to notice.
- 6 He kept talking in a very loud voice.

## 50.5 Fill the gaps with the missing preposition.

- |                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 I knocked ..... the door.       | 4 Why is he pointing ..... the clock? |
| 2 She glanced ..... her watch.    | 5 He's very proud ..... them.         |
| 3 She's jealous ..... her sister. | 6 What are they afraid ..... ?        |

## 50.6 Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 How would you feel if you forgot your mother's birthday or your father's birthday?
- 2 How do you feel when you are in a car that is going very fast?
- 3 How do you feel when other people ask you to do things that you don't want to do?
- 4 If you made a stupid mistake in English, how would you feel?
- 5 Is there any one thing that you are very proud of?
- 6 Are there any common situations where you sometimes feel embarrassed?
- 7 How do you feel about going home after a wonderful holiday?
- 8 Have you left school? If so, did you have mixed feelings when you left? If you haven't left school, do you think you'll have mixed feelings when you leave?

## A Relatives (= members of your family)

### NOTE

In English we usually say 'my uncle's daughter' (NOT ~~the daughter of my uncle~~) or 'Anna's sister' (NOT ~~the sister of Anna~~).

	<i>male</i>	<i>female</i>
Your parents' parents	grandfather(s)	grandmother(s)
Your parents' brother and sister	uncle(s)	aunt(s)
Your aunt's/uncle's children	cousin(s)	cousin(s)
The father and mother of the person you marry	father-in-law	mother-in-law
The brother and sister of the person you marry	brother-in-law	sister-in-law
Your brother's/sister's children	nephew(s)	niece(s)
If the person you marry dies, you are a ...	widower	widow
If your mother or father remarries, you have a ...	stepfather	stepmother

## B Talking about family and friends

I've got two brothers and a sister. My brothers are **twins** (= two children born to one mother at the same time), and they are three years younger than me. I'm the oldest and I **take after** my father (= I am similar to him in appearance and/or character). My sister **takes after** my father in some ways, but she **looks like** my mother (= her appearance is similar to my mother's). We're a **close family** (= we have a good relationship/see each other a lot). My best friend Pete is an **only child** (= without brothers or sisters); he spends a lot of time with us and he's almost one of the family.

## C Family names

Your parents give you a **first name**, e.g. James and Sarah are common first names in Britain. Your **family name**, usually called your **surname**, is the one that all the family have, e.g. Smith and Jones. Your **full name** is all the names you have, e.g. Sarah Jane Smith.

## D Changing times

In some parts of the world, couples may live together but do not get married. In this relationship they often call each other **their partner**. Where the child or children live(s) with just one parent, especially after the parents have **separated** (= they don't live together any more), these are sometimes called **single-parent families**.

## E Friends

an **old friend** (= someone you have known for a long time)  
 a **close friend** (= a good friend/someone you like and trust)  
 your **best friend** (= the one friend you feel closest to)  
**classmates** (= other people in your class)  
**flatmates** (= people you share a house/flat with, who are not your family)  
**colleagues** (= people you work with; they may or may not be friends)

## F Ex-

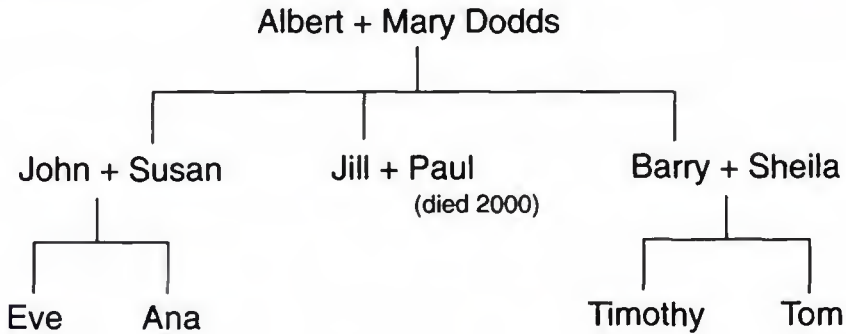
We use this for a relationship that we had in the past but do not have now:

The children stay with my **ex-husband** at the weekend.

I saw an **ex-girlfriend** of mine at the disco last night.

# Exercises

51.1 Look at the family tree and complete the sentences below.



- 1 John is Jill's .....
- 2 Timothy is Jill's .....
- 3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's .....
- 4 Eve is Sheila's .....
- 5 Albert Dodds is Tom's .....
- 6 Barry is Eve's .....
- 7 Susan is Timothy's .....
- 8 As Paul died in 2000, Jill is a .....
- 9 Tom is Mary's .....
- 10 The only two people who are not related are ..... and .....

51.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 Did you say his ..... name was Boris?
- 2 He looks like his mother but definitely takes ..... his father in character.
- 3 There is an increasing number of single-..... families in Britain.
- 4 Most of my ..... at work are married, and I don't see them socially.
- 5 I've known him for years; he's an ..... friend.
- 6 They're not married any longer, but she still sees her .....-husband.

51.3 Answer these questions about yourself.

- 1 What's your first name?
- 2 What's your surname?
- 3 Are you an only child?
- 4 Are you part of a very close family?
- 5 Do you look like your father or mother?
- 6 In character, who do you take after?
- 7 Do you know any twins?
- 8 Who is your best friend?
- 9 Do you work? If so, how many of your work colleagues are also your friends?
- 10 Do you have any ex-boyfriends or girlfriends who are still close friends?

51.4 Draw your own family tree. Are there any relationships you cannot describe in English?



## A Growing up and growing old

## NOTE

The period between 13 and 17 approximately is called **adolescence**, and the boy/girl is an **adolescent**.

<i>age</i>	<i>stage</i>
0–1 approximately	a baby
1–2	a toddler
2–12 approximately	a child – this period is your childhood
13–17 approximately	a teenager (14 = early teens)
18 +	an adult
20–29	in your twenties (24–26 = mid-twenties)
30–39	in your thirties (38 = late thirties)
40 +	people are middle-aged
60 or 65	retirement (= when people stop work; they are retired)
75 +	old age (you can describe people as elderly)

## B Childhood and adolescence

Sam (on the right) was born in Scotland but when he was two, his father got a new job in Los Angeles, and he grew up in California. He went to university at 19 where ...



## C Romance



... he met Anthea. He went out with her (= she was his girlfriend; he was her boyfriend) for three years, but towards the end they had lots of rows (= arguments) and finally they split up (= separated/ended their relationship). In his mid-twenties he met Marie. They fell in love and ...

## D Marriage

... got married within six months. One year later she got pregnant and they had their first child, a boy. But the marriage was not a success. Sam left two years afterwards and they got divorced (= the marriage ended officially). Four years later, Marie remarried (= got married again), and as you can see in the picture, she is now expecting a second baby (= she's pregnant).



# Exercises

## 52.1 What stage of life are these people at?

- 1 Paul isn't two yet, so he's still a toddler.....
- 2 Albert was a bus driver for 40 years but stopped work two years ago, so he's now .....
- 3 Susan is 25, so she is in her .....
- 4 Caroline is 48 this year so she is now in her .....
- 5 Ron is 33 and his wife is 32, so they are both in their .....
- 6 Joan is 75 this year, so she is quite .....
- 7 Jason was born six weeks ago, so he's a .....
- 8 Leyla is 13 this year, so she'll soon be a .....
- 9 Ravi is 18 this year, so legally he becomes an .....
- 10 15 is often a difficult age for boys going through .....

## 52.2 Are these sentences true or false about the people on the opposite page? If false, write the correct answer below. Try to answer the questions first without looking at the opposite page.

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| 1 Sam was born in Ireland.<br><u>Sam was born in Scotland</u> ..... | True/ <u>False</u> |
| 2 He grew up in the south of Ireland.<br>.....                      | True/False         |
| 3 He went out with Anthea for two years.<br>.....                   | True/False         |
| 4 They split up because Sam went to live in Japan.<br>.....         | True/False         |
| 5 Sam fell in love with Marie.<br>.....                             | True/False         |
| 6 They had a baby a year after they got married.<br>.....           | True/False         |
| 7 Marie is now expecting her third child.<br>.....                  | True/False         |
| 8 Marie left Sam.<br>.....  | True/False         |

## 52.3 Find the logical ending for each of the sentence beginnings on the left and construct Rebecca's life.

- |                          |  |
|--------------------------|--|
| 1 Rebecca was born       | a was a boy at her secondary school.   |
| 2 She grew up            | b in her early thirties.               |
| 3 Her first boyfriend    | c on a farm with lots of animals.      |
| 4 She went out with him  | d when she was in her late twenties.   |
| 5 She went to university | e in a small local hospital in 1972.   |
| 6 She fell in love       | f for six months.                      |
| 7 They got married       | g just after the baby was born.        |
| 8 She had a baby         | h with another student doing medicine. |
| 9 Her father retired     | i when she left school.                |

How many of the sentence beginnings on the left can you complete about your own life? Complete the ones you can.

# Daily routines

## A Sleep

During the week I usually wake up at 6.30 am. I sometimes **lie in bed** (= stay in bed) for 5–10 minutes but then I have to **get up** (= get out of bed and put on clothes). Most evenings I go to bed about 11.30 pm, and usually go to **sleep/fall asleep** very quickly. If I have a **late night** (= go to bed very late; *opp* an early night), it's easy to **oversleep** (= sleep too long) the next morning, then I may be late for work. If I can, I have a **sleep** (= for a short period, e.g. half an hour) in the afternoon. At weekends I often have a **lie-in** (= stay in bed until later, e.g. 9.30 am).

## B Food

### NOTE

Usually there is no definite article (*the*) with **breakfast, lunch** or **dinner**.

In the week I have **breakfast** at 7.00 am, **lunch** at 1.00, and **dinner** around 7 pm. I also have one or two **snacks** (= food eaten between meals, e.g. a cake or biscuits) during the day. As I live **alone/on my own** (= without other people), I have to **make my own breakfast and dinner** (= prepare breakfast and dinner for myself), but during the week I don't **bother** (= don't make an effort) to cook very much. I also have to **feed** (= give food to) my cats twice a day.

## C Keeping clean

In the summer I have a **shower** in the morning, but in the winter I often have a **bath** instead (= in place of a shower). Sometimes I have a **shave** at the same time, or I shave when I **have a wash and clean/brush** my teeth after breakfast. I **wash my hair** two or three times a week.



English often uses a verb + noun construction, where other languages may use a verb or reflexive verb, e.g. **I had a wash** (NOT ~~I washed~~ or ~~I washed myself~~); **I had a rest** (NOT ~~I rested~~ or ~~I rested myself~~).

## D Work

In the morning I **leave home** about 8.15 am and **get to work** (= arrive at work) by 9 am. I have a **lunch break** (= period when I stop work for lunch) from 1–2 pm, and usually a couple of **short breaks** (= periods to relax) during the day. I **leave work** around 5.30 and **get home** about 6.15.

## E Spare time (= free time)

In the week I usually **stay in** (= stay at home) and watch TV or read in the evening. At the weekend I **go out** (= leave the house for social reasons, e.g. go to a cinema or disco), but I also **have friends for dinner** (= invite friends to my house and cook dinner for them), or **friends come round** (= visit me at the house) to **play cards**, e.g. poker or bridge.

## F Housework

I do the **shopping** (= buy the food and household goods) on Saturday. **Fortunately/Luckily** (= it is lucky for me) I have a **cleaner** (= a person who cleans) and she does most of the housework: she **does my washing** (= washes my clothes), she **does the washing-up** (= washes the dishes) and most of the **ironing**.

# Exercises

**53.1** How many expressions with 'have + noun' from the opposite page can you remember?

have breakfast ..... have a shower ..... have .....  
 have ..... have ..... have .....

**53.2** Match the verbs on the left with the correct word on the right to form common partnerships.

1 do	a rest
2 fall	my teeth
3 have	the dog
4 play	asleep
5 go	cards
6 clean	the ironing
7 feed	early
8 get up	to bed

**53.3** Complete this dialogue with a suitable word or phrase from the opposite page.

A: Don't (1) bother ..... to cook a meal this evening.  
 B: Why not?  
 A: We could (2) ..... instead.  
 B: Yeah. Where?  
 A: Well, I'd like to go to that Korean restaurant. We could ask Karen and Mike to come.  
 B: That's miles away. No, I think I'd rather (3) ..... and have an  
 (4) ..... night.  
 A: But it's Friday. You can have a (5) ..... tomorrow if we have a late night.  
 B: Yes, I know, but I'm tired. Look, why don't you ask Karen and Mike to  
 (6) ..... for a meal? I can order some pizzas from the takeaway and we'll  
 have a nice evening here. We can (7) ..... cards or watch a few videos.  
 A: Sorry, but if you don't want to come with me, I'll go (8) .....

**53.4** Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1 What time do you have the breakfast?	4 I live by my own.
2 In the morning I always let home at 8 o'clock.	5 I usually wash the hair every day.
3 I didn't shave me this morning.	6 I went to bed and slept very quickly.

**53.5** Complete the phrasal verb in these sentences.

1 I usually wake ..... around 7.30, and then get ..... about 8.  
 2 During the week I usually stay ....., but at the weekend I always go .....  
 3 Sometimes friends come ..... to the house and we play cards.

**53.6** Find three facts from the opposite page which are similar to your routine, and three that are different. Complete the table below.

similar	different
1 <u>I go to bed around 11.30 pm.</u>	<u>I don't stay in during the week.</u>
2 .....	.....
3 .....	.....
4 .....	.....

# The place where you live

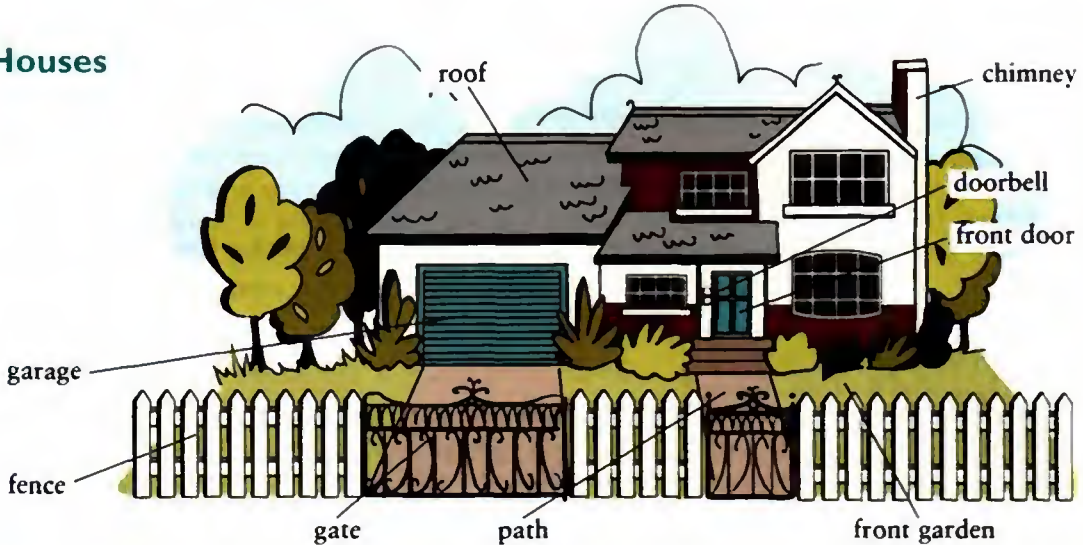
## A Location

### NOTE

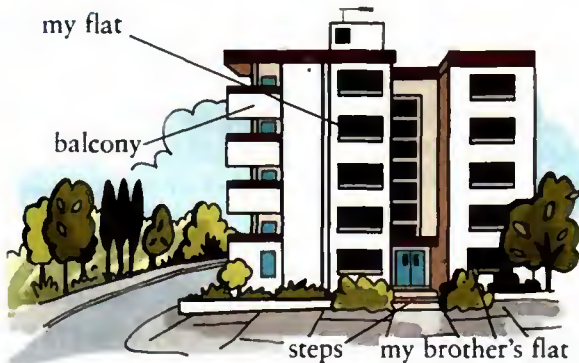
**Right** is often used for emphasis, e.g. I live **right** next to the park.

I live on the outskirts of town. (= on the edge of town, near the country)  
 I live in the suburbs. (= areas where people live outside the centre of town)  
 I live in a residential area. (= a nice area of houses/flats, with no factories)  
 I live **quite** close to the station. (= near the station)  
 I live **right** in the centre. (= exactly in the centre)

## B Houses



## C Flats



I live in a block of flats. My brother lives on the ground floor, and I have a flat on the third floor. Unfortunately there is no lift, so I have to climb (= go up/walk up) three **flights** of stairs to reach my flat. But I have a **balcony** with a great view of the park opposite the building.

**Steps** are outside a house or inside a public building. **Stairs** connect floors inside a house or building and are often covered with a carpet.

## D Describing the place where you live

My parents own their house (= they bought it/it belongs to them), but I rent a flat near my university (= I don't own it; I pay money every week to the owner). The rooms are **tiny** (= very small, *opp* huge/enormous), but they're **light** (*opp* dark) because they're on the top floor and get lots of sun. The flats on the ground floor are dark and also **noisy** (*opp* quiet) because they're nearer the traffic. Some rooms are **draughty** (= cold air comes in through windows and under doors), and are expensive to heat (= keep warm); but I've got **central heating** (= system of heating every room in a building) and the flat is in good condition.

# Exercises

**54.1** What can you remember about the house and block of flats on the opposite page? Answer these questions without looking.

- 1 Does the house have a garage?
- 2 Does it have a fence at the front?
- 3 Is the gate open or shut?
- 4 Does each flat have a balcony?
- 5 Does the brother live on the first floor?
- 6 Do the flats have a view of a school and offices?

**54.2** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 I walked up to the house and rang the .....
- 2 She lives ..... the second floor.
- 3 We had to ..... six flights of stairs to get to her flat because the ..... wasn't working.
- 4 I've got a great ..... from my balcony.
- 5 You have to walk up some ..... to reach the entrance to the building.
- 6 Do you own the flat or do you ..... it?
- 7 I'm living in the house now but it actually ..... to my brother. He bought it two years ago. It was in very bad ..... then, but he spent a lot of money on it.
- 8 It costs a lot of money to ..... a house when you live in a cold climate. Central ..... is usually quite expensive.

**54.3** Write down four more positive things and four more negative things about a house or flat. When you have finished, compare your answers with section D opposite.

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
1 <i>It's very light.</i> .....	1 <i>It's very dark.</i> .....
2 .....	2 .....
3 .....	3 .....
4 .....	4 .....
5 .....	5 .....

Now think about your answers again. Which positive features are the most important for you? Which negative features do you dislike the most?

**54.4** What about your home? Answer these questions.

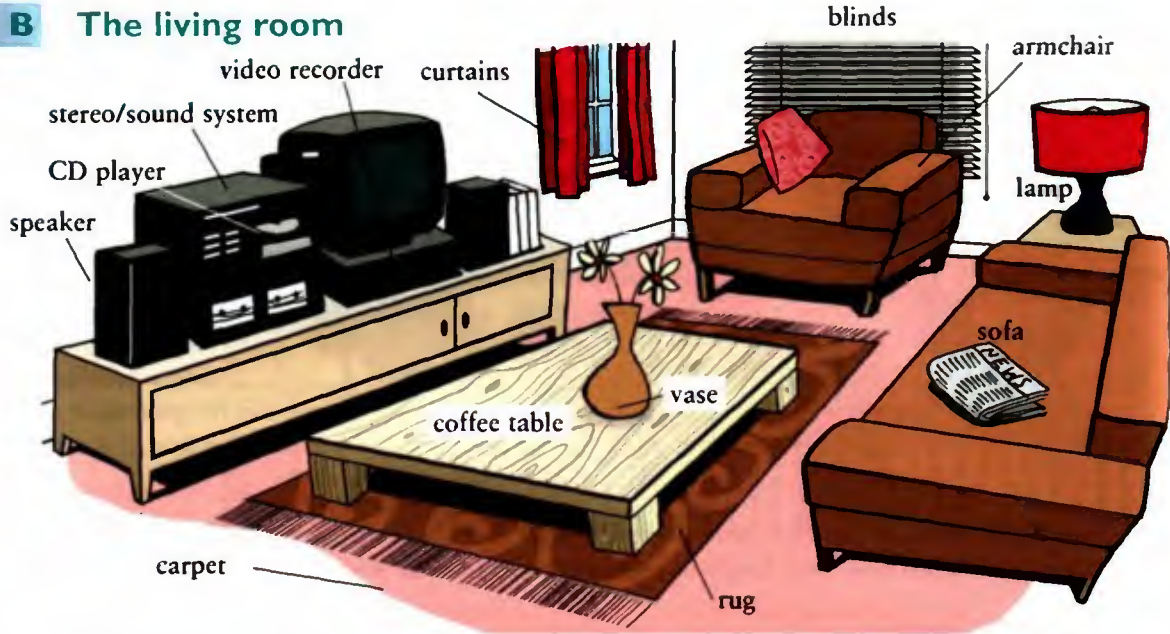
- 1 Do you live in a house or flat?
- 2 If you live in a flat, what floor is it on?
- 3 If you live in a house, do you have a garden?
- 4 Does the house/flat belong to you (or your family), or do you rent it?
- 5 Do you have your own garage or personal parking space?
- 6 Would you describe your house/flat as dark or light?
- 7 Is it noisy or quiet?
- 8 Do you have central heating?
- 9 Is it near the centre, in the suburbs, or on the outskirts?
- 10 Is it in a quiet residential area?

# Around the home (I)

## A Rooms

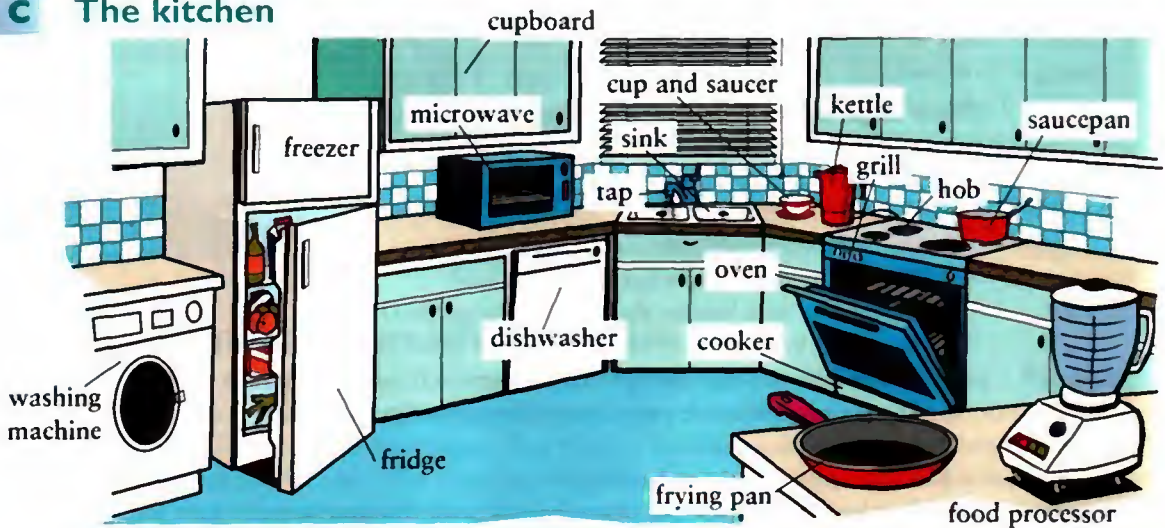
The living room or lounge (= where you sit, relax and watch TV); the dining room; the kitchen; the bedroom(s); and the bathroom(s). Some people have a study (= room with a desk where you work) and a spare room (= room you don't use every day, and where guests can sleep). The entrance area in a house or flat is called the hall.

## B The living room



While the cat was asleep in the armchair, I sat on the sofa and had a look at the paper. Then I turned on the TV to watch the news.

## C The kitchen



I put the meat in the oven, then I made myself a coffee and put the milk back in the fridge. After that, I put some cups and saucers in the dishwasher.

# Exercises

**55.1** Complete the descriptions. (There may be more than one possible answer.)

- 1 The bedroom, that's where you *sleep*.....
- 2 The kitchen, that's where you do the .....
- 3 The bathroom, that's where you have a ..... and .....
- 4 The living room, that's where you ..... and .....
- 5 The dining room, that's where you .....
- 6 A spare room, that's often where .....
- 7 A study, that's usually where you .....

**55.2** You are in the kitchen. Where would you put:

- |                                       |               |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 biscuits and a packet of spaghetti? | in a cupboard | 5 dirty cups and saucers?            |
| 2 milk?                               |               | 6 clean cups and saucers?            |
| 3 meat that you are going to cook?    |               | 7 frozen food that you want to keep? |
| 4 dirty clothes?                      |               |                                      |

**55.3** Here are some things you may find in the living room or kitchen but the letters are jumbled. What are they, and which room do you usually find them in?

*Example* sek d desk (living room)

skin	nacitusr	rapcet	shadriswhe	teklet
faos	veon	digref	hiamcrar	acepasnu

**55.4** Complete these sentences with the correct adverb or preposition.

- 1 Shall I put the plates ..... the cupboard?
- 2 I took the ham ..... of the fridge, made a sandwich, then put the rest of it ..... in the fridge.
- 3 We tend to sit in the same places – me ..... the sofa and my husband ..... the armchair.
- 4 I didn't have anything to do, so I turned ..... the TV.
- 5 You normally cook the meat ..... the oven for 45 minutes.
- 6 I took a few things ..... of the cupboard and put them ..... the table.

**55.5** You have just moved into a new flat. For the first six months you can only have six of the following. Which would you choose, and why? Compare with someone else if possible.

*Example* I would certainly choose a cooker – I can't eat cold food all the time.

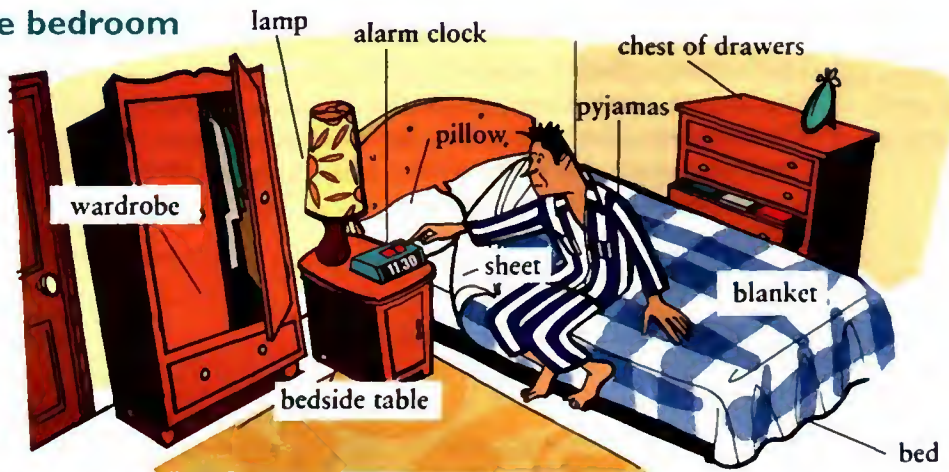
sofa	carpets	dishwasher	TV
cooker	curtains	fridge	desk
CD player	bed	dining table	washing machine
kettle	saucepans	food processor	armchair

**55.6** Write down:

- three things in the lounge or kitchen you can turn on/off
- three things in the kitchen you wash regularly
- two things in the lounge or kitchen you can sit on
- two things you can use to boil water



## A The bedroom



I put on my pyjamas, got into bed, and read a book for half an hour. Then I set the alarm clock, switched off the light and went to sleep.

## B The bathroom



I didn't have time for a bath, but I had a wash, cleaned my teeth, and then I went to work.

## C Housework

My room is very tidy (= everything in order), but my brother is very untidy – he leaves his clothes all over the floor (= everywhere) and never makes his bed. The room is a complete mess. (= very untidy)

I do the washing-up (= wash the dishes) every evening, and I normally do some washing and ironing (= wash and iron clothes) at the weekend. I Hoover the carpets once a week.



washing machine



iron



hoover/vacuum cleaner

# Exercises

**56.1** Find the correct ending on the right for each of the sentence beginnings on the left, then put the sentences in the most logical order.

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 1 I cleaned      | the light       |
| 2 I went         | into bed        |
| 3 I set          | a wash          |
| 4 I switched off | my teeth        |
| 5 I had          | to sleep        |
| 6 I put on       | the alarm clock |
| 7 I got          | my pyjamas      |

**56.2** The pictures show six things the man did this morning. Complete the sentences below.



- |                        |            |
|------------------------|------------|
| 1 He did the shopping. | 4 He ..... |
| 2 He .....             | 5 He ..... |
| 3 He .....             | 6 He ..... |

**56.3** How often do you do the things in 56.2? Complete these sentences about yourself.

- |                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 I often/sometimes/never ..... | 4 I ..... |
| 2 I .....                       | 5 I ..... |
| 3 I .....                       | 6 I ..... |

**56.4** Test your memory. Cover the opposite page and answer these questions about the pictures.

- 1 Does the alarm clock show 11.30?
- 2 Does the bed have one pillow or two?
- 3 Is the wardrobe open?
- 4 How many drawers does the chest of drawers have?
- 5 Is the woman in the bathroom holding a towel?
- 6 Is the shower above the bath?

**56.5** How well do you know your own home? Answer these questions as quickly as possible.

- 1 Have you got a mirror above the washbasin in the bathroom?
- 2 Have you got a towel rail on the same wall as the washbasin?
- 3 Is the toilet next to the bath/shower?
- 4 Have you got a wardrobe and chest of drawers in your bedroom?
- 5 Have you got a lamp on your bedside table?
- 6 Have you got an alarm clock?

# Everyday problems

## A There's something wrong with ...

We use these expressions when there is a problem with machines and other things we use.

There's something wrong with the TV. (= there is a problem with it)

The light isn't working. (= not functioning/there is no light)

The light's not working properly. (= it is functioning but not very well)

The telephone is out of order. (= not in use/not functioning)

You often see a notice saying out of order on a public machine or piece of equipment that isn't working, e.g. pay phone, public toilet, etc. At home we usually say it isn't working.

## B In the home

Paul had a lot of problems yesterday.

He dropped a cup



and it broke.



He got another cup, made some coffee, and then spilt it.



His shirt now has a large stain on it [see picture], and it is ruined. (= he can't wear it again, it has no use)



Then he decided to make some toast. He burnt the first piece (if you burn something, you damage it with heat or fire), then he realised he'd run out of bread (= the bread was finished/there was no more bread). He left home hungry and in a bad mood. (= angry and unhappy; *opp* in a good mood)

## C Out and about

### NOTE

You can say, 'I forgot my book', but if you say where this happened, you must use the verb 'leave'. e.g. I left my homework on the bus. (NOT I forgot my books on the bus.)

After Paul went out, things got worse (= his situation became worse/there were more problems). He was late, and he missed the bus (= the bus came and went before he got to the bus stop), so he had to walk. That made him even later. He started running, but he fell over and cut himself (see picture). Later, when he got to school, he realised he'd lost some money and left his English book at home. (= forgotten his books)



# Exercises

**57.1** Complete the past tense and past participle of these verbs.

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past tense</i>	<i>past participle</i>
leave	...left.....	...left.....
break	.....	.....
fall	.....	.....
spill	.....	.....
forget	.....	.....
lose	.....	.....
burn	.....	.....
cut	.....	.....

**57.2** Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the correct endings on the right.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 I lost my credit card</li> <li>2 I'm afraid I've run out</li> <li>3 I'm afraid I left</li> <li>4 I dropped my radio on the floor</li> <li>5 I spilt my coffee</li> <li>6 I missed the bus</li> <li>7 I burnt myself</li> <li>8 I forgot</li> </ol> |  | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a when I lit that cigarette.</li> <li>b and had to wait ages for another.</li> <li>c and it has stained the carpet.</li> <li>d and all my money.</li> <li>e to bring my money.</li> <li>f my money at home.</li> <li>g and now it doesn't work properly.</li> <li>h of coffee. Would you like tea?</li> </ol> |
|---|--|--|

**57.3** This is what happened when Anna had a party at her house. Write a description of the damage.



**57.4** Write a logical explanation for each question, using vocabulary from the opposite page.

- 1 Why can't we watch TV? *It isn't working.*
- 2 How did you break that wine glass?
- 3 How did you cut your knee like that?
- 4 I'm cold. What's wrong with the central heating?
- 5 What happened to the money I gave you?
- 6 Where's your homework?
- 7 What's wrong with this radio?
- 8 Why can't you use the public phone in the station?

**57.5** Answer the questions using 'often/occasionally/hardly ever/never'. How often do you:

- |               |                         |                    |
|---------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| drop things?  | break things?           | burn things?       |
| spill things? | lose things?            | forget things?     |
| fall over?    | leave things somewhere? | run out of things? |

### A Notes and coins

In the UK the currency (= type of money used) is **sterling**; in America it is the **dollar**; in much of Europe it's the **euro**.



notes	coins
e.g. ten pounds, twenty euros a ten-pound note	e.g. fifty pence, a pound a 50p coin, a one-pound coin

### B Common verbs

spend £££ on (sth)	Last week I spent £100 on food, and £20 on books.
pay £££ (for sth)	I paid £200 for my new desk. (= it cost me £200)
cost	My new desk cost (me) £200. (= I paid £200 for it)
charge	They charged me (= told me to pay) £10 to repair my watch.
lend and borrow	Could you lend me some money? or Could I borrow some money?
waste £££ (on sth)	Parents often think that children waste their money (= use it badly) on sweets and other things they don't need.
save (up) (for sth)	I'm saving (up) (= keeping some of my money when I receive it) for my holiday – I'm hoping to go to Greece.

### C Adjectives

These are all used to describe the **price** of something (= the amount of money you have to pay for sth), e.g. This watch was **cheap**; the hotel was **reasonable**; my suit was **quite expensive**, etc.

free	cheap	reasonable	quite expensive	very expensive	incredibly expensive
-	£	£	£	£	£

### D Talking money

I **can't afford** (= don't have enough money) to go on holiday this year.

A: How much is that watch **worth**? (= What is its value?)      B: It's **worth** about £50.

The **cost of living** (= how much people pay for things) is high in Sweden and Norway, but people still have a good **standard of living**. (= the level of money and comfort people have)

His car **cost a fortune** (= was very expensive), but he can **afford** it; he's **well-off**. (= rich)

# Exercises

**58.1** Fill the gaps using the past tense of verbs from the box. Be careful, most of them are irregular.

buy	spend	lose	pay	cost
sell	win	waste	find	give

- 1 My car was five years old, so I ..... it and ..... a new one.
- 2 I was very sad when I ..... my watch because it was a present from my wife and it ..... her a lot of money. Fortunately, somebody ..... it a few days later and took it to a police station.
- 3 I ..... over £2,000 for my computer, but it isn't worth very much now.
- 4 My father ..... me £50 last week but I ..... most of it on Friday when I went to the concert.
- 5 Last week somebody ..... £1 million in a game show on television. It was quite exciting.
- 6 I'm afraid I ..... my money on those computer games – I don't think I've played them more than once.

**58.2** Complete the sentences without using the underlined words and phrases. Don't change the meaning.

*Example* You want to tell a friend that your uncle is very rich.  
My uncle is *very well-off*.

- 1 You want to know the value of your friend's gold ring. You ask:  
How much is your .....
- 2 A friend wants to go to a restaurant but you don't have enough money. You say:  
I'm afraid I .....
- 3 You want to borrow some money from a friend. You ask:  
Could you .....
- 4 You want to know how much a friend paid for her dictionary. You ask:  
How much .....
- 5 You want to explain to someone that a disco is incredibly expensive. You say:  
That disco .....

**58.3** How quickly can you answer these questions, YES or NO? Write down answers to all of them, then go back and check. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Is the currency in America called the dollar?
- 2 Is a five-pound note worth less than a 50p coin?
- 3 If you lend something to someone, do they borrow it?
- 4 If you waste money, do you use it well?
- 5 Is the 'euro' a currency?
- 6 If you 'can't afford' something, do you have enough money for it?
- 7 Does 'cost of living' mean the same as 'standard of living'?
- 8 If someone tells you a hotel is reasonable, is it very expensive?

**58.4** Write down the approximate price of six things in your country, e.g. a daily newspaper, a short bus journey, a cup of coffee in a bar/café, a ticket for the cinema, a takeaway burger, a pair of jeans, etc. Do you think the price is expensive, reasonable, cheap? Compare with someone else if possible.

# Health: illness



She's sneezing.



She's coughing.



She's got a sore throat.

## A

### Common problems

A: I don't feel well.

B: What's the matter?

A: I've got a sore throat and I keep sneezing.

B: Oh, you've probably got a cold or flu.

You should go to bed.

A: Yes, I think I will.



She's blowing her nose.



She's got a temperature.

<i>What's the matter?</i>	<i>How do you know? (the symptoms)</i>	<i>cause of illness</i>
I've got a cold.	sneezing, a sore throat, a cough	a virus
I've got flu. (= like a cold but more serious)	same as for a cold + high temperature, e.g. 40°	a virus
I've got diarrhoea.	I keep going to the toilet.	often food, or a virus
I feel sick.	I want to vomit. (= be sick)	many, e.g. food, illness
I've got a hangover.	headache, feel sick	too much alcohol

For these illnesses, you can go to a doctor or a **chemist** (= pharmacy). The doctor may give you a **prescription** (= paper with an order for medicine) that you get from the chemist.

## B

### Aches and pains

We use the noun **ache** for **toothache**, **stomachache**, **backache**, **earache** and a **headache**.

For other parts of the body we use **pain**. With both nouns, we often use the verb **get**.

I've got a **terrible headache**. (= a bad headache) I often **get backache**.

I woke up with a **terrible pain** in my chest. I **get a pain** in my leg when I run.

**Ache** is also a verb, describing a pain which continues for a long time but is not strong.  
By the end of the day, my feet were **aching**.

**Hurt** is common as a verb, used to describe a pain which is stronger or more sudden.

My throat **hurts** when I speak. Where does it **hurt**? (= Where is the pain?)

The most common adjective is **painful**.

A: Did it hurt when you had the **fillings**? (= when the dentist fills a hole/cavity in the tooth)

B: It was quite **painful** when she gave me the **injection**.



## C

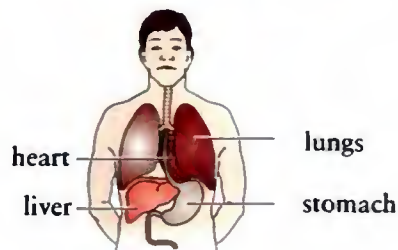
### Serious illnesses

Smoking is a major cause of **lung cancer**.

He had a **heart attack** and died almost immediately.

**Hepatitis** is a disease affecting the **liver**.

Many people **suffer from** (= have the illness of) **asthma**.  
(= chest illness causing breathing problems)



# Exercises

**59.1** Write down the main symptom or symptoms for these conditions.

- 1 A cold: sneezing, .....
- 2 Flu: .....
- 3 A hangover: .....
- 4 Diarrhoea: .....

**59.2** Look at the underlined letters in these pairs of words. Is the pronunciation the same or different? Look at the examples first and use the pronunciation guide in the Index to help you.

Examples ache pain same  
 cold ostomach different

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 <u>d</u> isease <u>d</u> iarrhoea | 4 <u>v</u> irus <u>i</u> llness |
| 2 <u>c</u> hemist <u>a</u> che      | 5 <u>f</u> lu <u>v</u> irus     |
| 3 <u>l</u> ung <u>s</u> uffer       | 6 <u>c</u> ough <u>e</u> nough  |

**59.3** Complete the sentences with 'a' or nothing (-).

- |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 I think I'm getting ..... cold. | 4 I've got ..... terrible headache. |
| 2 Mary's got ..... flu.           | 5 He's got ..... diarrhoea.         |
| 3 I've got ..... backache.        | 6 She's got ..... cancer.           |

**59.4** Look at the pictures and write what happened in the space below. Try to use at least three or four words or phrases from the opposite page.



I had .....

.....

**59.5** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 I don't ..... well. I think I'll go to bed early.
- 2 I hit my hand on the desk and now it really .....
- 3 Do you often ..... backache?
- 4 They say she died of a heart .....
- 5 She had some apples that weren't ready to eat; now she's got stomach.....
- 6 I've got this terrible ..... in my neck from sleeping in the wrong position.
- 7 He died of ..... cancer but he never smoked a cigarette in his life.
- 8 I went to the doctor, and she gave me a ..... for some antibiotics.
- 9 There are different forms of hepatitis; one is a more serious ..... than the other.
- 10 My back ..... from sitting at that computer all day.



### A Common injuries

An injury is damage to part of your body. These are common injuries.



#### NOTE

**Cut, bruise, burn and bandage** can all be used as nouns or verbs with the same form.

<i>What's the problem?</i>	<i>How did it happen?</i>	<i>result</i>	<i>solution</i>
1 She cut her finger	using a knife	it's bleeding	put a plaster on it
2 He twisted his ankle	running for a bus	he can't walk	put a bandage on it
3 She's got a bruise	she hit her ankle when she fell over	it's swollen black and blue	ice pack
4 He broke his arm	he fell off his bike	he can't use it	a sling
5 She burnt her hand	on the kettle	it's very painful	put cream on it

The verb **hurt** is often used to describe the pain from injuries. It has different structures:  
 I **hurt** my back in the garden.      She **hurt** herself when she fell over.  
 I hit my leg against the table and it really **hurts**. (= it's a bad pain)

### B Hospital treatment

John fell out of the window and **hit** his head on the ground. His wife called an **ambulance** but John was still **unconscious** when it arrived. He was **rushed** to hospital (= taken to hospital very quickly) and when he came round (= became conscious), he didn't know where he was.

Two players jumped for the ball and **bumped** into each other (= hit each other but it was an accident). One cut his head and had to go to hospital. He needed ten stitches.



### C Wounds and injuries

**Wound** and **injury** describe damage to the body, but a **wound** is usually caused by a **weapon** (e.g. gun or knife) and happens in fights and wars. The verbs are **wound** and **injure**.

He was **seriously** (= badly) **injured** in a car crash.

Two of the soldiers were **wounded**.

Someone **shot** him (with a gun).

He got into a fight and he was **beaten** up.



# Exercises

**60.1** Check the pronunciation of these words in the Index (especially the underlined letters). Practise saying them.

injury	blood	bandage	unconscious
wound	swollen	bruise	weapon

**60.2** Complete the table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
cut	.....	blood	.....
injury	.....	bruise	.....
shot	.....	treatment	.....

**60.3** Look at the pictures and write the story.



Now compare your story with the story about John on the opposite page.

**60.4** Match the wounds/injuries on the left with the results on the right.

- |                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 He hit his head on the door. | a It's swollen and it hurts when he walks. |
| 2 He bruised his leg.          | b He was beaten up quite badly.            |
| 3 He broke his leg.            | c It's very painful.                       |
| 4 He cut his finger.           | d He's got a big bruise on it.             |
| 5 He burnt himself.            | e It's still bleeding.                     |
| 6 He got into a fight.         | f He won't be able to walk for six weeks.  |

**60.5** Answer these questions about yourself. If the answer is 'yes', when did it happen? How? How did you feel? If possible, ask another person the same questions.

- Have you ever broken your arm or leg?
- Have you ever needed stitches?
- Have you ever been unconscious?
- Have you ever been in an ambulance?
- Have you ever got into a fight?

## A Pockets, buttons, collar, sleeves



For 'buttons' and 'zips', we usually use the verbs **do up** and **undo**.  
**Do up** your jacket before you go out. I can't **undo** these buttons – my hands are too cold.

## B Verbs and phrases used with clothes

The following text shows common verbs and phrases in an everyday context.

I got up at 7.30, had a shower, **got dressed** (= put on my clothes), and had breakfast. It was a cold morning so I **put on** my coat and left home about 8.20. When I got to work I **took my coat off** and **hung it up** behind the door. It was hot in the office, so I **took my jacket off** as well. During my lunch break I had a look round the shops. I saw a nice jacket in one place and **tried it on**, but it didn't fit me – it was too small and they didn't have the **right size**. When I got home I **took off** my suit and **changed into** jeans and a T-shirt.

**NOTE**  
 See Unit 24 for information about word order with phrasal verbs, e.g. **put on**, **hang up**, etc.

## C 'Too' + adjective and adjective + 'enough'

The man on the right is wearing a suit but it doesn't fit him very well – the jacket is **too small** (= not big enough), and the trousers are **too short**. (= not long enough)



# Exercises

**61.1** Finish this sentence with five more different items of clothing.

I need a pair of trousers.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

**61.2** Put these sentences in a logical order. The first one has been done for you.

- a He took off his jeans.
- b He put his shoes back on.
- c He tried on the trousers.
- d He went into the changing room. 1
- e He took them off.
- f He paid for the trousers.
- g He took off his shoes.
- h He went back to the sales assistant.
- i He put his jeans on again.

**61.3** What's different? Find five things in the first picture that aren't in the second picture.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....



**61.4** Fill the gaps with suitable words. (More than one answer may be possible in some cases.)

- 1 She decided to wear a ..... and a ..... instead of a dress.
- 2 I tried on a ..... ; the jacket was fine but the ..... were too short.
- 3 It was hot, so I took off my jacket and ....., and rolled up the sleeves of my .....
- 4 It was very embarrassing because I couldn't ..... up the zip on my jeans.
- 5 I wanted to buy the jacket, but unfortunately the one I tried on wasn't big ..... and they didn't have it in a bigger .....
- 6 I tried on a jumper, but the medium size was ..... big and the small size wasn't big .....

**61.5** Write down:

- 1 Five things usually worn by women only
- 2 Five things worn by men and women
- 3 Five more items of clothing you have at home

### A Shop and shopping

- Where's the **shop assistant**? (= person who works in a shop; also called sales assistant)  
 The shoes were in the **shop window**. (= the window at the front of the shop)  
 We went to the new **shopping centre**. (= a place with many shops, outside or indoors)  
 I just went **window shopping**. (= looking round the shops without buying anything)  
 Did you make a **shopping list**? (= a list of things to buy)  
 I went **shopping yesterday**. (= I bought things, e.g. clothes, CDs, a present for my sister)  
 I did the **shopping yesterday**. (= I bought food and things for the house)  
 You have to **shop around** for the best prices. (= go to different shops to find the best price)

### B Types of shop and what they sell

#### NOTE

Most other shops are just '+ shop', e.g. shoe shop or record shop. Some countries have stalls/shops in the street for newspapers. We call them **kiosks**.

<i>name of shop</i>	<i>what they sell</i>
department store	almost everything (furniture, clothes, electrical appliances, e.g. TV and washing machine, toys, e.g. dolls, games, jewellery, e.g. rings, earrings)
supermarket	most things, but especially food and household goods, e.g. cleaning products and kitchen equipment, etc. In some, you buy meat at a <b>meat counter</b> and fish at a <b>fish counter</b> . (= place where people serve you)
newsagent('s)	newspapers, cigarettes, stationery, e.g. writing paper, envelopes
butcher('s)	meat
chemist('s)	medicine, baby products, shampoo, soap, toothpaste, etc.
off-licence	specialist shop for wine, beer and soft drinks

### C In a clothes shop

- ASSISTANT: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm **looking for** (= I want) a blue jumper. *or*  
 No, I'm just **looking**, thanks. (= I don't need help) *or*  
 I'm **being served**, thanks. (= another assistant is already serving/helping me)  
 ASSISTANT: What size are you? (e.g. large? small? medium? 14? 16?)  
 CUSTOMER: Where's the 

{	<b>changing room?</b> (= the room where you try on clothes)
	<b>fitting room?</b>

  
 ASSISTANT: It's down there on the right.  
 CUSTOMER: Yes, I'll **take this one/these**. (= Yes, I want to buy this one/these.)  
 CUSTOMER: No, I'll **leave it** thanks. (= No, I don't want to buy it/them.)  
 CUSTOMER: Excuse me. Where do I pay for these?  
 ASSISTANT: Over at the **cash desk** (also till).  
 CUSTOMER: And can I pay by credit card?



# Exercises

62.1 What 'general' word on the opposite page describes each group of items below.

- 1 *meat* ..... e.g. lamb, beef, pork
- 2 ..... e.g. shoes, trousers, jacket
- 3 ..... e.g. potatoes, beans, onions
- 4 ..... e.g. sofa, armchair, table
- 5 ..... e.g. television, washing machine, food processor
- 6 ..... e.g. ring, earrings, necklace
- 7 ..... e.g. teddy bear, plastic gun, Lego
- 8 ..... e.g. writing paper, envelopes

62.2 Where would you buy these things? Choose from the shops below.



butcher    newsagent    chemist    supermarket    department store

Write down two more things you could buy in each shop.

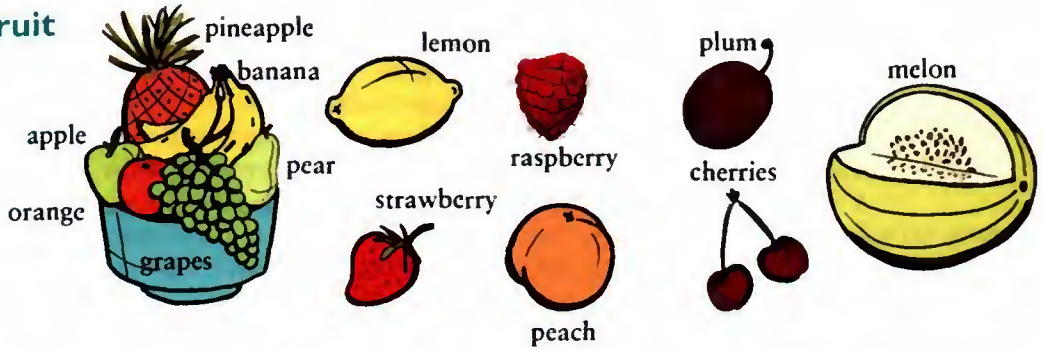
62.3 What word or phrase is being defined in these sentences?

- 1 A shop where you buy meat.
- 2 A place with many shops, either outside or indoors.
- 3 A person who works in a shop.
- 4 The place where you can try on clothes in a shop.
- 5 The place where you pay for things in a shop.
- 6 To look round the shops without planning to buy anything.
- 7 A shop where you buy wine, beer and soft drinks.
- 8 A shop where you buy medicines, baby products, shampoo, etc.

62.4 Complete this shopping dialogue with a suitable word or phrase.

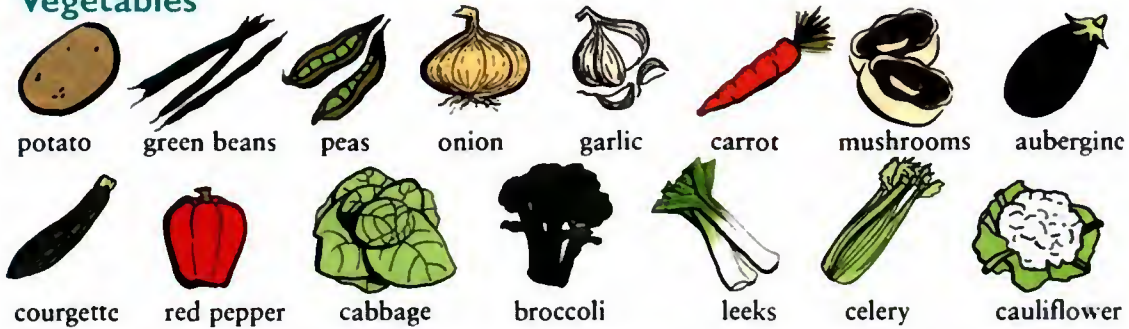
ASSISTANT A: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: Yes, I'm (1) ..... a blouse like this, but in blue.  
 ASSISTANT A: I see. And what (2) ..... are you?  
 CUSTOMER: Er, 12 usually.  
 ASSISTANT A: OK, I'll just go and see if we've got any.  
 CUSTOMER: Fine.  
 ASSISTANT B: Can I help you?  
 CUSTOMER: No, it's OK, I'm (3) ..... thanks.  
 ASSISTANT A: Here we are. The last one in stock.  
 CUSTOMER: Great. Can I try it on?  
 ASSISTANT A: Yes, of course. The (4) ..... is just over there. [pause]  
 How was it?  
 CUSTOMER: Yeah, fine. I'll (5) .....

## A Fruit



You normally peel oranges and bananas (= remove the skin) before you eat them.

## B Vegetables



I peeled the potatoes and chopped the carrots. (= cut into small pieces)

## C Salad

A salad is usually a mixture of uncooked vegetables. In Britain it often contains lettuce, but may also contain tomato, cucumber, and other things. We often put salad dressing (usually a mixture of oil and vinegar, or oil and lemon juice) on salad.



## D Meat (animals), fish and seafood

<i>animal:</i>	cow	calf (= young cow)	lamb (= young sheep)	pig	chicken
<i>meat:</i>	beef	veal	lamb	pork	chicken

## NOTE

A person who does not eat meat is a **vegetarian**.



# Exercises

63.1 Write down at least one vegetable and fruit:

	vegetable	fruit
1 beginning with the letter 'p'	potato, peas	.....
2 beginning with the letter 'b'	.....	.....
3 beginning with the letter 'm'	.....	.....
4 beginning with the letter 'c'	.....	.....
5 beginning with the letter 'a'	.....	.....

63.2 Match words in the two boxes where the underlined letters are pronounced the same.

Example banana melon

lettuce	<u>o</u> nion	tomato	<del>me</del> lon
<u>o</u> range	<del>ba</del> nana	<u>p</u> ork	chicken
<u>a</u> ubergine	salmon	<u>c</u> alf	<u>l</u> amb
raspberry	pr <u>a</u> wn	broccoli	mushroom

63.3 Which is the odd one out in each group, and why?

- |           |        |               |           |  |
|-----------|--------|---------------|-----------|--|
| 1 pork    | veal   | <u>salmon</u> | beef      | Salmon is a fish, the others are meat. |
| 2 lettuce | leek   | tomato        | cucumber  |  |
| 3 peach   | onion  | mushroom      | courgette |  |
| 4 chicken | lamb   | beef          | crab      |  |
| 5 grape   | cherry | aubergine     | melon     |  |

63.4 Do you eat the skin (= the outside) of these fruits *always*, *sometimes* or *never*? Make three lists.

apple	orange	banana	cherries	melon
strawberries	pear	pineapple	peach	grapes

63.5 What do we call:

- the meat from a cow?
- the meat from a calf?
- the meat from a pig?
- the main vegetable in a green salad?
- the two things we often put on salad? Oil and ..... or .....

63.6 Using words from the opposite page, complete these sentences about yourself and your country. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- In my country ..... is/are more common than .....
- In my country ..... is/are more expensive than .....
- In my country a mixed salad usually contains .....
- In my country we don't grow .....
- And we don't often eat .....
- Personally, I prefer ..... to .....



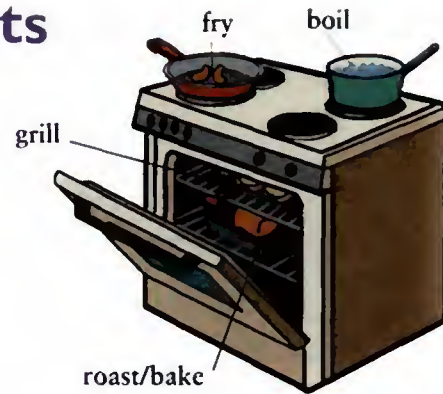
# Cooking and restaurants

## A Ways of cooking food

### NOTE

Food which is not cooked is **raw**.

**boil:** in water, e.g. potatoes or rice  
**fry:** in oil or butter above the heat, e.g. sausages  
**grill:** under the heat, e.g. toast or meat  
**roast:** in the oven using oil, e.g. meat  
**bake:** in the oven without oil, e.g. cakes



## B How would you like your steak?

**Rare** (= cooked quickly and red inside); **medium-rare** (= cooked longer but still red in the middle); **medium** (= cooked more and pink); or **well-done**. (= cooked longer and not pink)

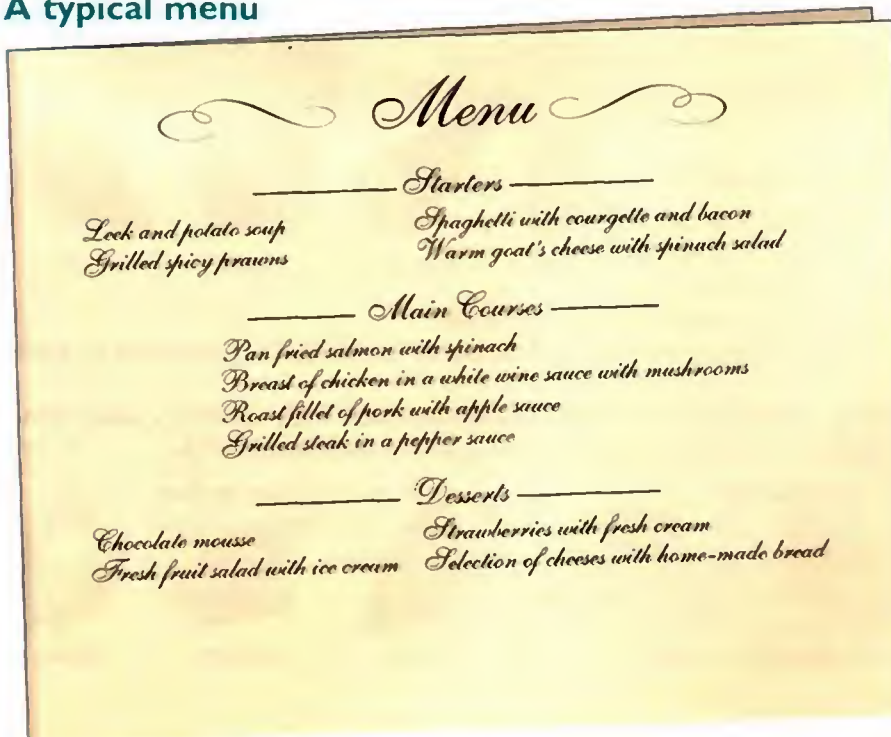
## C What does it taste like?

**Taste the sauce** (= try a bit to see if it's good) and add salt if necessary.  
**You can really taste the garlic in this.** It's very **tasty**. (= lots of flavour; a positive word)

## D Describing food and drink

**salty:** lots of salt    **hot/spicy:** lots of spices, e.g. curry, chilli  
**sweet:** lots of sugar (*opp* bitter, e.g. very strong coffee, or sour, e.g. lemons)  
**fresh:** recently produced or picked, e.g. **fresh bread**, **fresh fruit**  
**fattening:** food which makes you **put on weight/get fat**, e.g. cream, cakes, etc.  
**healthy:** good for your health/fitness, e.g. salad or fruit  
**chilled** (= very cold), e.g. white wine is usually chilled  
**still:** describes water without gas; **sparkling** is water with gas (also called fizzy water)

## E A typical menu



salt and pepper



napkins



toothpicks



vinegar oil

# Exercises

**64.1** Do you often eat the following food in your country? If so, do you eat it in the same way?

*Example* In Britain, we often eat 'fish' but not usually 'raw fish'.

raw fish	fried rice
fried eggs	baked potatoes
roast beef	raw spinach
roast peppers	boiled eggs
grilled cheese	baked bananas

**64.2** Look at the menu on the opposite page again, and answer these questions.

- Which starter doesn't contain vegetables? *Grilled spicy prawns*
- Which dish contains pasta?
- Which main course may be rare or well-done?
- Which main course is definitely cooked in the oven?
- Which main course will probably be quite spicy?
- Which main course contains alcohol?
- Which dessert(s) will be quite sweet?
- If you don't want to put on weight, which would probably be the best dish for the main course?

**64.3** Choose an adjective from the opposite page which could describe these things.

<i>adjective</i>		<i>adjective</i>	
honey	<i>sweet</i>	bacon	
lemon		fillet steak	
bread		mineral water	
cakes		coffee	

**64.4** Answer these questions about the food you like, and eating in your country. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

- Do you eat steak? If so, how do you like it cooked?
- Do you like hot spicy food?
- In restaurants, do you normally drink still or sparkling water?
- Do waiters normally leave fresh bread on the table?
- Do you normally eat a starter, main course and dessert when you eat out?
- How many of these do you normally find on the table in a café or restaurant in your country?  

salt	YES/NO	pepper	YES/NO	oil	YES/NO
vinegar	YES/NO	toothpicks	YES/NO	napkins	YES/NO
- Generally, do you add more salt to your food when you eat in cafés or restaurants?
- Do you think that food in your country is generally quite fattening?

**A Buildings and places**

Here are some of the things you will find in most towns and cities.

- commercial centre (= area with lots of banks and company offices)
- shopping centre (= place with many shops, either indoors or outdoors)
- car parks (= places to leave many cars)
- factories (= buildings where you make/manufacture things, e.g. cars)
- skyscrapers/high-rise buildings (= buildings with many floors)
- libraries (= places where you can borrow books)
- suburbs (= areas outside the centre of town where people live)

**B People on the move**

For many people, the worst time of day is the **rush hour** (= the time when people travel to and from work, e.g. 7–9 in the morning). At this time of day the **public transport system** (= trains and buses) has to **cope with** (= manage something which is difficult) the people who live in the city, and also **commuters** (= people who live in the country but travel into the city for work). The roads get **congested** (= busy and full of cars) and people are always **in a hurry** (= want to get to another place very quickly). For many, this is very **stressful**. (= makes you nervous and anxious)

**C Going out (= going to places for social reasons)**

I live and work in the suburbs, but I usually **go into town** (= the town centre) two or three times a week. In the evening, it is pretty **lively** (= lots of people and lots of things happening), and **there's plenty to do** (= lots of possibilities, e.g. bars, discos, etc.). One problem is that **there's nowhere to park** in the centre, so I usually **get/take a bus** into town and **take/get a taxi** home if I'm late.

There are many common phrases using this construction: **there's plenty to do**; **there's nothing to do**; **there's plenty to see**; **there's nowhere to go**; **there's nowhere to park**, etc.

**D Advantages and disadvantages**

'The best thing about living in a city is that:'

- There's good **nightlife**. (= places to go at night, e.g. bars, discos, cinemas)
- There's a **wide range of shops**. (= many shops selling different things)
- You can get **whatever you want**. (= buy everything and anything you want)
- There are lots of **cultural activities**. (e.g. museums, concerts, films)
- It's **cosmopolitan**. (= full of people from many different countries and cultures)
- There are more **job opportunities**. (= easier to find work)

'The worst thing about living in a city is that:'

- It's very **crowded**. (= full of people)
- People are more **aggressive**. (= seem angry and very unfriendly)
- It can be **noisy** (*opp* quiet) and **dangerous**. (*opp* safe)
- The streets are often **dirty** (*opp* clean) and it's **polluted**. (= dirty air)
- There's **traffic congestion** (= too many cars) and **parking** is difficult.
- There's a **high crime rate**. (= number of crimes)
- You have a **higher cost of living**. (e.g. houses are more expensive, so is transport)

# Exercises

**65.1** Combine words from the left and right to form common compound words and phrases.

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1 rush      | a building   |
| 2 traffic   | b life       |
| 3 night     | c rate       |
| 4 cost      | d hour       |
| 5 crime     | e park       |
| 6 shopping  | f of living  |
| 7 high-rise | g congestion |
| 8 car       | h centre     |

**65.2** Complete the dialogues in a suitable way. Each gap is one word.

- A: The town is full of people from different countries and cultures.  
B: Yes, it's very *cosmopolitan*.
- A: There are cinemas, theatres, museums, art galleries and everything.  
B: Yes, I know, there are lots of .....
- A: There's a ..... of shops.  
B: Oh yes. You can buy ..... you want.
- A: There's plenty to do in the evening.  
B: Yes, the ..... is great.
- A: There's a better chance of finding work.  
B: Yes, there are more job .....
- A: The transport system has to ..... with the people who live in the country but work in town.  
B: Yes, I know, there are too many .....

**65.3** Complete this table of opposites.

<i>towns and cities</i>	<i>villages in the countryside</i>
<del>noisy</del> .....	quiet and peaceful
.....	clean air
.....	safe
.....	not much traffic
.....	nothing to do in the evening

Put a tick ✓ beside each answer you agree with, and a X beside each answer you don't.

**65.4** Think of your journey to school, college or work. How many of these do you see or pass?

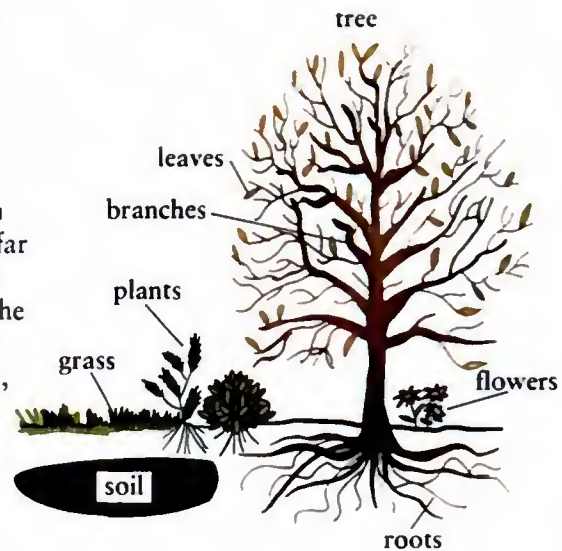
- |            |           |                   |                 |                   |
|------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| a car park | a factory | a museum          | commuters       | skyscrapers       |
| a library  | suburbs   | a railway station | lots of traffic | a shopping centre |

**65.5** Do you live in a big town or city? If so, answer questions 1a-b. If not, answer 2a-b.

- For me, the best thing about living in a big town/city is that .....
- The worst thing about living in a big town/city is that .....
- For me, the best thing about not living in a big town/city is that .....
- The worst thing about not living in a big town/city is that .....

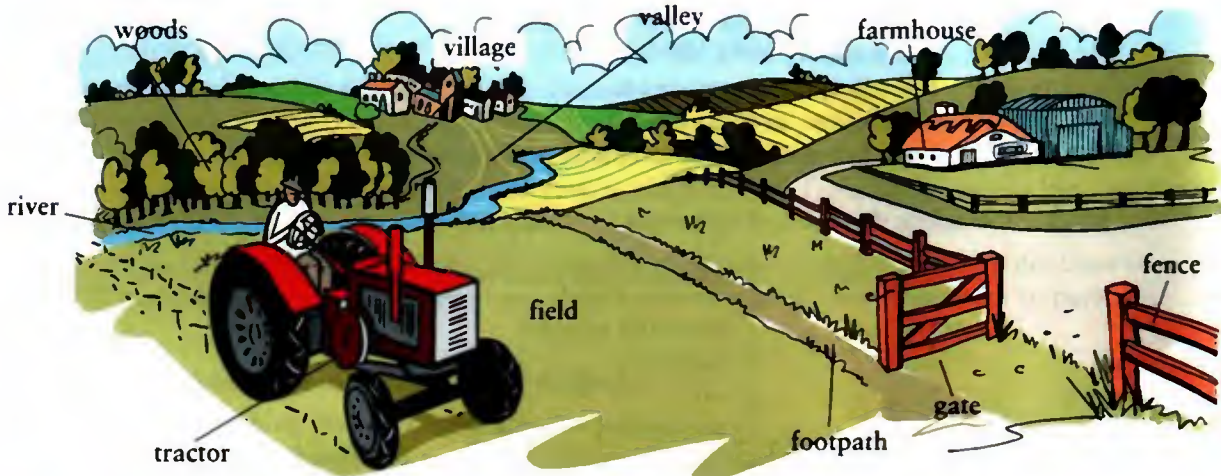
### A Surrounded by nature

I grew up (= spent my childhood) in a rural area (= an area in the country; *opp* an urban area). It was quite a remote area (= an area far from towns), and we lived in an old cottage (= a type of house, often small, you find in the country). My sister and I played a lot in the woods (= an area of trees like a small forest), not far from the nearest village (= a place smaller than a town). I loved being in the country. (~~NOT I loved to be in the nature.~~)



### B Working in the country

A lot of land in the country/countryside (both words are used) is used for agriculture/farming. Some farms grow crops (e.g. wheat, apples and potatoes) and some keep animals (e.g. cows, sheep and pigs). When I was younger, I worked on a farm during my school holidays.



### C Advantages and disadvantages

**NOTE**  
The phrase **you get** (= there exists/you find) is very common (*opp* **you don't get**).

'The best thing about living in the country is that:'

You get peace and quiet. (a common phrase to describe a place that is quiet and calm)

You get fresh air. (= air outside a building or town which is clean)

You're surrounded by lovely scenery and you can walk in the countryside.

The pace of life (= the amount of activity in life) is slower and more relaxed.

'The worst thing about living in the country is that:'

There isn't much nightlife.

Public transport (= buses and trains) is hopeless. (= terrible)

You don't get many shops.

There isn't much privacy (= private life) because everyone knows what you are doing.

## Exercises

**66.1** You find these things in nature and they all grow, but the words are jumbled. What are they?

- |          |              |           |
|----------|--------------|-----------|
| 1 seret  | <i>trees</i> | 4 tnpasal |
| 2 sargs  |              | 5 toros   |
| 3 velase |              | 6 woserlf |

**66.2** Fill the gaps with the correct adverb or preposition.

- 1 Have you ever lived ..... the country?
- 2 I grew ..... in a small village.
- 3 Have you ever worked ..... a farm?
- 4 It's wonderful to be surrounded ..... nature.
- 5 I love the pace ..... life in a small village.
- 6 The best thing ..... the countryside is that people are very friendly.

**66.3** Study the picture in 66B on the opposite page for one minute, then cover it and complete this text.

We opened the (1) ....., said 'hello' to the man on the (2) ....., and then followed the (3) ..... across the (4) ..... and down into the (5) ..... We stopped and had a picnic by the river. Afterwards we walked up through the (6) ..... and came to a (7) ..... where we stopped and bought some bread.

**66.4** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 Another word for the 'country' is the .....
- 2 Another word for 'farming' is .....
- 3 Wheat, rice and potatoes are all examples of ..... that farmers grow.
- 4 The opposite of an 'urban area' is a ..... area.
- 5 A place smaller than a town is called a .....
- 6 An area where trees grow, smaller than a forest, is called a .....
- 7 A ..... is often quite small, and it's the type of house you find in the country.
- 8 Buses and trains are examples of public .....

**66.5** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

The best (1) ..... about living in the country is that:

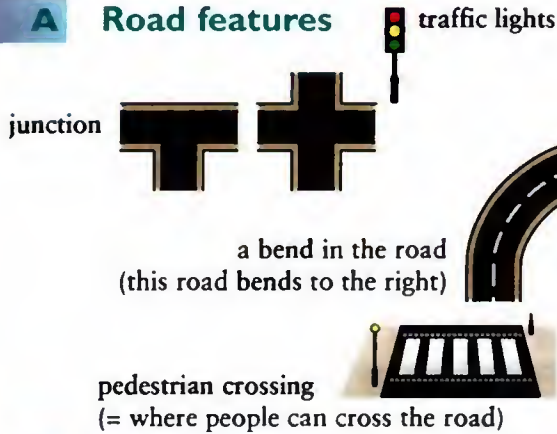
- there's peace and (2) .....
- you get (3) ..... air
- you are (4) ..... by nature
- the (5) ..... of life is slower and more relaxed

The (6) ..... thing about living in the country is that:

- there are no cinemas and discos, so there isn't much (7) .....
- everyone knows what you are doing, so there isn't much (8) .....

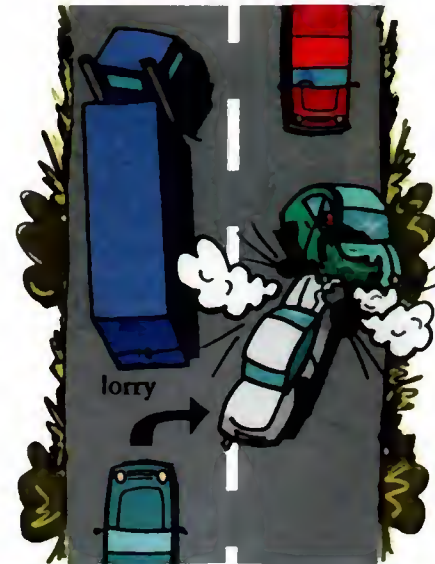
Can you add more things to each list?

## A Road features



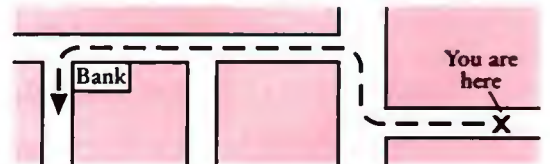
## B An accident

There was an accident on one of the main roads into town this morning. A lorry [see picture] broke down (= stopped because of a problem) in the middle of the road. It was eight o'clock, a busy time, and with the lorry blocking the road (= stopping things from moving in the road), there was soon a long tailback (= long line of cars that cannot move). One man in a Mercedes pulled out (= moved out to the centre of the road) to go round the lorry, but another car was coming in the opposite direction. The driver braked (= put his foot on the brake to stop the car), but he couldn't prevent the accident (= stop it happening) – the Mercedes crashed into the front of his car. The driver of the Mercedes was OK, but the other driver was badly injured and both cars were badly damaged.



## C Giving directions

Go along here, turn right into the main road, then take the first turning on your left. Keep going (= continue in this direction), then turn left again when you get to (= reach/arrive at) the bank.



## D Common words and phrases

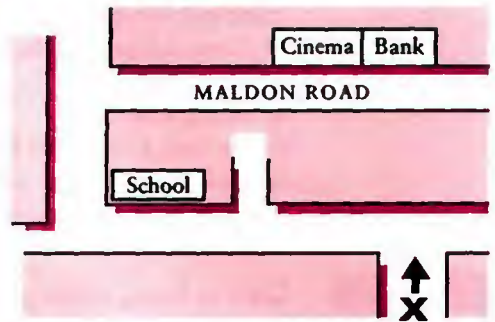
Cars and buses use the road; pedestrians (= people who walk) use the pavement. Cars mustn't park on the pavement.

The speed limit on motorways in Great Britain is 70 mph (120kph). The police use speed cameras to catch people who are speeding/breaking the speed limit. (= going too fast)  
Most petrol stations (= places where you buy petrol) in Great Britain are self-service. (= there are no people to put the petrol in your car; you serve yourself and then pay)  
The other car was going very slowly, so I decided to overtake it. (= pass it on the outside)

# Exercises

## 67.1 Complete the text using the map on the right.

Go (1) along this road and turn left at the  
 (2) ..... . Then you  
 (3) ..... and  
 (4) ..... right when you  
 (5) ..... to the (6) .....  
 Then (7) .....  
 again into (8) ..... Road, and the  
 bank is (9) ..... the left just  
 (10) ..... the cinema.



## 67.2 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 It was quite a serious ..... ; both drivers were taken to hospital.
- 2 Almost all the petrol stations round here are self-.....
- 3 One driver was badly ..... in the crash, and both cars were badly .....
- 4 There were four or five cars involved in the accident and it ..... the road for about half an hour. When I got there, the ..... was already about two miles long, and drivers were getting very frustrated.
- 5 The bicycle hit me just as I stepped off the ..... to cross the road.
- 6 My car ..... on the motorway and I had to phone a garage to come and fix it.
- 7 I was doing about 120kph and then this car ..... me doing about 160.
- 8 I couldn't stop quickly enough, and I ..... into the back of the car in front.
- 9 Cars, motorbikes and bikes can't go down there – it's only for .....

## 67.3 Many road signs are international. Do you know or can you guess what these mean?



1 You can't .....



2 50 mph\* is the .....



3 You can't .....



4 There is only one .....



5 End of .....



6 Car .....



7 Traffic .....



8 Low .....



9 Road .....

\*mph = miles per hour (50 mph = 80 kph approximately)

## 67.4 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, compare with someone else.

- 1 Do you have a speed limit on motorways? If so, what is it?
- 2 How many lanes do motorways usually have?
- 3 Do drivers usually stop for pedestrians at pedestrian crossings?
- 4 Are most petrol stations self-service, or do people serve you?
- 5 Do many people park their cars on the pavement?
- 6 Do you have speed cameras at the side of the road?



## A

## Vehicles

Vehicle is the general word for all types of road transport.

A: How did you get here?

B: I came by bus.

A: And the others?

B: Sue and John came by car.

A: And Paul?

B: He missed the bus, so he had to get a taxi.



bus



coach



bicycle



motorbike



van



lorry

## B

## Get a bus, take a taxi

## NOTE

We can say:  
I go to work  
on my bike  
(= bicycle), or I  
cycle to work.

<i>bus</i>	<i>train</i>	<i>plane</i>	<i>taxi</i>	<i>bicycle</i>	<i>car</i>
driver	driver	pilot	driver	cyclist	driver
drive	drive	fly	drive	ride	drive
(£) fare	fare	air fare	fare	–	–
get/catch/take	get/catch/take	get/take	get/take	go on (my)	go in (my)
get on/off	get on/off	get on/off	get in/out (of)	get on/off	get in/out
journey	journey	flight/journey	–	ride	journey
bus station	railway station	airport	taxi rank	–	–

## C

## Trains

These are things train passengers (= people who travel by train) often say or ask:

Single to Edinburgh, please. (= a ticket to Edinburgh)

Return to Bath, please. (= a ticket to Bath and back)

Does this train go to (= take me to) Oxford?

Do I have to change? (= change to another train)

Is it a fast train or a stopping train?

A: Which platform for Liverpool?

B: Number three.

A: And when is the train due to arrive? (= timetabled to arrive)



## D

## Buses

Sometimes buses are **punctual** (= arrive at the correct time), but not always. Where I live, buses should **run** (= travel/operate) every ten minutes, but sometimes I wait at the bus stop for half an hour in a **queue** (= line of people), and then three buses come together, and they're all **full up**. (= full of people) Other times the bus is early and I miss it. (= I don't catch it)

## E

## Taxis

Taxis show what you have to pay on the **meter**. When you want the driver to stop, you can say this: **Could you drop me here?** (= Could you stop here?) People often give taxi drivers a **tip** (= extra money as well as the fare). For example, if the fare is £8.40, you can give the driver £9.

# Exercises

## 68.1 Underline the correct word in brackets in these sentences.

- 1 You mustn't (ride/drive) a motorbike without a crash helmet in the UK.
- 2 She told him to (get in/get on) the car and fasten his seat belt.
- 3 The bus (fare/ticket) is cheaper than the train.
- 4 Trains to the airport (travel/run) every half hour.
- 5 The pilot couldn't (drive/fly) the plane in such bad weather.
- 6 Have a look at the train (schedule/timetable) to see when the next one is due.
- 7 We were late, so we had to (get/catch) a taxi.
- 8 They left a bit late and (lost/missed) the bus.

## 68.2 Write down two different words that can combine with each of the words below.

Example miss the bus the train

- |          |       |         |         |          |         |
|----------|-------|---------|---------|----------|---------|
| 1 .....  | fare  | 3 ..... | station | 5 get in | .....   |
| .....    |       | .....   |         | .....    |         |
| 2 get on | ..... | 4 ..... | driver  | 6 .....  | journey |
| .....    |       | .....   |         | .....    |         |

## 68.3 Write the names of these vehicles without looking at the opposite page.



- 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 .....

## 68.4 Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 Our train leaves from ..... seven in ten minutes.
- 2 I waited at the ..... for ten minutes, and then two buses arrived at the same time.
- 3 I couldn't get on the first bus because it was .....
- 4 After we took off, the ..... told us a bit about the plane and the journey.
- 5 Buses are not very ..... . Sometimes they come every five minutes, then other times you have to wait for 40 minutes.
- 6 When I got to the bus stop there was a long ..... of people.
- 7 The flight was fine but we had a terrible ..... from the airport to our hotel.
- 8 I think the next train is ..... to arrive in about ten minutes.

## 68.5 Are these statements true or false in your country?

- 1 Trains are more punctual than buses.
- 2 Train fares are more expensive than bus fares.
- 3 Train journeys are more interesting than bus journeys.
- 4 Railway stations are nicer places than bus stations.
- 5 In city centres, taxis are quicker than going in your own car.

# Work: duties, pay and conditions

## A

### What do you do?

People may ask you about your job. They can ask and you can answer in different ways:

#### NOTE

You can also say: **I haven't got a job.** (NOT I haven't got a-work.)

What do you do?	I'm a banker/an engineer/a builder. (I'm + 'a(n)' + job)
What's your job?	I work in a bank/marketing. (work in + place or type of work)
What do you do for a living?	I work for UnionBank/Fiat. (work for + name of company) (= I'm employed by Union Bank/Fiat, etc.) I'm self-employed. (= I work for myself.)

## B

### What does that involve?

When people ask you to explain your job, they want to know your **responsibilities** (= your duties/what you have to do), or something about your **daily routine** (= what you do every day). They can ask like this: **What does that involve?** (= What do you do in your job?)

#### General duties/responsibilities

I'm in charge of/responsible for security in the factory. (= the place where a product is made)

I deal with/handle customer complaints. (= take all necessary action when customers are unhappy)

I run the coffee bar in the museum. (= I am in control of it/I manage it)

#### Daily duties/routines

I have to go to/attend (*fml*) a lot of meetings.

I visit/see/meet clients. (= people I do business with, who pay for my service)

I advise clients. (= give them help and my opinion)

My job involves travelling. [Notice the *-ing* form after *involve*.]

#### NOTE

We often use **responsible for/in charge of** for **part** of something, e.g. a department or some of the workers; and **run** for control of **all** of something, e.g. a company, a shop, a course, etc.

## C

### Working hours

For many people in Britain, **working hours** are 8.30–9.00 am to 5.00–5.30 pm, so people often talk about a **nine-to-five job** (= regular working hours). Some people **do flexitime** (= they can start work earlier or finish later); and some **do shiftwork** (= work at different times, e.g. during the day one week, at night the next). Some people **work/do overtime**. (= work extra hours for more money)

## D

### Pay and conditions

Most workers are **paid** (= receive money) every month. This is called a **salary**. We can also use the verbs **earn/make**, e.g. I **earn/make** \$60,000 a year. (= My salary is \$60,000 a year.)

Some people are paid for the hours they work. The lowest amount for one hour's work is called the **minimum wage**. This amount is decided by the government.

With most jobs you get **4–6 weeks' paid holiday**; you also get **sick pay**. (= pay when you are ill)

The total amount of money you receive in a year is called your **income**. This could be your salary from one job, or the salary from two different jobs. You have to **pay** part of your income to the government; this is called **income tax**.

# Exercises

**69.1** Match words on the left and right to form compound nouns or phrases.

- |            |         |
|------------|---------|
| 1 nine-to- | a time  |
| 2 working  | b tax   |
| 3 flexi-   | c wage  |
| 4 income   | d five  |
| 5 minimum  | e hours |

**69.2** Match the verbs on the left with the nouns on the right. Use each verb once only.

- |             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| 1 earn      | a overtime       |
| 2 work      | b meetings       |
| 3 deal with | c a shop         |
| 4 attend    | d complaints     |
| 5 run       | e £2,000 a month |

**69.3** Rewrite these sentences starting with the words given. The meaning must stay the same.

*Example* I'm a banker.  
I work in *banking*.

- What do you do?  
What's .....
- I'm employed by the government.  
I work .....
- I earn \$50,000.  
My .....
- I get £20,000 from my teaching job and another £10,000 from writing.  
My total .....
- In my job I look after all the computers in the building.  
My job involves .....
- I'm responsible for one of the departments.  
I'm in .....

**69.4** This is part of a conversation with a teacher about her job. Write the missing questions.

- |          |   |  |
|----------|---|--|
| A: ..... | ? | B: I start at nine and finish at four.               |
| A: ..... | ? | B: Yes, a bit. On certain courses I work until 5.30. |
| A: ..... | ? | B: 12 weeks. That's one of the good things.          |
| A: ..... | ? | B: Yes, we do, but we have to have a doctor's note.  |

**69.5** What about working conditions in your country?

- What are normal working hours for most office jobs in your country?
- How much income tax do most people pay, e.g. 10% or 20% of what they earn?
- Do workers normally get paid holidays? If so, how many days do they usually get?
- Is there a minimum wage decided by the government? If so, how much is it?
- What jobs often involve shiftwork in your country? (Give at least two examples.)

**69.6** Think about your own job or the job of someone you know well. How many of the things on the opposite page are true in your country? How is the work different? Can you explain your/their responsibilities and daily duties in English?

### A Manual jobs

These are jobs where you work with your hands, and these are all **skilled**. (= need a lot of training)



**bricklayer**  
(builds walls with bricks)



**carpenter**  
(makes things using wood)



**plumber**  
(installs and repairs water pipes, etc.)



**electrician**  
(installs and repairs electrical things)



**mechanic**  
(repairs cars)

### B Professional people

<i>job</i>	<i>definition</i>
architect	designs buildings
lawyer	represents people with legal problems
engineer	plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.
accountant	controls the financial situation of people and companies
university lecturer	teaches in a university
stockbroker (on the stock market)	buys and sells stocks and shares (e.g. on Wall Street)
sales/personnel manager	responsible for sales or personnel staff

### C The medical profession

Doctors, nurses and surgeons (= specialist doctors who operate on people) work in hospitals. GPs (= general practitioners – doctors who treat people with general problems), dentists and vets (= animal doctors) work in places we call **surgeries**. All of these people treat (= give medical help, e.g. advice, medicines) and look after (= care for/take care of) people or animals.

### D The armed forces and the emergency services

My cousin joined/went into the army when he was 18.



**soldier**  
(in the army)



**sailor**  
(in the navy)



**pilot**  
(in the air force)



**police officer/  
policeman/policewoman**  
(in the police force)



**firefighter/fireman**  
(in the fire brigade)

# Exercises

**70.1** Write down one job from the opposite page that would probably be impossible for these people.

- 1 Someone who didn't go to university *doctor*
- 2 Someone with very bad eyesight (= cannot see very well)
- 3 Someone who is always seasick on a boat
- 4 Someone who understands nothing about cars
- 5 Someone who will not work in the evening or at weekends
- 6 Someone who is afraid of dogs
- 7 Someone who is afraid of heights and high places
- 8 Someone who is terrible at numbers and maths
- 9 Someone who doesn't like to see blood (= the red liquid in your body)
- 10 Someone who is a pacifist (= is anti-war)

**70.2** Complete these definitions.

- 1 A university lecturer *teaches in a university*.....
- 2 An architect .....
- 3 An accountant .....
- 4 A vet .....
- 5 A lawyer .....
- 6 An engineer .....
- 7 A bricklayer .....
- 8 A stockbroker .....
- 9 A mechanic .....
- 10 A surgeon .....

**70.3** Respond to the statements below, as in the example.

*Example* A: She's a police officer.

B: *Really? When did she join the police force?*

- 1 A: She's a soldier.  
B: .....
- 2 A: He's a sailor.  
B: .....
- 3 A: He's a fighter pilot.  
B: .....
- 4 A: He's a fireman.  
B: .....

**70.4** You have just bought a piece of land and you are planning to build a house on it. Write down at least six people from the opposite page that you may need to help you. What would you need their help for?

*Example* A bricklayer to build the walls

**70.5** Write a list of friends, relatives and neighbours who have jobs. What does each person do?

*Example* My uncle Jim's an engineer. His wife is an accountant.

**A** Getting a job

When Paula left school, she **applied for** (= wrote an official request for) a job in a local company. They gave her a job as a **trainee** (= a very junior person in a company). She didn't earn much (= didn't get much money/she had a low salary), but they gave her **in-house training** (= the company gave her help and advice to become better), and she went on/did several training courses.

**B** Moving up

Paula worked hard and her **prospects** (= future possibilities in the job) looked good. Her **manager/boss** (*infml*) was very pleased with her progress and she soon got a good **pay rise** (= more money every week/month). After two years she was **promoted** (= was given a higher position with more money and responsibility). After five years she was **in charge of** (= the boss of) a department with five **employees** (= workers) **under her**. (= under her control)

**employer** (= person who employs); **employee** (= worker)

**trainer** (= person who gives training); **trainee** (= person who receives training)

**C** Leaving the company

By the time Paula was 30, she decided she wanted a **fresh challenge** (= a new exciting situation) and a **career change** (= to work in a different kind of job). She wanted to **work abroad** (= work in another country), so she **resigned** (= officially told the company she was leaving her job; also **quit** *infml*) and started **looking for** another job. After a month she got a job with an international company which **involved** (= included) a lot of foreign travel. She was very excited about this and at first she really enjoyed it, but ...

**D** Hard times**NOTE**

Paula didn't have a job for nine months. (NOT She didn't have a-work.)

After six months, Paula started to dislike the travelling and living in hotels. She didn't do well in the job either. After a year the company **dismissed/sacked** her (= told her to leave), and Paula found life difficult. She was **unemployed/out of work** (= without a job) for nine months until she got a **part-time job** (= working only part of the day or week) in the kitchen of a restaurant.

**E** Happier times

Paula loved the restaurant. She enjoyed learning to cook, and two years later she **took over** (= took control of) the restaurant. After a year, she opened a second one, and after 20 years she had 10 restaurants. Last year Paula **retired** (= stopped working completely) at the age of 50, a rich woman.

# Exercises

**71.1** Write a synonym (= word with a similar meaning) for each of these phrases.

- 1 sack someone = *dismiss* someone
- 2 out of work = .....
- 3 leave a company = .....
- 4 be given a better position in a company = be .....
- 5 future possibilities in a job = .....
- 6 stop working (often at 60 or 65) = .....
- 7 workers in a company = .....
- 8 take control of something (e.g. a company) = .....

**71.2** Find the logical answer on the right for each of the questions on the left.

- |                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1 Why did they sack her?         | a Because she was 60.                                |
| 2 Why did they promote her?      | b Because she was late for work every day.           |
| 3 Why did she apply for the job? | c Because she needed more training.                  |
| 4 Why did she retire?            | d Because she was out of work.                       |
| 5 Why did she resign?            | e Because she was the best person in the department. |
| 6 Why did she go on the course?  | f Because she didn't like her boss.                  |

**71.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 He's not happy in his own country. He wants to work .....
- 2 I don't want a full-time job. I'd prefer to work .....
- 3 She'd like to go on another training .....
- 4 I'm bored in my job. I need a fresh .....
- 5 At the end of this year we should get a good pay .....
- 6 She's got more than a hundred workers under .....
- 7 I didn't know he was the new manager. When did he take .....
- 8 I know it's not a great job. How much does she ..... ?

**71.4** Complete the table. Use a dictionary to help you.

<i>verb</i>	<i>general noun</i>	<i>person</i>
manage	<i>management</i>	.....
promote	.....	-
employ	.....	...../.....
resign	.....	-
retire	.....	-
train	.....	...../.....

**71.5** Have you got a job in a company? If so, answer these questions as quickly as you can. If possible, ask another person the same questions.

- 1 Are you responsible for anything or anyone?
- 2 Have you had much training from the company?
- 3 Have you been on any training courses?
- 4 Have you been promoted from the time you started your job?
- 5 Do you normally get a good pay rise at the end of each year?
- 6 What do you think about your future prospects in the company?



### A Office equipment



### B Office work

Brian works for a company which produces (= makes/ manufactures *fml*) furniture. He works in an office, opposite the factory where the furniture is made. This is how he spends his day:

He works at a computer most of the time, where he types [see picture] letters and reports, and sends lots of e-mails.

He sends invoices (= paper showing products sold and the money to pay) to customers, and does quite a lot of paperwork, e.g. filing reports (= putting them in a file/ filing cabinet), etc.

Occasionally he shows people round the factory.

He has to make appointments for his boss and put them in the diary. He also arranges meetings for managers from different departments and types the agenda (= list of things to discuss at a meeting). Sometimes he has to attend (= go to *fml*) meetings and take the minutes. (= write down everything that is said during the meeting)



### C Office problems

Like most people who work in an office, Brian has his problems. This is how he explains them.

The photocopier is broken.

The printer isn't working.

We've run out of paper. (= the paper is finished) The computer's down (= not working) at the moment.

One of my colleagues (= people you work with) is off (= not at work) today and we've got loads of work (= a lot of work *infml*) to do.



# Exercises

**72.1** Find the best noun in the box to complete each of the sentences.

e-mail	<del>work</del>	letter	minutes	visitors
appointment	computer	meeting	reports	drawer

- I've got loads of work to do today.
- I made an ..... to see their managing director next week.
- The pens are in the top ..... of my desk.
- Could we arrange the ..... for next Thursday?
- The ..... was down this morning, so I couldn't do anything.
- I sent her an ..... yesterday but she hasn't replied.
- Have you filed those ..... yet?
- Could you type a ..... for me to send to the bank?
- I'm busy tomorrow. I have to show some ..... round the factory.
- Who took the ..... of yesterday's meeting?

**72.2** Complete the compound noun in each sentence.

- I told him to put the details on the **notice**.....
- He put most of the stuff in the **filing** .....
- I'm sure I put those reports in my **brief**.....
- It's a very boring job and I spend most of my time doing **general paper**.....
- I threw all that stuff in the **wastepaper** .....

**72.3** Rewrite these sentences. Replace the underlined words with the correct form of the word on the right. Add any other words that are necessary, but the meaning must stay the same.

- |  |        |         |
|--|--------|---------|
| 1 My secretary <u>isn't here</u> today.                    | is off | OFF     |
| 2 The photocopier <u>is broken</u> .                       |        | WORK    |
| 3 We <u>are very busy</u> today.                           |        | LOADS   |
| 4 <u>There's a problem with</u> the computer.              |        | DOWN    |
| 5 We <u>don't have any more</u> paper for the photocopier. |        | RUN OUT |

**72.4** What words from the opposite page are being defined here?

- People you work with. colleagues
- Something you put on a wall which tells you the date.
- A book where you often write down all your appointments and things you have to do.
- A piece of paper which shows the products a customer bought and the money to pay.
- A building where things (e.g. cars or computers) are made.
- A list of things to discuss at a meeting.

**72.5** Have you got a job? If so, are these statements true for you at work? If you haven't got a job, answer the questions about someone you know well. Compare your answers with a partner if possible.

I work at a computer a lot of the time.	I have to do a lot of paperwork.
I use e-mail a lot.	I show people round my workplace.
I arrange meetings.	I attend quite a lot of meetings.

### A Banks and business

Companies often borrow money from banks to **finance** (= pay for) investments (= things they need to buy to help the company in future, e.g. machines). This money is called a **loan**, and companies have to **pay interest** on it, e.g. if you borrow £1,000 for a year, and the interest rate is 10%, then you have to pay back £1,000 + £100 in interest.

### B Profit and loss

The main **aim/objective** of a company (= most important thing for a company to do) is to **make a profit** (= receive more money than it spends; *opp* make a loss). If a company does not make a profit or a loss, it **breaks even**. For example:

Most new companies are happy if they **break even** in their first year of business.

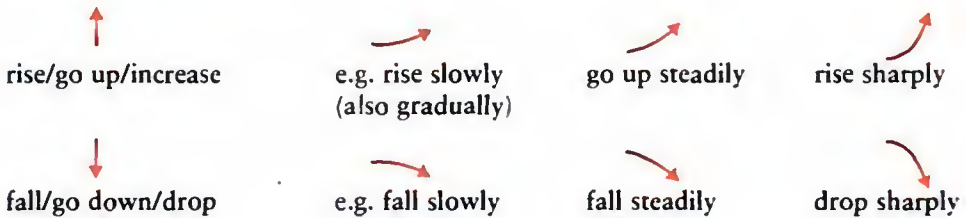
Companies receive money from selling their products (this money is called the **turnover**), and they spend money (called the **expenditure**) on these things: **raw materials** (= materials in their natural state, e.g. coal and oil are important **raw materials** used to make plastics), and **overheads** (= things a company must always spend money on, e.g. rent, electricity, etc.). For many companies, **labour costs** (= money paid to workers) are very expensive.

### C Rise and fall

These verbs describe **trends** (= movements) in sales, prices, profit and loss, etc.

#### NOTE

**Rise, increase** and **fall** are also used as nouns. For example: a **rise** of 10% ('of' introduces the amount); a **fall** of \$3.5 million; an **increase** in sales ('in' introduces the thing that is changing); a **fall** in profits.



Notice the different uses of prepositions with these verbs:

by + size of change	Pre-tax profits rose <b>by</b> 11% (to £120 million).
from + previous level	Prices dropped <b>from</b> \$594 to \$386.
to + new level	

### D Businesses and the economy

Most companies want:

to **grow/expand** (= get bigger) and **be successful** (= do well and make a lot of profit); **low inflation**, so prices do not go up; **low interest rates** to borrow money; **economic and political stability** (= no quick changes in the economic/political situation); a **healthy/strong economy** (= an economy in good condition; *opp* an economy in recession); **tax cuts** (= tax reductions/lower taxes), so they can keep more of their profit.

## Exercises

### 73.1 What single word or phrase is being defined in each of these sentences?

- 1 Money you borrow from a bank for your business.
- 2 What you must pay the bank if you borrow money.
- 3 The continuous increase in the price of things.
- 4 Total amount of money a company receives from selling its products.
- 5 When a company does not make a profit or a loss.
- 6 Money that a company spends on rent, electricity, paper, etc.

### 73.2 Complete the missing preposition in these sentences.

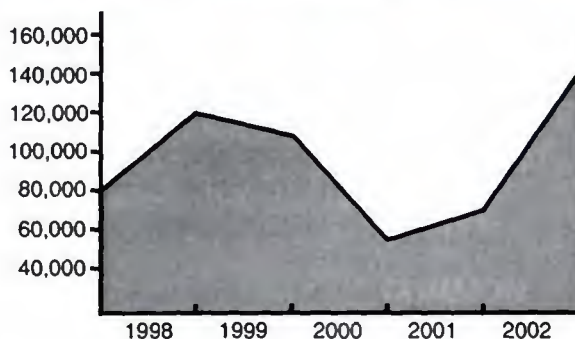
- 1 Sales rose ..... 10% last year.
- 2 The stock market value fell ..... 240 ..... 225 in the space of two days.
- 3 There was a rise ..... 5% in the value of the shares.
- 4 The shares were £2.50 last week, but the value has just gone up 20p ..... £2.70.
- 5 There has been a steady increase ..... the profit.
- 6 We had to pay over £5,000 ..... interest.

### 73.3 Replace the underlined word(s) with another word or phrase that has the same meaning.

After last year when sales (1) dropped by 5%, I am pleased to say there has been a (2) slow rise in sales in the first quarter of this year, and we are optimistic that the company will continue to (3) do well in the next quarter. In the longer term, our (4) objective for the company is to (5) grow by at least 10% over the next two years, and of course, to make sure that our profit (6) increases by a similar amount.

### 73.4 Look at the graph and complete the sentences on the left. Each gap is one word.

- 1 In 1998 sales .....
- 2 In the following year they  
.....
- 3 In 2000 there was a .....  
..... in sales.
- 4 In 2001 business improved and there  
was a .....
- 5 And in 2002 sales .....
- 6 In the five-year period sales  
..... by .....



### 73.5 Complete the compound words or common phrases. There may be more than one answer.

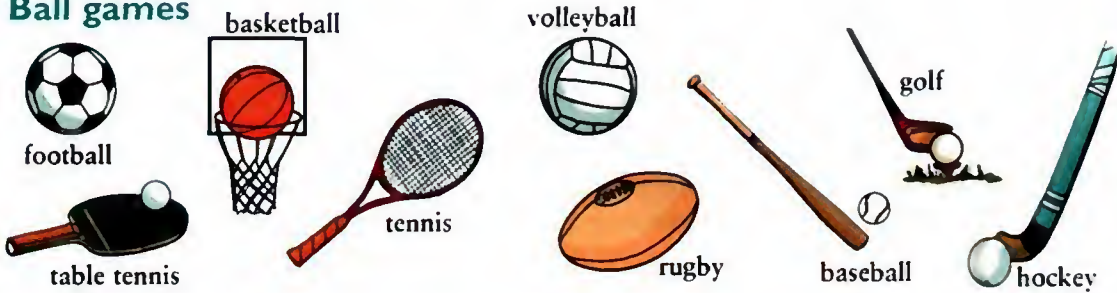
- |                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1 profit and ..... | 4 raw .....       |
| 2 ..... rate       | 5 a healthy ..... |
| 3 tax .....        | 6 ..... stability |

### 73.6 Can you answer these questions about your own country?

- 1 What is the inflation rate at the moment?
- 2 If you borrow money from the bank, what is the interest rate approximately?
- 3 What is the state of the economy at the moment? Is it strong? Is it in recession?

# Sport: ball games

## A Ball games



## B Equipment (= what you need to play the games)

For most ball games you need boots or training shoes. (also trainers *informal*)

You need a racket for tennis, a bat for baseball/table tennis; a stick for hockey; and clubs for golf [see picture].

In tennis and volleyball and there is a net across the middle of the court. There is also a net around each goal in football.

## C Things you can do with a ball



## D Places and people

### Places

The playing area for football and rugby is called a **pitch**. Around the pitch there is an area for spectators/the crowd (= people who watch the game). The total area is the **stadium**. The playing area for tennis, volleyball and basketball is a **court**; for golf it is a **course**.

### Officials

Football and rugby have a referee; tennis and baseball have an **umpire**. In football the referee uses a **whistle** to control the game.

## E Winning and losing

### NOTE

We write 2-2, but say **two-all**.

Spain beat Switzerland 3-2. (= Switzerland lost to Spain 3-2) In other words: Spain won the match. (= Switzerland lost the match) Spain were the **winners**. (= Switzerland were the losers)

If two teams/players have the same score (= number of goals or points) at **full-time** (= the end of the game), it is a **draw**. We can also use **draw** as a verb, e.g. We drew 2-2.

When a game is in progress, we use **lead** to describe the position of the teams or player with the most goals/points, and **latest** to describe the score:

At half-time, Brazil are **leading** Chile 2-1. (= the latest score is 2-1 to Brazil)



## A Sports

<i>sport</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>equipment</i>
athletics	track	vest, shorts, running shoes
motor racing	circuit	crash helmet
swimming	pool	swimming costume (women); trunks (men)
boxing	ring	vest, shorts, gloves, boots
ice hockey	rink	sticks, skates, puck
skiing	ski slopes	skis, sticks, ski suit, ski boots



## B Outdoor leisure activities



hiking



camping



rock climbing



jogging

I often go camping in the summer.  
I really enjoy hiking.

I do a bit of/a lot of rock climbing in Wales.  
Jogging keeps me fit. (= keeps my body healthy)

## C What do you do?

Notice the common verb + noun combinations here, e.g. do exercise or play a game.

Do you do much sport?

I go skiing in the winter.

I play a lot of ice hockey.

I go to the gym (= gymnasium) twice a week,  
where I do aerobics and a bit of weight training.

Is it expensive to join (= become a member of) a sports club?

I plan to take up (= start) golf when I get older.

I had to give up (= stop) athletics after I injured my back.

Swimming is good for you. (= helps people to stay healthy)

You need to do/take more exercise if you want to get fit.

(= become fit/get in good condition)

A: Which team do you support? (= like and follow)

B: Real Madrid. I've supported them all my life.



## D Do you take it seriously?

A: I take sport very seriously (= sport is very important to me) and when I play team games I'm very competitive (= I try hard and always want to win). What about you?

B: No. I'm the complete opposite (= I'm completely different: *opp* I'm exactly the same).  
I only play for fun. (= for pleasure/enjoyment)

# Exercises

**75.1** Organise these words and put them in the correct columns below.

swimming    costume    motor racing    crash helmet    trunks    circuit  
 pool    skates    ice hockey    rink    puck    sticks

<i>sport</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>equipment</i>
swimming		

**75.2** Fill the gaps with the correct verb.

- Do you ..... much exercise?
- I only ..... volleyball in the summer.
- If possible, I'd like to ..... a fitness club.
- A: I love football.  
 B: Do you? Which team do you ..... ?  
 A: Liverpool.
- My Dad played football but he ..... last year. He said he was too old.
- We used to ..... camping in the mountains.
- Why don't you ..... hiking or swimming, or something? You need more exercise.
- If you want to ..... fit, you need to run three or four miles every other day.

**75.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- Do you still do a lot of weight ..... *training* ..... ?
- I enjoy jogging and it keeps me .....
- Liz doesn't have much opportunity now to go rock .....
- Nigel loves dangerous sports; I'm the complete .....
- He has played for several good teams and he takes it very .....
- I used to play a lot of ice .....
- We still like watching motor .....
- I played for years, then I injured my ankle and I had to give .....
- In the summer I go jogging in the park. In the winter I exercise indoors and go to the .....
- I love swimming, and it's really good for .....

**75.4** Answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

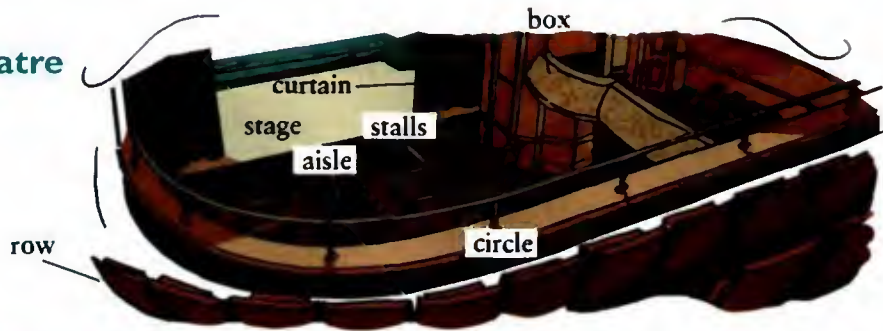
- What sport do you do?
- Do you take sport seriously or do you do it just for fun?
- Are you very competitive?
- Are you good at any sports?
- Have you taken up a new sport recently?
- Have you ever had to give up a sport for any reason?



### A Inside a theatre

#### NOTE

The people in the theatre are called the **audience**.



### B Plays and musicals

At the theatre you can see **plays**, e.g. *Hamlet*, written by Shakespeare; or **musicals**, e.g. *Phantom of the Opera*, written by Andrew Lloyd Webber. You usually **book** (= reserve) tickets in **advance** (= some time before you see the play). When you see the play (or film), it is called a **performance**, e.g. The evening performance usually starts at 8 pm.

### C Cinema

Films are **shown** on a screen. In your country, films made in English may have **subtitles** (= a written translation at the bottom of the screen), or they are **dubbed**. (= the English is replaced by actors speaking the words in your own language)

The person who makes the film is the **director**, e.g. Steven Spielberg, and the people in the film are **actors**. Famous actors are often called **film stars** (or **stars**), e.g. Julia Roberts.

### D Types of film

**war film**, e.g. *Apocalypse Now*; *Platoon*  
**romance** (= a love story/about a relationship)  
**thriller** (= interesting and exciting; often about crime)  
**disaster movie**, e.g. *Titanic*

**action film**, e.g. *Indiana Jones*  
**horror film**, e.g. *Dracula*  
**comedy** (= funny film; makes you laugh)  
**romantic comedy** (= love story and funny)

### E Describing plays and films

Journalists who write about films and plays are called **critics**, and their articles are called **reviews**. These are some common words they use.

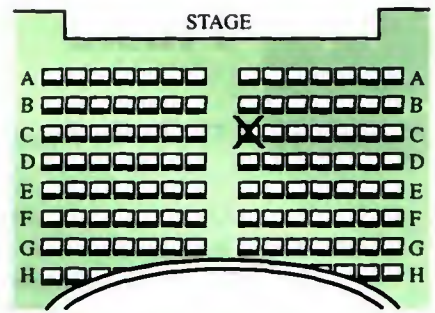
**brilliant/superb acting** (= fantastic acting)  
**very moving** (= has a big effect on our emotions; often sad)  
**violent scenes** (= scenes including fighting and death)

**an awful/dreadful film** (= terrible)  
**a slow film** (= boring)  
**a gripping story** (= exciting/interesting)  
**good fun** (= enjoyable but not serious)  
**a complex plot** (= story with many ideas)

### F Telling the story

The film is **set** (= happens) in the 1920s. It's **about** (= the subject/story is) a young man from a **poor background** (= family history and situation), who meets a girl and they **fall in love**. But her family don't accept him, so they **run away** (= go to another place to be away from the parents). **At first** (= in the beginning) everything is fine, but then **things go wrong** (= problems appear in their situation) and she has to leave him or they will be unhappy.

# Exercises



**76.1** Look at the picture and answer the questions.

- 1 Did you sit in the stalls or circle?
- 2 Which row were you in?
- 3 Were you next to an aisle?
- 4 Did you have a good view of the stage?

**76.2** Match the words on the left with the best definition on the right.

- |            |                           |
|------------|---------------------------|
| 1 violent  | a very exciting           |
| 2 moving   | b terrible                |
| 3 complex  | c fantastic               |
| 4 gripping | d lots of fighting        |
| 5 funny    | e very enjoyable          |
| 6 good fun | f lots of different ideas |
| 7 dreadful | g sad and emotional       |
| 8 superb   | h it makes you laugh      |

**76.3** What word or phrase is being defined?

- 1 A play or film, and part of the story is sung to music.
- 2 The people who watch a play at the theatre.
- 3 The person who makes a film.
- 4 Journalists who write articles about films and plays.
- 5 The name of the articles they write.
- 6 The translation of the words of a film across the bottom of the screen.
- 7 To reserve tickets before the performance.
- 8 The most important actors in a film.

**76.4** Complete these sentences describing parts of the story of different books and films.

- 1 The film is ..... in the 1940s, during the Second World War.
- 2 At the beginning, Paul meets Jennifer in a bookshop and they fall in .....
- 3 The film is ..... two women who drive across America.
- 4 The main character is young, clever and comes from a very rich .....
- 5 The couple are too young to marry, and their parents are very unhappy about the relationship, so they run .....
- 6 In this film the husband loses money gambling, but ..... first his wife knows nothing about it.
- 7 At the beginning, the company is successful, but then things start going .....
- 8 There's a love story in it, and it's very funny. I suppose you'd call it a .....

**76.5** Test your general knowledge of cinema. What kinds of films are these?

- |                                      |                               |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Pearl Harbor</i>                | 4 <i>Frankenstein</i>         |
| 2 <i>Four Weddings and a Funeral</i> | 5 <i>Silence of the Lambs</i> |
| 3 <i>Die Hard</i>                    | 6 <i>Basic Instinct</i>       |

Have you seen any of these films? If so, what words or phrases would you use to describe them?

### A Types of music

Classical music, e.g. Beethoven, Mozart (NOT *classie* music)

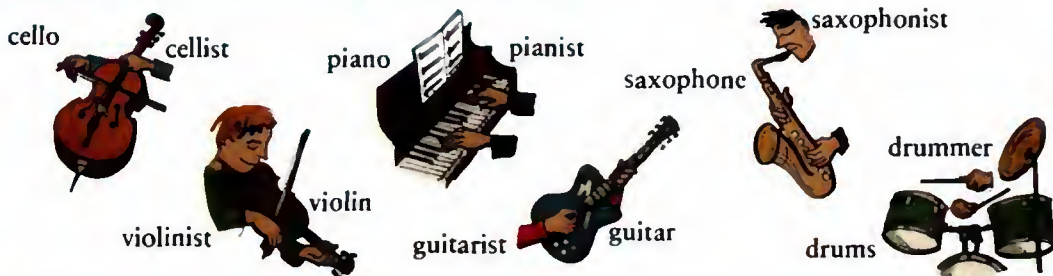
Opera (= a play in which the words are sung), e.g. *La Boheme* by Puccini, *Carmen* by Bizet

Rock and pop music, e.g. U2, Madonna, Robbie Williams, Alicia Keys

Jazz, e.g. Duke Ellington, Miles Davis

There are many types of rock and pop music. Some are popular for long periods, others have a short history. Examples in the last 25 years are: punk, reggae, rap, garage and hip-hop.

### B Musical instruments and musicians



### C People

Rock and pop music are usually **performed** (= played to an audience) by a **group/band**, e.g. Bon Jovi or Travis. Most groups have a **lead singer**, a **lead guitarist** (guitar with six strings), a **bass guitarist** (four strings) and a **drummer**.

**Solo artists** (= people who perform alone, e.g. Robbie Williams or Madonna) play with a **backing group**, and some of them are **songwriters**. (= they write their music/songs)

Classical music is written by a **composer**, e.g. Bach, and performed by an **orchestra** (= a large group of musicians including violins and cellos) with a **conductor** (= person at the front who directs the musicians). Some music also has a **choir**. (= a large group of singers)

### D A hit record

A **hit record** is a song that is very popular and bought by many people, e.g. 'Bohemian Rhapsody' was a **hit single** for Queen, and 'Angel' was a **hit single** for Robbie Williams. Groups and solo artists also **produce albums** (= make a collection of songs, usually 8–12, on one CD). 'Sergeant Pepper' by the Beatles is one of the most famous albums ever made.

These are also common phrases we use to talk about popular music.

Craig David's **new album** is out next week. (= you can buy his new album next week)

They plan to **release a new record** (= put it in the shops for people to buy) for Christmas.

Have you heard the **latest album** by Stereophonics? (= the most recent/newest album)

Kylie Minogue's new single is **number one**. (= the most popular record in the shops this week)

Which is your **favourite track** on the album? (= the song on the album you like the most)

Has your **taste in music** (= the type of music you like) changed in the last ten years?

# Exercises

**77.1** What do you call the people who play the following instruments?

- 1 piano    pianist            3 guitar            5 drums
- 2 violin                      4 cello

**77.2** Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 Do you play a musical ..... ?
- 2 A: Do you like ..... music?  
B: Yes, very much.  
A: Who's your favourite ..... ?  
B: It's hard to say, but I love Bach.
- 3 I sang in a ..... for years. We performed in churches all over the country.
- 4 Their new CD is ..... next week. I'm sure it'll go to number .....
- 5 Their first single was very popular, but they haven't ..... an album yet.
- 6 I think their ..... album is brilliant, and much better than their last one.

**77.3** Now use the context and your own knowledge to fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 He used to be conductor of the Berlin Philharmonic .....
- 2 Robbie Williams was in a ..... called Take That before he became a ..... artist.
- 3 Elton John ..... piano, and writes and ..... all his own songs.
- 4 I think 'Hey Jude' or 'I want to hold your hand' is the Beatles' biggest selling hit ....., but 'Sergeant Pepper' is probably their most famous ..... .  
That or 'Abbey Road'.
- 5 I haven't been to the ..... since I saw *The Marriage of Figaro* last year.
- 6 Keith Richard has been ..... guitarist of the Rolling Stones for over 30 years.
- 7 Duke Ellington is one of the greatest ..... pianists ever.
- 8 'Waterloo' was one of Abba's most famous hit .....
- 9 Eric Clapton sings on his albums, but he first became famous as a .....
- 10 Before he became a solo artist, Sting was the ..... singer with Police.

**77.4** Complete this story of Craig David's early years.

Craig David was born and grew up in Southampton, on the south coast of England.

As a teenager he used to write his own  
(1) ..... on a dictaphone, and his  
(2) ..... in music at that time ranged  
from Terence Trent D'Arby to Michael Jackson

and Stevie Wonder. His first (3) .....  
was 'Human', a version of the song that was  
a (4) ..... for the 'Human League'.  
After that David became better known, and  
his first album was (5) ..... in  
summer 2000.

**77.5** Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 What sort of music do you like best?
- 2 Who's your favourite singer/group/composer?
- 3 What was the last record or album you bought?
- 4 Has your musical taste changed in the last few years?

# Newspapers



## A Background

Most newspapers are daily (= they come out/are published every day). Some are national, some are local. Magazines are weekly or monthly (= published every week/month).

Some newspapers are tabloids (= small in size). These are usually the popular press (= short articles and lots of pictures), and they often have a larger circulation (= number of readers). The more serious newspapers are bigger in size. People often refer to newspapers as the press.

## B Contents

Reports (= pieces of writing about news items, e.g. a report in *The Times*)

Articles (= pieces of writing about an important subject, e.g. an article about drugs)

Headlines (= title in large letters above the report/article, e.g. a front-page headline)

Reviews (= articles giving an opinion of new films, books, etc., e.g. a review of ...)

Adverts (= words and pictures about a product, to make people buy it, e.g. an ad for ...)

## C People

Editor (= person in control of the daily production)

Reporters/journalists (= people who report news and write articles)

Photographers (= people who take the pictures in the papers)

## D Headlines

Certain words (usually short) are common in newspaper headlines. Verb grammar is also different in headlines: the present simple can be used for present or past events; an infinitive often refers to the future. Articles (*the/a*) and the verb *be* are often not included.

row (= an argument)

back (= support)

quit (= leave a job)

hit (= have a bad effect on)

bid (= try/attempt)

talks (= discussions)

cut (= reduce/make less)

key (= very important)

Government in new row over schools

Bush backs new law (= Bush has backed a new law)

British Rail chairman to quit (= the chairman is going to quit)

Bad weather hits farmers

UN in bid to end war

Government and IRA in new talks

Bank of England cuts rate again

Zidane could be key player

## E 'It said in the paper that ...'

When we refer to something written in a newspaper we use these phrases:

It said in *The Times* that they've found the missing girl. (NOT ~~it's written~~ in ...)

According to *The Guardian*, the missing girl was found last night.

# Exercises

**78.1** These words can be difficult to pronounce. Check the pronunciation in the Index and practise saying them. Remember, you must stress the second syllable of 'advertisement' and 'photographer'.

publish	article	ad'vertisement
journalist	pho'tographer	row (= argument)

**78.2** Fill the gaps with the correct preposition.

- 1 There was a report ..... *The Independent* ..... this new law.
- 2 Have you read any reviews ..... his new film?
- 3 It's an advert ..... a type of mobile phone, I think.
- 4 I read it ..... the paper.
- 5 High unemployment won't last according ..... the paper.

**78.3** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 A: Is the paper .... *published* ..... every day?  
B: No, it ..... out once a week.
- 2 There are more than ten national ..... newspapers in Britain.
- 3 I haven't read 'Hello' magazine. Is it a weekly or a ..... ?
- 4 The manager was interviewed for the paper by their best known .....
- 5 Do you understand this ..... ? '200 WOMEN GIVEN WRONG DIAGNOSIS'
- 6 The picture on the front page was taken by one of their youngest .....
- 7 There was a fantastic ..... in the paper yesterday about 'Space'. Did you read it?
- 8 I read a ..... of his latest film. It doesn't sound very good.
- 9 You often see ..... in the paper which promise that you can learn a language in ten hours with this method. It's nonsense.
- 10 ..... to *The Times*, the government is starting to panic.

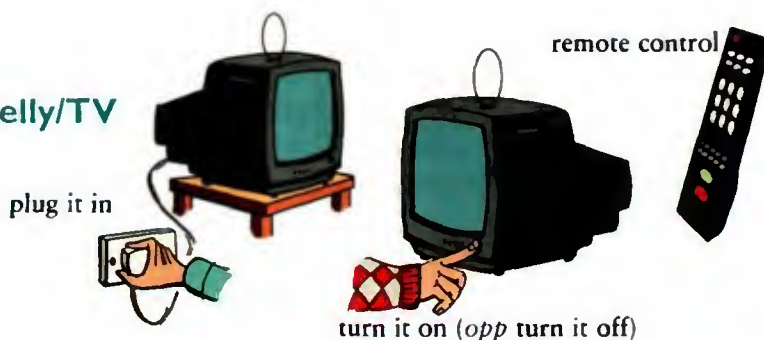
**78.4** Rewrite these headlines in your own words. Don't repeat the underlined words. Remember that small words like articles (*the/a*) and pronouns (*his/my*) are often not included in headlines, but they will need to be in your answers.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 MINISTER TO <u>QUIT</u><br>A minister is going to leave his/her job | 5 Government to <u>cut</u> spending on new hospitals  |
| 2 Japan and US start fresh <u>talks</u>                               | 6 Bad weather <u>hits</u> rail service                |
| 3 GERMANY <u>BACKS</u> US PLAN  | 7 <u>MINISTERS</u> IN NEW <u>ROW</u> OVER TAX         |
| 4 POLICE DISCOVER <u>KEY</u> WITNESS                                  | 8 <i>New <u>bid</u> to <u>cut</u> teenage smoking</i> |

**78.5** Think about newspapers in your own country. Answer these questions.

- 1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
- 2 How many are tabloids?
- 3 How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
- 4 Which newspaper has the largest circulation?
- 5 Can you name two or three famous journalists who write for daily newspapers?

### A Using a television/telly/TV



You can also **turn it up** (= increase the volume; *opp* **turn it down**) and **turn over** (= change to a different **channel**; e.g. from 1 to 3). You can use **switch on**, **switch off**, or **switch over** in place of **turn**. (NOT ~~switch it up/down~~)

### B Types of programme

**Soap opera**: a programme often on two or three times a week, which follows the lives of a group/community of people. The stories are often exciting, dramatic and hard to believe.

**Quiz show** or **Game show**: individuals or teams (called **contestants**) answer questions or play different games against each other. The winner gets a **prize**, e.g. money or a holiday.

**Chat show**: a programme where a presenter talks to famous people about their lives.

**Documentary**: a film with factual information, often about a problem in society.

**Series**: a number of programmes about the same situation or the same characters in different situations. This may be a **comedy series** (= programmes that try to be funny), or a **drama series**. (= programmes with interesting characters and exciting situations)

**Current affairs**: programmes about a social or political problem. **Current** means happening 'now/at the present time'.

### C TV in Great Britain

At the moment there are five 'terrestrial' **channels** (or **stations**) on TV (BBC 1, BBC 2, ITV1, Channel 4 and Channel 5).

If you pay extra, you can have a **satellite dish** and receive **satellite TV**; or pay to have **cable TV** (TV sent through wire cables underground). There are many channels available.



### D Talking TV

**What's on TV tonight?** (= what programmes are showing on TV tonight?)

**Is there anything on TV tonight?**

**What time's the film on?** (= what time is the film showing?)

**I quite like television commercials.** (= the advertisements between programmes)

**Are they showing the game live** (= as it happens) or **just recorded highlights?** (= parts of the game after it has been played, e.g. later in the day/evening)

'Friends' is on tonight, but it's a **repeat** (= the programme has been on TV before). I've seen it.

**What's your favourite programme?** (= the programme you like most/best)

# Exercises

- 79.1** You are watching TV with a friend. What could you say in each of the situations below?
- 1 You want to watch a programme on TV. *Could you turn the TV on?*
  - 2 You can't hear the programme very well. Could you .....
  - 3 You want to watch a different programme. Could you .....
  - 4 Now it's too loud for you. Could you .....
  - 5 You don't want to watch any more. Could you .....

- 79.2** Here are the evening programmes on three British TV channels. Find one example of: a documentary; a quiz show; a game show; a drama series; a current affairs programme.

<p><b>7.00 Telly Addicts</b> Noel Edmonds hosts the quiz in which teams have their television knowledge put to the test.</p> <p><b>7.30 Watchdog</b> Anne Robinson presents the stories that affect consumers. With Alice Beer and reporters Chris Choi and Jonathan Martland.</p> <p><b>8.00 EastEnders</b> Kathy tries to come to terms with Ted's revelations. Michelle receives a letter that could change her life. For cast see Tuesday Stereo Subtitled ..... 5500</p> <p><b>8.30 2 Point 4 Children</b> The Deep There's something fishy going on when Bill and Ben are asked to look after their neighbour's house.</p> <p><b>9.00 Nine O'Clock News</b> With Peter Sissons. Subtitled <b>Regional News</b> Weather Rob McElwee ..... 3245</p>	<p><b>7.00 The Krypton Factor</b> Four new contestants compete for a place in the November final. Director Tony Prescott; Producer Wayne Garvie Stereo Subtitled ..... 9448</p> <p><b>7.30 Coronation Street</b> It's farewell time at the Rovers. Episode written by Stephen Mallatratn. For cast see Wednesday. Repeated on Wednesday at 1.25 pm Subtitled ..... 239</p> <p><b>8.00 Bruce's Price is Right</b> Game show testing knowledge of the price of consumer goods. Director Bill Morton; Producer Howard Huntridge Stereo Subtitled ..... 2968</p> <p><b>8.30 World in Action</b> In a classroom fitted with cameras, World in Action reveals what is really going on in Britain's overcrowded schools and asks who is to blame.</p> <p><b>9.00 New series</b> <b>Cracker</b> Brotherly Love (part 1). In the first of this three-part thriller, a prostitute is found raped and murdered, opening old wounds at the station.</p>	<p><b>7.00 Channel 4 News</b> Presented by Jon Snow and Cathy Smith. Including Weather Subtitled ..... 829535</p> <p><b>7.55 The Slot</b> The daily soapbox offering viewers the chance to air their opinions. Stereo ..... 141603</p> <p><b>8.00 New series</b> <b>Desperately Seeking Something</b> A four-part series in which Pete McCarthy explores the strange universe of alternative beliefs.</p> <p><b>8.30 Baby It's You</b> Continuing the six-part series which uses natural history filming techniques to observe the first two years of a baby's life.</p> <p><b>9.00 Cutting Edge</b> <b>The Trouble with Money</b> Strange though it seems to some, not everyone enjoys winning the lottery. This documentary explores the joys and pitfalls of getting rich quick.</p>
---	---	---

There is also one comedy series, and two soap operas. Can you guess what they are?

- 79.3** Complete these dialogues in a suitable way.
- 1 A: What's ..... TV tonight?  
B: Oh, the usual soap ..... and stuff like that.
  - 2 A: Did you see the game live?  
B: No, they just showed the recorded .....
  - 3 A: Ally McBeal is ..... tonight.  
B: Yes, it's a good programme, but I've seen it before: it's a .....

- 79.4** Answer these questions about TV in your own country.
- 1 How many channels approximately can you watch?
  - 2 Do you watch a lot of satellite TV and/or cable TV?
  - 3 In total, how much TV do you watch every week?
  - 4 What are your favourite programmes on TV at the moment? When are they on?
  - 5 Do you enjoy watching the commercials?



### A Phone and telephone



### B Starting a phone conversation

The first conversation is informal between friends; the second is a formal business call.

#### NOTE

When British people answer the phone at home, they usually just say 'hello' and occasionally they give their number. Usually they do not give their name.

MARY: Hello?

RUTH: Is that Mary? (NOT Are you Mary? or Is it Mary?)

MARY: Yeah.

RUTH: Hi. It's Ruth. (NOT I am Ruth or Here is Ruth)

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.

PAUL SCHOLES: Oh, good morning. Could I speak to Jane Gordon, please?

RECEPTIONIST: Yes. Who's calling, please?

PAUL SCHOLES: My name is Paul Scholes from 'Bexel Plastics'. (= a typical formal introduction)

RECEPTIONIST: Right, Mr Scholes. I'm putting you through (= I'm connecting you)  
... pause ...

JANE GORDON: Hello?

PAUL SCHOLES: Mrs Gordon?

JANE GORDON: Speaking. (= yes, this is Mrs Gordon)

### C Telephone problems

4.20 pm You phone your sister Susan, but it's engaged (= the phone line is busy). In other words, Susan is already on the phone (= using the phone) talking to someone else.

4.30 pm You phone again but a stranger answers and says: 'I think you've got the wrong number.' (= you have dialled another number, e.g. 637424 and not 627424)

4.35 pm You get through to (= make contact with) your sister's number, but she's out (= not at home). Her husband answers and says: 'Susan won't be back (= will not return) for an hour', so you leave a message: 'Could you ask Susan to ring me when she gets back (= returns)?' The husband agrees to give Susan the message: 'I'll tell her you called.'

6.00 pm Susan phones you back but you're out. She leaves a message on the answerphone. Her message is: 'Jean, this is Susan. I'm just returning your call. I'll give you a ring (= phone you) tomorrow. Bye.'

### D Useful vocabulary

To phone another city/country, you need the (dialling) code, e.g. the code for Cambridge is 01223.

Phone calls in a town are local calls; calls to another country are international calls.

Text messages are short written messages you can send from one mobile phone to another.

## Exercises

### 80.1 Write four more words or expressions that include 'phone'.

phone *number* ..... phone ..... phone .....  
..... phone ..... phone

### 80.2 Complete these phone conversations with suitable words or phrases.

A: Hello?

B: Good morning. Could I (1) ..... Alicia James?

A: (2) .....

B: Oh, good morning, Mrs James. My name is ...

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?

B: Yes. (3) ..... Paul Mathews and I'm trying to contact Mr Patterson. He left  
a (4) ..... on my answerphone yesterday afternoon.

A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Patterson's (5) ..... at the moment. Can I ask him  
to phone you (6) ..... later?

B: Yes, please. I shall be here until lunchtime. My (7) ..... is 748 7267.

A: Hello?

B: Hi. (8) ..... Sandra?

A: No, sorry. Sandra's not (9) ..... at the moment.

B: Oh. Do you know when she'll (10) ..... back?

A: No, I've no idea.

B: OK. Well, in that case, could I (11) ..... a (12) ..... for her?

A: Yes, of course.

B: Could you ask her to (13) ..... me a (14) ..... this evening?

A: Sure. What's your name?

B: Catherine. I'm a colleague from work. She's got my (15) .....

A: Right. I'll tell her.

A: Hello?

B: (16) ..... Carlos?

A: Yeah, speaking.

B: Hi, Carlos. (17) ..... Serena.

A: Oh, hello. I was expecting you to ring yesterday.

B: I did – I tried. I rang about six times last night but I couldn't get (18) .....  
It was (19) ..... all the time.

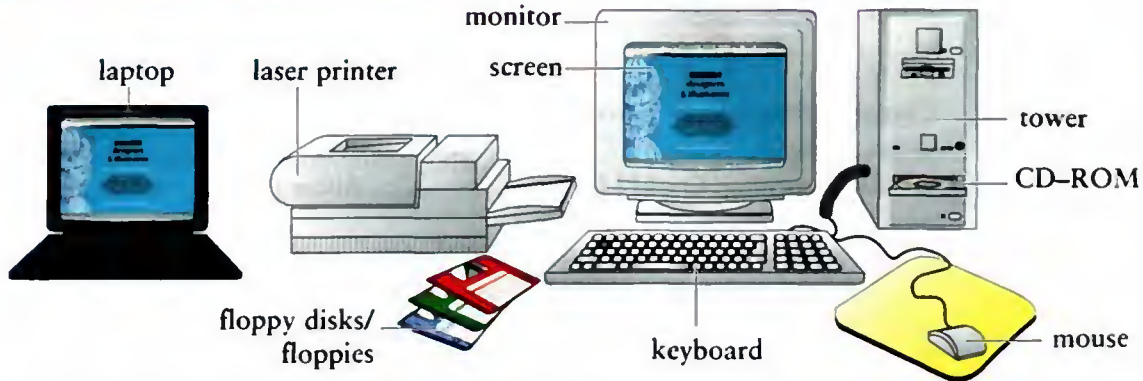
A: Oh, yes, I'm sorry about that. I was (20) ..... the phone to my brother for  
about an hour and then someone rang me about the table tennis next week.

### 80.3 Answer these questions. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

- 1 Have you got a mobile phone? How often do you use it? What do you use it for? Do you send many text messages?
- 2 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police?
- 3 From your country, what's the dialling code for the United Kingdom?
- 4 How much does it cost to make a local call?
- 5 What's the phone number of your English school?

# Computers and the Internet

## A Hardware and software



There is hardware (= the machines), and software (= the programs needed to work the machines). These programs are stored (= kept) on disks: hard disk (inside the tower), floppy disks, CD-ROMs or DVDs.

## B Operating a computer



open a new document



open an existing document



save the data in this document



print



cut



copy



paste

You can print it out later.      Have you saved it in a new file?

## C The Internet

The **Internet/the Net** is a system connecting (= linking) millions of computers worldwide (= around the world). In order to get **online** (= become connected) you must **connect** your computer to a phone line using a **modem**. You also need an **Internet Service Provider (ISP)**, e.g. aol, freeserve. On the Internet, there are different **search engines** you can use such as 'Yahoo' or 'Excite' to find what you are looking for.

When you go **online** (= use the Internet), you can **browse** (= look at) different websites and **download** stuff from the Internet. (= move data from one computer to another)

## D E-mail

I sent you an e-mail yesterday.      What's your e-mail address?

Did you check your e-mail today? (= look to see if you received any e-mails)

You can e-mail me at [pd@freeserve.co.uk](mailto:pd@freeserve.co.uk). (spoken as: pd at freeserve dot co dot uk)

## E Important vocabulary

Some computers and programs are more **user-friendly** (= easy to use) than others.

If your computer has a **virus** (= a software problem), it may **crash** (= stop working).

Because of this you should make a **back-up copy**. (= a second copy on a floppy disk)

# Exercises

**81.1** Complete the words and phrases below with words from the box.

Provider	copy	<del>computer</del>	disk	sites
board	address	printer	user	top

- |                                 |                 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 <u>computer</u> ..... program | 6 e-mail .....  |
| 2 floppy .....                  | 7 laser .....   |
| 3 .....-friendly                | 8 lap .....     |
| 4 Internet Service .....        | 9 back-up ..... |
| 5 key.....                      | 10 web.....     |

**81.2** Can you remember what these symbols mean?



- 1 ..... 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 .....

**81.3** Fill each gap with a suitable word.

- I wrote a report on the computer this morning, then I ..... out two copies – one for me and one for my boss. Then, without any warning, the computer ....., and I'm afraid I lost the whole document.
- If you want to get online, you have to ..... your computer to a phone line using a modem.
- You can ..... a lot of information from the Internet onto your own computer, but it can take a lot of time.
- There was a warning on the news this morning about a new computer ..... that attacks e-mail. If you open a message called 'April Showers', it destroys all your e-mail contacts.
- A: Have you ..... your e-mail today?  
B: No, I haven't.  
A: Well, I ..... you an e-mail this morning. You'd better have a look.
- I spend ages just ..... different websites.
- It may depend on the ..... engine you are using.
- My new e-mail address is: janebriggs ..... aol ..... com.

**81.4** Answer these questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- Do you have a computer at home? If so, what is it (e.g. PC, Mac, etc.)?
- Do you use computers at school/college/university or work?
- What do you use them for?
- What software are you familiar with?
- Do you use e-mail? If so, what's your e-mail address?
- Do you use the Internet? If so, what are some of your favourite websites?

# Education: school

## A The state system (= free education)

- Age of 3 most go to nursery school  
 5 everyone starts primary school  
 11 pupils (= the name for students at this age) go to secondary school  
 16 go to a college for vocational (= job) training, e.g. hotel management, secretarial courses; or stay at school for two more years; leave school and get a job  
 18 leave school and go to university; go to a college for further education/training, e.g. teaching, business studies; get a job

You **go to school** and **go to university** (NOT go to ~~the~~ school/university). Other examples are: **go to church** (= to pray), **go into hospital** (= as a patient because you are ill), **go to bed** (= to sleep), **go to prison** (= as a criminal). There are also **public/independent/private schools** and parents pay to send their children to these schools. The **school fees** are expensive. About 7–10% of the population go to private schools in the UK.

## B Subjects (= topics you study)

<i>arts</i>	<i>sciences</i>
English	maths (= mathematics)
French, German, Spanish	physics
history	chemistry
geography	biology
art, music	information technology (= about computers and communication)

Some words look plural, but in fact they are singular and need a singular verb, e.g. **Maths isn't** my favourite subject. Other examples are: physics, politics and economics.

## C Timetable

The school day is **divided** into 6–7 lessons in different subjects, with a **break** (= period of rest between work) in the morning and afternoon. There is also a **one-hour lunch break**. The school year is usually **divided** into three **terms** (= periods of study). Each term is about 13 weeks, and each week pupils **do** (= study) about ten **subjects**. At the end of the school year they **do/take** an exam in each subject. After the holidays, pupils **go back** (= return) to school.

## D Success and failure

<i>success</i>	<i>failure</i>
I passed my exam.	I failed my exam.
I did very well.	I did very badly.
I got nine out of ten for my homework. (= 9/10)	I got three out of ten for my homework.
I got a very high mark. (e.g. 18/20)	I got a very low mark. (e.g. 5/20)
I got a good grade. (e.g. B+)	I didn't get a very good grade. (e.g. D-)
I'm good at English.	I'm hopeless at (= very bad at) maths.

# Exercises

**82.1** Here are some school subjects but the letters are mixed up. What are the subjects?

- |                                  |                    |
|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1 tahms ..... <i>maths</i> ..... | 6 irthosy .....    |
| 2 cneceei .....                  | 7 nisgehl .....    |
| 3 hogtceynlo .....               | 8 ehgoragpy .....  |
| 4 rat .....                      | 9 simcu .....      |
| 5 ehnfcr .....                   | 10 srheyictm ..... |

**82.2** How much can you remember? Answer these questions without looking at the opposite page.

- 1 At what age do English children go to nursery school?
- 2 When do they start primary school?
- 3 When do they go to secondary school?
- 4 At what age can children leave school?
- 5 What can they do if they pass all their exams at the age of 18?

**82.3** Complete this text about the timetable of a typical secondary school in Britain.

The school day is normally (1) ..... into six or seven (2) ..... , with (3) ..... during the morning, at lunch and in the afternoon. Over the whole week, (4) ..... usually do about ten different (5) ..... . The school year normally has three (6) ..... , with exams at the end of the year.

**82.4** Complete these sentences with a suitable phrase.

- 1 When she was a child she went *to school* ..... in a small village.
- 2 He didn't go to school last term. He was very ill and he had to go .....
- 3 I was very tired, so after I finished my homework I went .....
- 4 When I left school I went ..... and studied medicine.
- 5 It was a religious school, so we had to go ..... quite a lot.
- 6 The police caught him and he went ..... for six months.

**82.5** Write the opposites.

- 1 I passed my exam.
- 2 I did very well.
- 3 I'm very good at English.
- 4 I got a very high mark.

**82.6** What about you and your country? Answer these questions.

- 1 Did you go to nursery school?
- 2 Do most children start primary school at the age of five?
- 3 Is the secondary school system similar or different to the English system?
- 4 How many subjects do/did you study at secondary school?
- 5 Do/Did you study any subjects which are not included on the opposite page?
- 6 What is/was your favourite subject?
- 7 How many lessons do/did you have every day?
- 8 Is/Was your school a state school or private school?
- 9 At what age can you leave school?
- 10 How many terms are there in a school year?

**A** Subjects

You can normally do/study these subjects at university but not always at school. (The underlining shows the syllable you must stress in each word.)

me <u>d</u> icine	la <u>w</u>	phil <u>o</u> sophy
eng <u>i</u> neering	psy <u>ch</u> ology	so <u>ci</u> ology
ar <u>ch</u> itecture	po <u>l</u> itics	bu <u>s</u> iness studies
agr <u>i</u> culture	h <u>i</u> story of a <u>r</u> t	eco <u>n</u> omics

**B** Studying at (a British) university

If you want to go to (= enter *fml*) university, you must first pass examinations that most students take at the age of 18 (called 'A' levels). Students usually take three or four 'A' levels (examinations in three or four subjects), and they must do well to get a place at university.

If you get a place, most students have to pay part of their tuition fees (= money for teaching). Some students also get a government grant (= money to pay for living expenses, e.g. food and somewhere to live), but most students need a loan (= money you borrow from a bank) to cover the cost of (= pay for) university life. Students at university are called undergraduates while they are studying for their first degree.

Most university courses last (= continue for) three years, some courses last four years, and one or two courses, e.g. medicine, are five years. During this period students can say they are doing a degree, and when they finish and pass their exams, they can say they have a degree. This can be a BA (= bachelor of arts) or a BSc (= bachelor of science). For example:

He hopes to get a place at Oxford.  
She's doing a degree in physics.  
She's got a BA in French.

She's at university in Glasgow.  
I've got a degree in German from York University.  
He's got a BSc in computer science.

**C** Postgraduate courses

When you complete your first degree, you are a graduate. Some students then go on (= continue) to do a second course or degree, called a postgraduate course/degree (or postgrad course). These students are then postgraduates and they often study for:

an MA (Master of Arts), e.g. I'm doing a Masters in English or  
an MSc (Master of Science), e.g. She did a Masters in biology or  
a PhD (Doctor of Philosophy) [minimum three years], e.g. He's got a PhD in computer science.

When people study one subject in great detail (often to find new information), we say they are doing research, e.g. My sister is doing research into/on the effects of stress at work.

**D** School vs university

School has teachers and lessons; at university you have lecturers and lectures. The head of department (also called a 'faculty', but less common in spoken English) at a university is usually called a professor. (An ordinary teacher or lecturer is not a professor.)

# Exercises

## 83.1 Read these sentences spoken by university students. What is each person studying?

- 1 I'm concentrating on Le Corbusier and Frank Lloyd Wright. *architecture*
- 2 We have to know every bone in a person's body.
- 3 The way we use fertilisers is much more precise than 20 years ago.
- 4 We're going to concentrate on Freud and Jung this term.
- 5 I've been reading some books on time management.
- 6 Expressionism was really a reaction to the work of the Impressionists.
- 7 We've spent a lot of time on American foreign policy.
- 8 You must know this case; it's one of the most famous in legal history.

Now mark the stress on each of your answers, check with the pronunciation in the Index, and practise saying the subjects.

## 83.2 What do you call:

- 1 the money some students receive if they get a place at university?
- 2 the qualification you get at the end of university?
- 3 the name we give students during this period at university?
- 4 teachers at university?
- 5 students when they have completed their first degree?
- 6 students studying for a second, higher degree?
- 7 the study of one subject in great depth and detail, often to get new information?
- 8 the talks/lessons that students go to while they are at university?

## 83.3 Replace the underlined verbs with less formal verbs that have the same meaning in the context.

- 1 Is it very difficult to obtain a place at university?
- 2 You have to pass exams before you can enter university.
- 3 He's studying physics, I think.
- 4 Did she receive a grant for her course?
- 5 The course continues for three years.

## 83.4 Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 My brother is 20. He's still ..... university in York.
- 2 She's got a degree ..... economics.
- 3 He's ..... research ..... various types of nervous disorder.
- 4 She's already got a BA. She's doing a ..... degree now.
- 5 Who is the professor in your ..... ?

## 83.5 Answer these questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else from your own country and/or someone from a different country.

- 1 Do you need to pass examinations before you can go to university?
- 2 Do some students get a grant to study at university?
- 3 Is the tuition free if you go to university?
- 4 Do most degree courses last three years?
- 5 What is your equivalent of the British BA or BSc?
- 6 Do you have similar postgraduate degrees in your country?



**A** The police

When someone commits a crime (= breaks the law and does something illegal/against the law/wrong), the police do a number of things.

They investigate the crime. (= try to find out what happened and who is responsible)

If they catch (= find) the person they believe is responsible for the crime, they will arrest them. (= take them to the police station because they think the person has committed the crime)

At the police station, they question them. (= ask them questions)

If they are sure that the person committed the crime, the person is charged with the crime.

(= the police make an official statement that they believe the person committed the crime)

For a serious crime (e.g. murder), the person must then go to court for trial. [see section B]

**B** In court

In court, the defendant must try to prove (= provide facts to show something is true) that they did not commit the crime. In other words, they must try to prove that they are innocent (*opp* guilty). Twelve members of the public (called the jury) listen to the evidence (= information about the crime, for and against) and then make their decision. People who see a crime are witnesses, and they usually give evidence at a trial.

**C** Punishment (= what a person must suffer if they do something wrong)

If someone is guilty of a crime, the judge will give the sentence (= the punishment). If a person is guilty of murder, the sentence may be 10–20 years in prison. The person then becomes a prisoner.

For crimes that are not serious (called minor offences, e.g. illegal parking), the punishment is usually a fine. (= money you have to pay)

# Exercises

**84.1** Put this story in the correct order. The first event has been given.

- a they found both men guilty.
- b and charged them with the robbery.
- c £10,000 was stolen from a bank in the High Street. 1
- d After the jury had listened to all the evidence
- e The judge gave the men a prison sentence of five years.
- f The trial took place two months later.
- g and they finally arrested two men.
- h They questioned them at the police station
- i The police interviewed a number of witnesses about the crime

**84.2** Answer the questions.

- 1 Who investigate(s) crimes? *the police*
- 2 Who sentence(s) people?
- 3 Who live(s) in prison?
- 4 Who decide(s) if someone is innocent or guilty?
- 5 Who defend(s) people and present(s) evidence?
- 6 Who commit(s) crimes?

**84.3** Fill the gaps with the correct word.

- 1 A: Have you ever ..... the law?  
B: No, never.
- 2 A: Does anyone know why she ..... the crime?  
B: I think she needed the money.
- 3 A: Is it legal to ride a motorbike without a licence?  
B: No, it's ..... the law.
- 4 In Britain it is ..... to drive a car without insurance.
- 5 If you drive through a red light, you will have to pay a .....
- 6 The defendant must try to ..... he or she is innocent.
- 7 The jury must decide if the defendant is innocent or .....
- 8 Before they reach a decision, the jury must look at the ..... carefully.
- 9 If someone is guilty of murder, the ..... will be at least ten years in prison.
- 10 He has been in trouble before, but it was only a minor .....

**84.4** Read the text, then write your answers to the questions below, based on your knowledge of the law in your own country. If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

Two 15-year-old boys broke into a house when the owner was out, and took money and jewellery worth about £900. The owner reported the crime when she got home at 6pm.

- 1 Will the police investigate this crime?
- 2 How will they investigate? What will they do?
- 3 Do you think the police will catch the two boys?
- 4 If they do, what crime will they be charged with?
- 5 Can boys of this age go to prison?
- 6 What do you think the sentence would be? Do you think this is the correct sentence?

### A The law

If you do something illegal/against the law (= wrong), you have **committed a crime**. Most people commit a crime at some time in their lives, e.g. driving above the speed limit or parking illegally, etc. If you **break the law** (= do something wrong/illegal) and commit a crime, you could get into **trouble** (= be in a bad situation) with the police.

### B Crimes

<i>crime</i>	<i>criminal</i> (= <i>person</i> )	<i>verb</i>
theft (= general word for stealing)	thief	steal (also take)
robbery (= steal from people or places, e.g. banks)	robber	rob
burglary (= break into a shop/house and steal things)	burglar	break in
shoplifting (= steal from shops when they're open)	shoplifter	shoplift
murder (= kill someone by intention)	murderer	murder
manslaughter (= kill someone but without intention)	–	–

### C Scene of the crime

Two men robbed a jeweller's in west London early this morning. They **broke in** (= forced their way into the building, e.g. they broke a window) around 7am and took/stole rings and necklaces valued at over £10,000. Several **witnesses** (= people who see a crime) saw them leave the shop and **get away/escape** (= go away from a dangerous situation) in a blue car. The police believe both men are **armed** (= have guns) and extremely dangerous.

### D Crime prevention

What can governments do to **prevent crime** (= stop crime happening) or **reduce it** (= make it less)? These things happen in some countries.

The police **carry guns**. (= have guns)

The police are **allowed to** (= are permitted to/can) stop anyone in the street and ask them questions.

Criminals receive **tough** (= hard) **punishments**, e.g. go to prison for long periods.

There is **capital punishment** (= death, e.g. by injection or electric chair) for some crimes.

What can people do to **protect themselves** (= keep themselves safe) and their **property** (= home and land)? They can do these things.

**Avoid** (= keep away from) dark streets late at night (e.g. midnight).

**Avoid wearing** (= try not to wear) expensive rings or watches. [Note the *-ing* form after 'avoid'.]

Have a **burglar alarm**.

Put money and **valuables** (= things worth a lot of money) in a **safe**.

Leave lights on at home when they go out.

Lock doors and windows when they go out.



safe    burglar alarm    lock

# Exercises

85.1 Complete this table.

<i>crime</i>	<i>person</i>
bank robbery	<u>bank robber</u>
murder	.....
burglary	.....
theft	.....
shoplifting	.....

85.2 Respond to these statements or questions confirming the crime in each one.

- A: He broke into the house, didn't he?  
B: Yes, he's been charged with burglary.....
- A: He killed his wife?  
B: Yes, he's been charged with .....
- A: She stole clothes from that department store, didn't she?  
B: Yes, and she's been charged .....
- A: The man on the motorbike didn't mean to kill the boy.  
B: No, but he's been .....
- A: He took the money from her bag?  
B: Yes, but they caught him and he's .....

85.3 Find the best noun on the right to follow each verb on the left.

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1 lock       | a a gun     |
| 2 commit     | b a house   |
| 3 go         | c the door  |
| 4 carry      | d a crime   |
| 5 break into | e the law   |
| 6 break      | f to prison |

85.4 How safe and secure are you? Answer these questions with YES or NO.

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| 1 Do you often walk in areas which are not very safe?          | YES = 1 NO = 0 |
| 2 Do you often walk on your own in these areas late at night?  | YES = 2 NO = 0 |
| 3 Do you wear an expensive watch or expensive jewellery?       | YES = 1 NO = 0 |
| 4 Do you lock doors and windows before you leave the house?    | YES = 0 NO = 2 |
| 5 Do you have a burglar alarm?                                 | YES = 0 NO = 1 |
| 6 Do you leave lights on when you go out?                      | YES = 0 NO = 1 |
| 7 Is there someone who protects the building when you are out? | YES = 0 NO = 2 |
| 8 Do you have a safe in your home?                             | YES = 0 NO = 1 |

Add up your score. Less than 3 = very safe; 3-5 = quite safe; 6-8 = you could take more care; more than 8 = you are a dangerous person to know!

85.5 Fill the gaps in these questions with a suitable word. What's your opinion?

- Do you think the police should ..... guns?
- Do you think the police should be ..... to stop people without a reason?
- Do you agree with capital ..... for certain crimes such as murder?
- Do you think tougher punishments will help to ..... crime?

**A** Types of government

**Monarchy:** a state ruled by a king or queen (= the king or queen has power and control). Some countries, e.g. the UK, have a monarchy, but the monarch is not the ruler.

**Republic:** a state governed by representatives (= men or women chosen by the people) and a president, e.g. the USA or France. People who believe in this system are republicans.

**Democracy:** a system of government in which leaders are chosen by the people, e.g. France or the United Kingdom. People who believe in this system are democrats.

**Dictatorship:** a system of government in which one person rules the country (= one person has total power). This person is called a dictator.

**B** Political beliefs

<i>noun</i> politics	<i>person</i> politician	<i>adjective</i> political
conservatism	conservative	conservative
socialism	socialist	socialist
social democracy	social democrat	democratic
liberalism	liberal	liberal
communism	communist	communist

People who believe in social democracy are social democrats.

It is a democratic government, with liberal beliefs.

**C** Political positions

The government is very **reactionary** (= they don't want any changes). The **opposition** (= the main political party which is not in government) is more **radical** (= they want to make changes to the system). The Prime Minister is quite **right-wing** (= conservative/capitalist), and the leader of the opposition is more **left-wing** (= socialist).

**D** Elections

In a democracy, people **vote for** (= they choose in a formal way) the **political party** (e.g. social democrats) they want to form the government. They do this in an **election** (= when everyone votes). Quite often elections **take place/are held** (= happen) every five years.

42% voted for the socialists in the election. (= The socialist party got 42% of the votes.)

They **elected** a new president last year. (= The new president was elected last year.)

The election takes place next week, and the Liberals hope to form the next government.

**E** Government

Political systems are different **all over the world** (= in every part of the world). In the UK, when a political party wins a **majority** (= 51% or more) of seats (= official places in parliament) in an election, they are in **power** (= the government of the country), and their leader (= person in control of the party) becomes **Prime Minister**.

The government must have **policies** (= programmes of action) to **run** (= manage and control) the country. This means, for example, an **economic policy** (for the economy), and a **foreign policy** (for actions by the country in other parts of the world).

# Exercises

## 86.1 What kind of political system is being described?

- 1 The country is ruled by a king or queen.
- 2 The country is governed by men and women who are chosen by the people.
- 3 The country is ruled by one person.

## 86.2 Complete the tables. Use a dictionary to help you if necessary.

general noun	person	verb	general noun
socialism	..... <i>socialist</i> .....	believe	..... <i>belief</i> .....
democracy	.....	elect	.....
politics	.....	govern	.....
conservatism	.....	vote	.....

## 86.3 Rewrite the sentences using the words on the right. The meaning must stay the same. Make any necessary changes.

- Example* It's in every part of the world. ALL  
 It's *all over the world*.
- 1 Elections take place every five years. HELD  
 Elections .....
  - 2 The government is socialist. WING  
 The government is .....
  - 3 I'm a democrat. BELIEVE  
 I .....
  - 4 Who controls the country at the moment? POWER  
 Who .....

## 86.4 Fill the gaps in this text about the political system in the United Kingdom.

In the UK (1) ..... take place every five years. The (2) ..... Minister may decide to have one after four years, but five years is the maximum. The country is divided into 652 areas and people in each area can only (3) ..... for one person from one political (4) ..... . The person with the most (5) ..... is the winner, and that person becomes one of the 652 members of parliament. The political party with a (6) ..... of the seats in parliament then forms the government, and the (7) ..... of that party becomes Prime Minister. His or her job is then to decide on a number of different (8) ..... to run the country.

## 86.5 Answer these questions about your own country. If possible, ask someone else.

- 1 Which are the main political parties in your country?
- 2 Which party is in power at the moment?
- 3 When were they elected?
- 4 Did you vote in this election?
- 5 Who is the leader of this party?
- 6 Is this person the President or Prime Minister of your country?
- 7 Do you think you are left-wing, right-wing, or in the centre?
- 8 Do you think your political beliefs have changed/will change during your life?

# Bureaucracy

## A

### What is it?

**Bureaucracy** is the rules used by **officials** (or **bureaucrats**) to control an organisation or country. It is often used in a negative way to mean unnecessary rules, e.g. **filling in** (= completing) forms, and waiting for **documents**. (= pieces of paper with official information)

## B

### Important documents (e.g. passport)

**identity card** (= card with your name, date of birth and photo to show who you are. The United Kingdom is one of the few countries where people do not have identity cards.)

**driving licence** (= the official document which permits you to drive on public roads)

**visa** (= document which gives you permission to enter, pass through or leave a country)

Officials often **check** (= look at and examine) your documents, e.g. customs officials check your passport or identity card, and the police may check your driving licence.

We also use the word **certificates** for official pieces of paper stating certain facts: a **birth certificate** gives the important facts about your birth, **exam certificates** state you have passed certain exams, and a **marriage certificate** states you have married.

Some documents are for a fixed period of time, e.g. a visa may be for six months. At the end of that period, the visa **runs out** (*informal*)/**expires** (*formal*) (= it finishes/comes to an end).

If you want to stay in the country, you must **renew** it (= get a new one for a further period of time). You can normally renew a visa, a passport, a membership card for a club, etc.

## C

### Forms

There are situations where you need to **fill in** (= complete) forms.

**landing card**: a form you may have to fill in when you enter another country

**enrolment form** (sometimes called a **registration form**): a form you often have to fill in when you join a school or course

**application form**: a form where you write details about yourself, often when applying for a job

With many forms, you will need to **sign** them (= write your **signature**) and **print** your full name underneath. (= under it)

Signature Julia Gonzales

Name (in capitals) JULIA GONZALES

## D

### Language of forms

Forms often contain formal expressions. In spoken English, this may be different.

#### NOTE

In written and spoken English, we use **surname** (= your last name or family name).

<i>written</i>	<i>spoken</i>
date of birth	= When were you born?
place of birth	= Where were you born?
country of origin	= Where do you come from?
marital status	= Are you single or married?
date of arrival	= When did you arrive?
date of departure	= When are you leaving? (or When did you leave?)

# Exercises

**87.1** Check the pronunciation of these phrases in the Index (you will find them at the underlined words). Repeat them until you can say them fluently.

identity card      important document      exam certificate      registration form

**87.2** Write down a word that can be used before these nouns, but not including words in 87.1.

..... card    ..... licence  
..... certificate    ..... form

**87.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 Will you need to get ..... a visa if you go to the United States?
- 2 I was surprised that nobody ..... my passport when we arrived in France.
- 3 Could you ..... in this form for me, please?
- 4 They sent the form back to me because I forgot to ..... it at the bottom.
- 5 A: Do I have to put my ..... at the bottom of this form?  
B: Yes, please – and then print your full name underneath.
- 6 A: I only had a visa for six months and it ..... next week.  
B: Are you going to ..... it?  
A: Yes, if I can. I don't think it'll be a problem.
- 7 Write your first name here and your ..... underneath.
- 8 I want to do a course, so I wrote to the school and asked them to send a(n) ..... form.

**87.4** How many of these documents do you have?

passport    identity card  
driving licence    birth certificate  
exam certificates    marriage certificate

**87.5** Rewrite these sentences in more informal English.

- 1 What's your date of birth? When were you born? .....
- 2 What's your country of origin? ..... ?
- 3 What's your marital status? ..... ?
- 4 What was your date of arrival? ..... ?
- 5 When's your date of departure? ..... ?

**87.6** I asked some British people about problems they had had with bureaucracy. What about you? Have you had any problems? If so, write them down and compare them with the replies in the Answer key on page 236.

- 1 .....
- 2 .....
- 3 .....



# Global problems

## A The environment (= air, water and land around us)

Many people believe we are **destroying** the environment. (If you 'destroy' something, you damage it so badly it does not exist any more.) For example:

Cars and factories **pollute** the air. (= make the air dirty)

We continue to **cut down** rainforests and increase the dangers of **global warming**. (= an increase in temperature because of increased carbon dioxide around the earth)

How can the planet (earth) **survive**? (= continue to exist)

- We must **save/conserv**e (= use less and use well) **natural resources** (e.g. water, oil and gas). We mustn't waste them. (= use them badly)
- We must **protect** animals and plants. (= keep them safe from human damage)
- We mustn't **throw away** bottles and cans. We must **recycle** them. (= use them again)

Many of the verbs above form common nouns:

<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>
destroy	destruction	pollute	pollution
survive	survival	protect	protection
waste	waste	recycle	recycling

## B Natural disasters

A disaster is when something terrible happens and people often die. A **natural disaster** is caused by nature. For example:

**famine** (= situation where people die because there isn't enough food)

**drought** (= no rain for a long period of time; this often causes famine)

**floods** (= too much rain in a short period of time, causing damage to houses and land)

**earthquakes** (= violent movement of the earth; buildings are often destroyed)

## C War and peace

A war is a long period of fighting between two or more countries. Some countries have been at war (= fighting a war) for years. There are also **civil wars** (= fighting between two or more groups in the same country). These are some of the most violent – **soldiers** (= the people in the army) are killed, but many **civilians** (= people not in the army or navy, etc.) also die. Wars often end with a **peace settlement**. (= both sides agree to stop fighting)

## D Terrorism

### NOTE

**Assassinate** = to kill a famous person, often for a political reason.

This is violent action for political reasons. People who do this are **terrorists**. A common terrorist crime is **planting bombs** (= putting bombs in public places) often to **kill/assassinate** important people. Terrorists also **hijack** planes and buses (= take control of them by force). The people on board then become prisoners (called **hostages**). The terrorists may agree to **release** the hostages (= permit the hostages to go free) if governments agree to their **demands** (= what they ask for), perhaps giving them money or releasing other terrorists from prison.



# Exercises

**88.1** Many words in this unit are difficult to pronounce. Check the pronunciation in the Index at the back of the book and practise saying the words.

pollution	survive	resources	disaster	civilian	terrorists
famine	drought	flood	earthquake	soldiers	hostage

**88.2** Complete the tables.

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
waste	.....	.....	protect
pollution	.....	.....	destroy
damage	.....	.....	survive

**88.3** If we want to look after the environment, there are certain things we shouldn't do and certain things we should do. Complete these sentences with suitable verbs.

We shouldn't:

- 1 ..... throw away ..... paper, bottles and cans; we should ..... them.
- 2 ..... water and energy; we should ..... them.
- 3 ..... rainforests; we should ..... them from human damage.

**88.4** Match words from the left and right to form compound words or phrases.

- |           |              |
|-----------|--------------|
| 1 peace   | a resources  |
| 2 civil   | b settlement |
| 3 natural | c warming    |
| 4 global  | d war        |

**88.5** Complete these definitions with a word or phrase.

- 1 Global warming is an increase in temperature caused by an increase in .....
- 2 A disaster is when something .....
- 3 A famine is a long period of time when people may die because there isn't enough .....
- 4 A flood is the result of too much .....
- 5 A drought occurs when there is a long period without .....
- 6 A war is a long period of .....
- 7 A civil war is a war between two or more groups from .....
- 8 To assassinate means to .....
- 9 Soldiers are people who fight in an .....
- 10 Civilians are people who are not .....

**88.6** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 Terrorists have hijacked a .....
- 2 Two men attempted to assassinate the .....
- 3 One of the terrorists planted a .....
- 4 The terrorists have agreed to release all the .....
- 5 During the fighting a number of civilians were .....
- 6 The two sides have agreed to a peace .....

### A Departures

When you arrive at the airport, you can look at the departures board which shows the flight numbers (e.g. BA735), departure times (e.g. 0840) and destinations (e.g. Venice). At the check-in desk they weigh your luggage. Usually you can take about 20 kilos. If it is more, you may have to pay excess baggage (= you pay extra). They also check your ticket and give you a boarding card for the plane with your seat number on it. Then you go through passport control where an official checks your passport, and into the departure lounge. Here, you can also buy things in the duty free, e.g. perfume or alcohol. About half an hour before take-off, you go to a gate number, e.g. gate 14, where you wait before you get on the plane. When you board (= get on) the plane, you find your seat. If you have hand luggage, you can put it under your seat or in the overhead locker above your seat. If there are no delays (= when you have to wait until a later time for some reason), the plane moves towards the runway. (= the area where planes take off and land)



Delay can be used as a noun and verb. It is a common word at airports.

There's a two-hour delay on our flight.

Why is the flight delayed?

What's the reason for the delay?

We were delayed at Athens airport.

### B The flight

#### NOTE

The cabin crew are both men (stewards) and women (stewardesses). They are also called flight attendants.

The captain (= the pilot) or cabin crew (= people who look after passengers) may say these things:

- Please fasten your seat belt and put your seat in the upright position.
- May we remind passengers (= to passengers: please remember) that there is no smoking now until you are inside the terminal building. (= the part of the airport where passengers arrive and depart)
- The cabin crew are now coming round with landing cards. (= cards you have to fill in when you enter certain countries)



### C Arrival

#### NOTE

You hire something for a short period, and rent something for a long period, e.g. a flat. For a car you can use both.

When the plane lands (= arrives on the ground), you have to wait for it to stop. When the doors are open, you get off the plane and walk through the terminal building and go to the baggage reclaim (= place where you collect your luggage). You go through customs (GREEN = nothing to declare; RED = goods to declare). At most airports, you can hire a car. (= rent a car)



luggage trolley

# Exercises

**89.1** Complete the words or phrases below using words from the box.

control	number	desk	card	baggage
lounge	luggage	reclaim	locker	

- |                  |                   |                  |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1 boarding ..... | 4 flight .....    | 7 baggage .....  |
| 2 excess .....   | 5 overhead .....  | 8 passport ..... |
| 3 check-in ..... | 6 departure ..... | 9 hand .....     |

**89.2** What do you call these?

- 1 The place where you go when you arrive at the airport with your luggage.
- 2 The card they give you with the seat number on it.
- 3 What you have to pay if your luggage is very heavy.
- 4 The bags you carry onto the plane with you.
- 5 The place above your head where you can put these bags.
- 6 The part of the airport where the plane accelerates and takes off.
- 7 The people who look after you on the plane.
- 8 Another verb used to say 'rent' a car.

**89.3** Complete these sentences with a suitable word.

- 1 There was a mechanical problem, and we ended up with a two-hour .....
- 2 Several passengers had to fill in landing .....
- 3 I went through passport control and sat in the departure .....
- 4 If you have nothing to declare, you follow the green sign when you go through .....
- 5 A woman at the check-in desk weighed my .....
- 6 I looked for our flight number on the departures .....

**89.4** Fill the gaps in this letter.

Dear Tom,

I've just arrived in Rome but I'm still recovering from a really terrible flight. We (1) ..... two hours late because of bad weather, and then over the channel we had more bad weather. The (2) ..... told us to (3) ..... our seat belts, which worried me a bit, and for half an hour we (4) ..... through a terrible storm. I was almost sick, but the cabin (5) ..... were really nice. It was still raining and very windy when we (6) ..... in Rome and I was really glad to (7) ..... the plane and get into the airport building. I really hope the return (8) ..... is a lot better ...

**89.5** Answer these questions. If you don't fly very much, try to ask someone who does.

- 1 What is the most interesting part of the flight, and what is the most boring part?
- 2 Where do you often have delays, and why?
- 3 What do you usually do during the flight?
- 4 Do you always eat the food they give you? Do you ever drink alcohol on the flight?

### A Types of hotel accommodation

a single room	= room for one person with a single bed
a double room	= room for two people with one large bed
a twin room	= room for two people with two single beds
full board	= includes breakfast, lunch and dinner
half board	= includes breakfast and dinner
B&B	= just bed (= the room) and breakfast

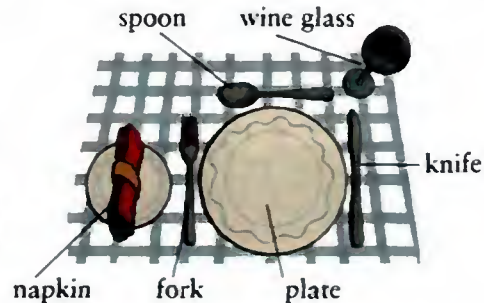


### B Visiting a hotel or restaurant

At busy times, e.g. the weekend, you may need to **book** (= reserve) a room in a hotel or a table in a restaurant in advance (= before you go). When you arrive at a hotel you **check in at reception** (= tell the receptionist you have arrived); at a restaurant you ask for a table (e.g. *Could we have a table for two?* or *I booked a table for two. The name is Carter.*) In restaurants you can **tip the waiter/waitress** (= give money for good service) if service is not included; in a hotel you may also give the **porter** (= person who carries luggage) a tip. At the end of a meal in a restaurant or the end of your stay in a hotel, you **pay the bill**.

### C In a restaurant

You can see the food available on the menu, and choose wine (and other drinks) from the wine list. There are usually three parts to a meal: a **starter** (e.g. soup), a **main course** (e.g. meat or fish) and a **dessert** (e.g. fruit or ice cream). A drink before the meal is often called an **aperitif**.



### D Useful words and expressions

#### *In a hotel*

**GUEST:** Are you **fully booked** (= completely full) next week?

Do you have any **rooms available** (= free rooms) this weekend?

Is **breakfast/dinner included**? (= Does the price include breakfast/dinner?)

Where's the **lift**? (= the machine which takes you up or down a floor)

Excuse me. How do I get to (the underground station) from here?

There's something wrong with (= there's a problem with) the heating in my room.

What time do we have to **check out**? (= leave the room on our last day)

#### *In a restaurant*

**WAITER:** Are you **ready to order**? (= Have you decided what you want?)

Would you like to **try the wine**? (= taste the wine to see if it is OK)

Is everything all right with your meal?

**CUSTOMER:** Are you **fully booked**?

What's *vichysoisse* exactly?

I'll have the (soup) to start. (= as a starter)

Excuse me. Where's the toilet?

# Exercises

## 90.1 Put the sentences in each column in a logical order.

### Hotel

- a I paid my bill.
- b I checked in at reception.
- c I left the hotel.
- d I went up to my room.
- e I spent the night in the hotel.
- f I had an early morning call.
- g I booked the hotel. 1
- h I went out to a local restaurant for dinner.
- i I arrived at the hotel.
- j I got up and had breakfast.
- k I tipped the porter who took my bag to the room.

### Restaurant

- a I had the starter.
- b I paid the bill.
- c I left the restaurant.
- d I looked at the menu.
- e I gave the waiter a tip.
- f I booked a table. 1
- g I had a dessert.
- h I ordered my meal.
- i I arrived at the restaurant.
- j I had my main course.
- k I looked at the wine list.

## 90.2 Finish these questions or statements with a suitable word.

### HOTEL GUEST

- 1 I'm leaving in a few minutes. Could I pay my ..... ?
- 2 Is that just bed and breakfast or full ..... ?
- 3 Could I book a twin ..... ?
- 4 I'm interested in next weekend. Do you still have rooms ..... ?
- 5 [Your room is on the tenth floor.] Excuse me. Where's the ..... ?

### WAITER

- 6 Right, madam. Are you ready to ..... ?
- 7 Would you like to try the ..... ?
- 8 Is everything all right with your ..... ?

### RESTAURANT CUSTOMER

- 9 I'll ..... the soup to start.
- 10 Excuse me. Is service ..... ?

## 90.3 What would you ask the hotel receptionist in these situations?

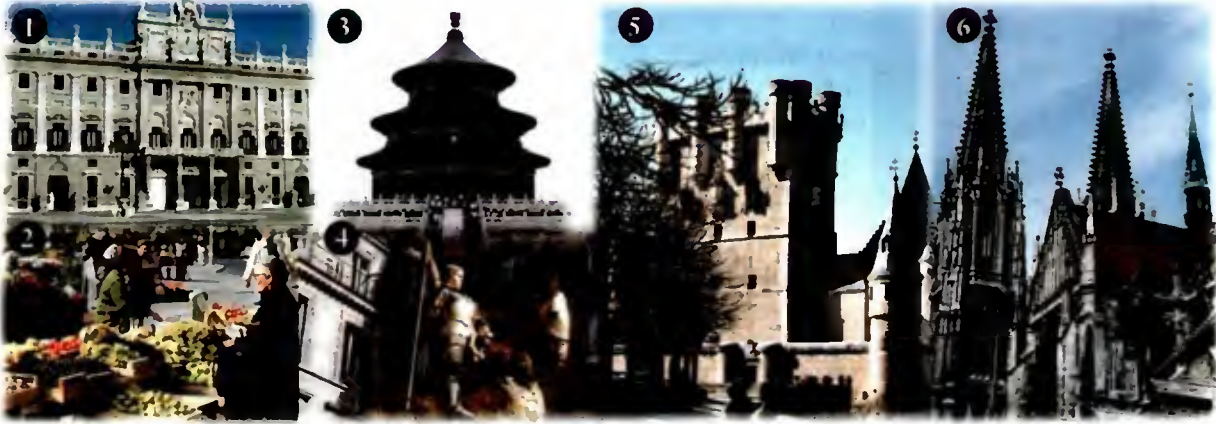
- 1 You think a hotel is busy next weekend, but you're not sure. What could you ask?  
*Are you fully booked next weekend?*
- 2 You want to stay in a hotel for two nights next weekend with your husband/wife. You phone the hotel. What do you say?
- 3 You are planning to leave in about 15 minutes. What could you ask?
- 4 You want to go to the nearest bank but you don't know where it is. What do you ask?

## 90.4 You are staying in quite a good hotel (e.g. two-star or three-star) in your country. Would you expect to have the following? Compare your answers with someone else if possible.

- 1 Colour television
- 2 Satellite TV
- 3 Hair dryer
- 4 Mini-bar (= fridge with drinks)
- 5 Tea- and coffee-making facilities
- 6 Air-conditioning

# A sightseeing holiday in the city

## A Famous places



1 palace

2 market

3 temple

4 statue

5 castle

6 cathedral

Many people go on a sightseeing tour of a town (usually in a bus); they can also go on a tour of a castle, cathedral, etc. When you are sightseeing, it helps to buy a **guidebook** (= a book of information for tourists) and a **map** of the town you are visiting.

## B Tourist activities

go sightseeing  
do a bit of/a lot of sightseeing  
have a look round (= visit somewhere casually)  
take pictures (= photos)  
spend money  
get lost (= lose one's way)  
have a great/nice/terrible time  
go out (= leave home/your hotel to go to a social event, e.g. restaurant or disco)

We went **sightseeing** almost every day.  
I didn't do a lot of **sightseeing** in Warsaw.  
We had a quick **look round** the shops.  
I wanted to **have a look round** the art galleries.  
I took hundreds of **pictures** on holiday.  
I **spent** lots of money – too much.  
We **got lost** almost every day in London.  
They had a lovely **time** in Venice.  
On holiday we went **out** every night.

## C Describing 'places'

The word **place** can describe a building, an area, a town, or country:  
Bruges is a lovely **place** (= town) and we found a really nice **place** (= hotel) to stay.  
The town is full of interesting **places**. (= areas/buildings)

Venice is beautiful but it's always **packed** (= very crowded) with tourists.  
New York is very **cosmopolitan**. (= full of people from different countries and cultures)  
St Petersburg has lots of **historic monuments**. (= important places built a long time ago)  
Many beautiful cities are now very **touristy**. (= a negative word: 'too much tourism')  
São Paulo is a really lively **place** (= full of life and activity) and the **nightlife** is fantastic.  
To ask if it is 'a good idea' to visit a place, use **be worth + -ing** or noun.

A: If I go to Scotland, is it **worth spending** a few days in Edinburgh?

B: Yes, definitely – and Glasgow is **worth a visit** as well.

# Exercises

## 91.1 Complete this postcard. You may need a word or phrase in each space.

Hi everyone,  
I've been in Paris for over a week now and I'm having a great (1) ..... . In the first few days I did quite a lot of (2) ..... - the Eiffel Tower, Notre Dame, and all the usual tourist attractions. Most places are absolutely (3) ..... with tourists, so yesterday I decided to have a (4)..... round the shops.

Today I've been to a couple of interesting art (5) ..... . I got (6) ..... on my way back to the hotel, but it didn't matter because I discovered a really fascinating

(7) ..... with lots of little stalls, selling just about everything from apples to antiques.

I ate in the hotel the first night but usually I (8) ..... for dinner - the restaurants are great and I can get a set meal for less than 25 euros. I'm afraid I've (9) ..... a lot of money, but it's a great place. You'll be able to see for yourself when I get back - I've taken lots of (10) .....

I hope you're all well. I'll write again next week.

Love, Emma

## 91.2 Which of these places do you usually visit or go to when you are on holiday?

museums	art galleries	churches and cathedrals	tourist shops
concerts	discos/nightclubs	castles/palaces/temples	the cinema
markets	restaurants	bars	the theatre

## 91.3 Agree with the information in the questions without repeating the same words and phrases. Use words and phrases from the opposite page.

*Example* A: You've got quite a few pictures, haven't you?

B: Yes, I took lots of photos.

1 A: It's a fabulous city, isn't it?

B: Yes, it's a .....

2 A: There's a big mix of people in London, isn't there?

B: Yes, it's very .....

3 A: It was very crowded, wasn't it?

B: Yes, it was .....

4 A: There's a lot to do in the evenings, isn't there?

B: Yes, the ..... is very good.

5 A: Did you enjoy yourselves?

B: Yes, we had a .....

6 A: Kyoto is a good place to go to, isn't it?

B: Yes, Kyoto is definitely .....

## 91.4 Think of a place in your country (a different place for each number) which is:

1 cosmopolitan

2 lively

3 very touristy

4 famous for its historic monuments

5 worth visiting

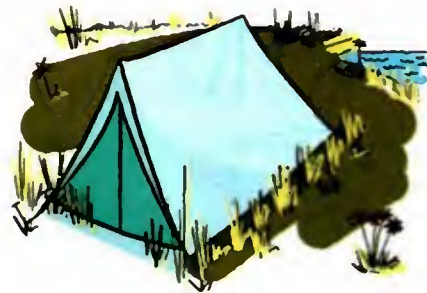
6 not worth visiting



# Holidays by the sea

## A Places to stay

When people go on holiday they stay in various places (= a number of different places): some go to hotels; some rent an apartment (a holiday flat); some prefer to go camping and sleep in a tent.



## B On the beach

Many people spend their holiday in seaside resorts (= towns by the sea for tourists, e.g. Malaga, St Tropez, Okinawa) where they can go to the beach every day.



You sometimes get a gentle breeze (= a light pleasant wind) from the sea, which helps to cool you down on hot days, but it can also burn you [see section D].

## C Seaside activities

I like to go for a walk along the cliffs.  
 On sandy beaches, I often play volleyball.  
 I sometimes go windsurfing/snorkelling/diving.  
 I don't swim much but I like to have a paddle.  
 (= just put my feet in the sea)  
 My sister likes to have a swim in the sea,  
 but not if it is very rough (*opp* calm).



diving snorkelling windsurfing

## D In the sun

Many people go to the beach to sunbathe (= lie in the sun) and get a suntan (= when the body goes an attractive brown colour from the sun; we can also say, **be brown**). This can be dangerous, and you should always put on suntan lotion (= cream or oil to stop your skin burning). This will also help you to get a tan and protect your skin (= keep your skin safe). If you don't protect your skin, you may get sunburn (= the skin becomes red and very painful). For total protection, use sunblock.

# Exercises

92.1 Write down four more words beginning with 'sun'.

sunshine..... sun..... sun..... sun..... sun.....

92.2 Match a word from the left with a word from the right to form six phrases.

- |           |   |            |
|-----------|---|------------|
| 1 beach   | — | a breeze   |
| 2 suntan  | — | b umbrella |
| 3 seaside |   | c sea      |
| 4 gentle  |   | d lotion   |
| 5 sandy   |   | e resort   |
| 6 rough   |   | f beach    |

92.3 Identify these seaside activities.



1 .....



2 .....



3 .....



4 .....

92.4 Can you find 11 words (including one phrasal verb) from the opposite page in this word square? All the answers are vertical or horizontal.

S	C	A	L	M	T	C
T	O	W	E	L	A	A
R	O	C	K	S	N	M
C	L	I	F	F	B	P
A	D	R	L	P	R	I
H	O	R	I	Z	O	N
S	W	I	M	O	W	G
H	N	S	K	I	N	T

92.5 Fill the gaps with a suitable verb (one word only). If possible, discuss your answers with someone else.

- How often do you ..... on holiday?
- Where did you ..... your last holiday?
- Do you or your family often ..... an apartment for your holidays?
- Do you ever ..... camping?
- Do you enjoy ..... on a beach?
- Do you ..... a suntan easily?

**A** Prepositions: at, on, in

at a specific time      at 8 o'clock, at 3.30, at midnight  
 on a day                on Monday, on July 14, on the second day  
 in a period             in the morning, in April, in the summer, in 1998

Important exceptions are: at **Christmas**, at **Easter**, at the **weekend**, at **night**.

**B** Prepositions often confused

I'll stay **until** she phones; I'll be here **until** 4.30. (= I'll leave after she phones/after 4.30)  
 I'll be in the office **by** 8.15 (= not later than 8.15); I'll be back home **by** 6.30. (= not later than 6.30)

I've worked in this office **for** six months. [For + a period of time, e.g. a week, a month]  
 I've worked here **since** May. [Since + a point in time in the past, e.g. last Friday, 3 March]

I worked on a farm **during** the summer/the holidays. [This tells you 'when'.]

I worked on a farm **for** two years. [This tells you 'how long'.] (~~NOT during two years~~)

I'm going back to Brazil **in** ten days' time. (= ten days from now) (~~NOT after ten days~~)

**C** Approximate periods of time: past, present and future*Past*

I've known the two girls **for** ages. (= for a long time)

I haven't been to the dentist **recently/lately**. (e.g. in the last few months)

I saw Tom **recently**. (e.g. a few weeks ago/not long ago)

I used to go skiing, but that was a **long time ago**. (e.g. 5–10 years ago)

My sister went to the zoo **the other day**. (= a few days ago, perhaps a week)

*Present*

I don't see my sister much **these days**. (= a period including the past and now)

*Future*

This dictionary will be OK **for the time being**. (= for now/the near future – but not long)

I'm sure I'll go to America **one day**. (= in the future but I don't know when)

**D** Counting time

There are 60 seconds in a minute, 60 minutes in an hour, 24 hours in a day, 7 days in a week, 2 weeks in a fortnight, 52 weeks in a year, 10 years in a decade, 100 years in a century.

**E** 'Take' and 'last'

We use **take** to say how long we need to do something.

It **takes** me (= I need) half an hour to get to school.

We can walk, but it'll **take** (= we'll need) a long time.

We use **last** to talk about the duration of something, from the beginning to the end.

The cookery course **lasted for** ten weeks. (= it continued for ten weeks)

How long does the film **last**? (= How long is it from the beginning to the end?)

The battery in my camera **didn't last long**. (= didn't continue to function for a long time)

# Exercises

## 93.1 Complete the text with *at*, *on* or *in*.

There's one bus from London which gets here (1) ..... ten o'clock (2) ..... the morning and then another which gets in (3) ..... four o'clock (4) ..... the afternoon. That's (5) ..... weekdays, but (6) ..... the weekend the timetable is different. (7) ..... Saturday there are still two buses but the second one arrives (8) ..... five thirty; (9) ..... Sunday there is just the one bus (10) ..... two o'clock. And (11) ..... the winter, the service doesn't run at all (12) ..... Sundays.

## 93.2 Underline the correct answer in (brackets).

- 1 The teacher told us to finish our homework (by/until) Monday.
- 2 We can't leave (by/until) the others get back.
- 3 I've been in the army (for/since) I was 18.
- 4 They've worked here (for/since/during) six months.
- 5 I visit my uncle every week (for/since/during) the winter.
- 6 I was at university (for/since/during) three years.
- 7 She's going back to France (in/after) three months' time.
- 8 I'll see you (in/after) ten days' time.

## 93.3 Replace the underlined words with more 'approximate' time expressions.

- 1 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago. *A long time ago*
- 2 I went to the library three days ago.
- 3 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks.
- 4 I haven't been to a concert for three or four years.
- 5 This computer will be OK for me now and in the next year.

## 93.4 General Knowledge Quiz. Can you complete these sentences with the correct number?

- 1 The Olympic Games usually lasts about ..... weeks.
- 2 Pablo Picasso was born in the .....th century, and died in the .....th century.
- 3 President Kennedy died in ..... . That's over ..... years ago.
- 4 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from London to New York.
- 5 The best athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.

## 93.5 Complete these sentences about yourself and your country.

- 1 On weekdays I usually get up at ..... and leave home at .....
- 2 I always clean my teeth in .....
- 3 I don't go to school/college/work on .....
- 4 I usually have a holiday in .....
- 5 I have been in my present school/college/job for .....
- 6 I have been studying English since .....
- 7 I haven't spoken English since .....
- 8 It takes me ..... to get to school/college/work.
- 9 You can't get a driving licence until .....
- 10 It rains quite a lot during .....

**A** Cardinal numbers

379 = three hundred <u>and</u> seventy-nine	2,860 = two thousand eight hundred <u>and</u> sixty
5,084 = five thousand <u>and</u> eighty-four	470,000 = four hundred <u>and</u> seventy thousand
2,000,000 = two million	3,000,000,000 = three billion

There is no plural 's' after hundred, thousand, million and billion when they are part of a number. When we are talking more generally, they can be plural, e.g. **thousands** of people; **millions** of insects.

**B** Ordinal numbers and dates

One problem with dates is that we write them and say them in a different way.

We write 4 **January** (or 4th January), but say the **fourth** of January *or* January the **fourth**.

We write 21 **May** (or 21st May), but say the **twenty-first** of May *or* May the **twenty-first**.

1997 = **nineteen ninety-seven**      2003 = **two thousand and three**

**C** Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$ = one and a quarter	1.25 = one point two five
$1\frac{1}{2}$ = one and a half	1.5 = one point five
$1\frac{3}{4}$ = one and three quarters	1.75 = one point seven five

**D** Percentages

26% is spoken as **twenty-six per cent**.

More than 50% of something is the **majority** of it; less than 50% is the **minority**.

**E** Arithmetic

There are four basic processes. Notice how they are said when we are **working out** (= calculating) the answer.

<b>+</b> = addition	e.g. $6 + 4 = 10$ (six <b>plus/and</b> four equals/is ten)
<b>-</b> = subtraction	e.g. $6 - 4 = 2$ (six <b>minus</b> four equals/is two)
<b>×</b> = multiplication	e.g. $6 \times 4 = 24$ (six <b>times/multiplied by</b> four equals/is twenty-four)
<b>÷</b> = division	e.g. $8 \div 2 = 4$ (eight <b>divided by</b> two equals/is four)

Some people are not very good at **mental arithmetic** (= arithmetic in your mind without paper) and often get **stuck** (= have a problem) if they have to **work something out**. The easiest way is to use a **calculator**. (= small electronic machine for working out numbers)

**F** Saying '0'

This can be spoken in different ways in different contexts.

telephone number: 603 724 = six oh three, seven two four

mathematics: 0.7 = **nought** point seven; 6.02 = six point **oh** two *or* six point **nought** two

temperature: -10 degrees = ten degrees below zero *or* **minus** ten degrees

# Exercises

**94.1** How do you say these numbers in English? Write your answers after each one.

- 1 462 .....
- 2  $2\frac{1}{2}$  .....
- 3 2,345 .....
- 4 0.25 .....
- 5 1,250,000 .....
- 6 10.04 .....
- 7 47% .....
- 8 10 April .....
- 9 3 July .....
- 10 602 8477 (phone number) .....
- 11  $-5^{\circ}$  centigrade .....
- 12 In 1976 .....

Now repeat them until you can say them fluently.

**94.2** Correct the mistakes in these sentences.

- 1 After the game I heard that the crowd was over twenty thousands.
- 2 We arrived on the four August.
- 3 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
- 4 My birthday is the thirty-one August.
- 5 My phone number is seven twenty three, six nought nine.

**94.3** Fill the gaps with a suitable word.

- 1 The ..... were in favour of the new plan; about 80%, I think.
- 2 A small ..... were not happy with the idea, but it was only 5%.
- 3 I'm not very good at mental arithmetic. I always have to use a .....
- 4 When I tried to add all the numbers together, I couldn't ..... it out.
- 5 I can do simple mental arithmetic, but I get ..... if the numbers are very big.

**94.4** Can you do these mental arithmetic problems? If you find it difficult, use paper or a calculator.

- 1 23 and 36 is .....
- 2 24 times 8 is .....
- 3 80 minus 20 is .....
- 4 65 divided by 13 is .....
- 5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 8, then subtract 40 and divide by 11. What have you got?
- 6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What's your answer?

**94.5** Answer these questions. Write your answers in words.

- 1 When were you born?
- 2 How much do you weigh?
- 3 What is the number of the flat or house where you live?
- 4 What is the approximate population of your town?
- 5 What is the approximate population of your country?
- 6 What is the normal temperature of a healthy person?
- 7 How many kilometres are there in a mile?

# Distance, size and dimension

## A Distance

These are common ways of asking about distance, with typical replies.

A: How far is it? B: The nearest one (= the shortest distance from here) is about five miles.

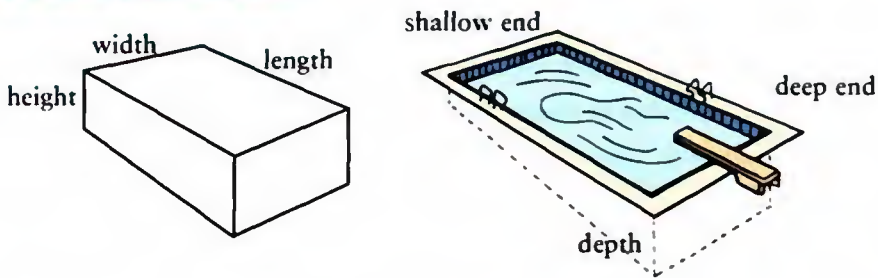
A: Is it far? B: No. It's just round the corner. (= very near)

A: Is it a long way? B: No, not far (= quite near) – about ten minutes' walk.

A: Is it very far? B: Yes, quite a long way. or Yes, too far to walk.

We can use **far** in a question or a negative, but not in a positive statement on its own (it's a long way NOT it's far). But we can say: 'It's too far to walk.'

## B Size and dimension



We can ask and answer about dimensions like this:

questions	answers	
What's the length of the room? or	How long is the room?	It's 5 metres (long).
What's the width of the path?	How wide is the path?	It's 60 cm (wide).
What's the height of the wall?	How high is the wall?	It's two metres (high).
What's the depth of the pool?	How deep is the pool?	It's 3 metres (deep).

## C Size in people and things

We use different words to describe the size of people and things. For example:

### NOTE

We usually use **tall** to describe people, trees and buildings; and **high** to describe walls, mountains, etc.

a tall girl (*opp* a short girl)

a long book (= many pages) (*opp* a short book)

a deep lake (= many metres) (*opp* a shallow lake)

fat people (*opp* thin people)



a thick book (*opp* a thin book)



a wide road (*opp* a narrow road)

We can use **big** or **large** to describe size in English, but not **great**, which usually means 'fantastic' in spoken English. But we can use **great big** to say that something is very big, e.g. There was a great big dog in the garden, so I stayed outside.

# Exercises

**95.1** Think about the building you are in now, and answer these questions using expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 How far is it to the nearest shop?
- 2 How far is it to a bank?
- 3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop?
- 4 Is it very far to a post office?
- 5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool?
- 6 Is it a long way to the next big town?
- 7 How far is the nearest railway station?
- 8 Is it far to the centre of town?

If possible, ask someone else the same questions and compare your answers.

**95.2** Write down at least six different questions you could ask about the distance, size or dimensions of: the lake, the mountain, the football pitch and the person.



Example How big is the lake?



**95.3** Disagree with the speaker in the dialogues below. Look at the example first.

Example A: Is it a long film?  
B: No, it's quite short.

- 1 A: Is he very fat?  
B: No, he's quite .....
- 2 A: The water's deep, isn't it?  
B: No, it's .....
- 3 A: Is the road very wide at that point?  
B: No, .....
- 4 A: He's quite tall, isn't he?  
B: No, .....
- 5 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?  
B: No, it's .....
- 6 A: It's a fairly boring place, isn't it?  
B: No, .....



# Shapes, colours and patterns

## A Shapes



a square (n)  
square (adj)



a rectangle (n)  
rectangular (adj)



a circle (n)  
round (adj)



a semi-circle



a triangle  
triangular (adj)



a point (n)  
pointed (adj)



a star



a diamond

The room was almost square.  
It was like a triangle.

We haven't got a round table.  
An unusual star-shaped candle.

We sat in a semi-circle.  
The end was pointed.

## B Colours

You will already know most of the common colours.  
Here are some that are less common.



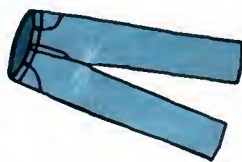
## C Shades of colour (= degrees and variation of colour)

### NOTE

With some colours, we use **pale**, not **light**, e.g. pale yellow, pale pink.



She bought a dark green skirt.



He's wearing light blue jeans.



The shirt is pale yellow.

## D Patterns (also called 'designs')

These are common on clothes and furniture.

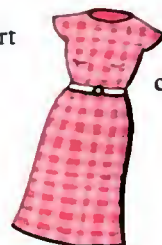
striped shirt



tartan skirt



check dress



## E Use of the suffix *-ish*

When we want to say that a shape is 'almost round' or a colour is 'a sort of green', we can also express this idea with the suffix *-ish*.

She had a roundish face.

He wore a greenish tie.

The wall was a yellowish colour.

# Exercises

96.1 Complete the table.

<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>
square	.....
rectangle	.....
circle	.....
point	.....

96.2 Complete these sentences with the correct colour.

- 1 You mix black and white to get .....
- 2 You mix red and white to get .....
- 3 You mix brown and yellow to get .....
- 4 You mix red and blue to get .....
- 5 You mix blue and green to get .....

96.3 Describe these pictures using the correct adjective(s) and noun.



1 *a rectangular table* .....



4 .....



7 .....



2 .....



5 .....



8 .....



3 .....



6 .....



9 .....

96.4 What object is being described in each of these sentences?

- 1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you write with.
- 2 It's rectangular and often green. There are white lines on it, and people play on it.
- 3 It's a reddish-orange vegetable, quite long and usually pointed at one end.
- 4 For some of the month it's completely round; at other times, it's closer to a semi-circle.
- 5 It can look grey, pale blue, dark blue, or a greenish blue. It really depends where it is and whether the sun is shining on it.
- 6 It's roundish, and white, beige or brown in colour. You eat the inside when it's cooked.
- 7 The bottom part is triangular, and at the top there is another bit in the shape of a semi-circle. You put things on the triangular part and hang them using the semi-circular part.
- 8 It lives in the sea. It's quite small and greyish, but goes pink when you cook it. Then you eat it.

96.5 What are you wearing? Write a description, including the exact colour of everything. If there is a colour or design you cannot describe, use a bilingual dictionary.

# Notices and warnings

## A

### Information

*Out of order*

No vacancies

**SOLD OUT**

**OUT OF ORDER**  
for a machine that is not working, e.g. public phone or washing machine

**NO VACANCIES**  
in the window of a B&B (cheap hotel), it means the hotel is full

**SOLD OUT**  
outside a cinema or concert hall – there are no tickets left; they have all been sold

## B

### Do this!

Please queue  
other side

**KEEP RIGHT**

**KEEP OFF  
THE GRASS**

**SILENCE**  
Examination in progress

**PLEASE QUEUE OTHER SIDE**  
(= wait in a line on the other side of this notice) e.g. in a bank or post office

**KEEP RIGHT**  
(= stay on the right side, and continue on the right side) e.g. in airports, on the underground

## C

### Don't do this!

**NO SMOKING**

**NO PARKING**

Do not lean out  
of the window

Do not leave bags  
unattended

Do not  
disturb

Please do not  
feed the animals

**NO EXIT**



## D

### Be careful!

With these notices, something bad may happen if you do not pay attention to them.

**MIND YOUR HEAD**

**FRAGILE**

**MIND THE STEP**

Beware of  
**PICKPOCKETS**

**MIND YOUR HEAD**  
(= be careful you don't hit your head) e.g. in front of a low door

**MIND THE STEP**  
(= be careful you don't hit the step and fall) e.g. in front of a step

**FRAGILE**  
(= be careful, this will break easily)

**BEWARE OF PICKPOCKETS**  
(= be careful, there are people here who will steal things from your bag or pocket without you knowing)

# Exercises

97.1 Complete these notices and warnings in possible ways, without looking at the opposite page.

PLEASE QUEUE .....  
 MIND THE .....  
 SOLD .....  
 OUT OF .....  
 KEEP .....

BEWARE OF .....  
 MIND YOUR .....  
 PLEASE DO NOT .....  
 NO .....

97.2 Where could you see these notices or warnings?

- 1 **Nothing to declare** *at an airport* .....
- 2 **No vacancies** .....
- 3 Beware of **PICKPOCKETS** .....
- 4 Please queue other side .....
- 5 *Out of order* .....
- 6 **SOLD OUT** .....
- 7 **FRAGILE** .....
- 8 **KEEP OFF THE GRASS** .....

97.3 What notice(s) might you see in each of these places?

- 1 A zoo .....
- 2 A waiting area in a busy airport .....
- 3 The door of a hotel room at 9 o'clock in the morning .....
- 4 In front of garage doors .....
- 5 Above the window of a train .....
- 6 Inside a theatre .....
- 7 On the underground .....
- 8 A door going into a low room .....

97.4 Now write some different notices of your own. Think of six possible notices you could put in one of these places:

- a school .....
- a university .....
- a language school .....
- a place where people work, e.g. bank, factory, hospital .....

Where would you put these notices? If possible, do this activity with another person or show it to another person.

97.5 Look for other notices (in English or your first language). Can you understand the English notices? Can you translate the ones in your own language. Try to find six more notices in the next week.

# Vague language

Vague means 'not clear or precise or exact'. For example, we can say:  
I have a **vague idea** where it is. (= I know more or less but not exactly)  
In spoken English, we use a lot of vague words when we are not being very precise.

## A Thing(s)

- To refer to actions, ideas and facts:  
The main **thing** (= fact) about John is that he always stays calm.  
That was a terrible **thing** (= action) to do.
- To refer to countable objects (often the speaker and listener know what the object is):  
What's that **thing** (bicycle) doing in the house?  
Put those **things** (cups and saucers) in the cupboard.
- To refer to a general situation:  
How are **things** at school?      **Things** (= life in general) are going really well.

## B Stuff

We can use **stuff** with uncountable nouns (or a group of countable nouns) when we don't need to give the exact word. Often the listener knows what the speaker is talking about.  
Just leave that **stuff** (= different items of clothes) on the floor. I'll clear it up.  
I play guitar but not much classical **stuff**. (= music)

## C A sort of ...

We often use this phrase when we cannot find the exact word to describe something.  
The walls are a **sort of** yellow. (= not exactly yellow, but more or less)  
It's a **sort of** horror film. (= not exactly a horror film, but more or less)

## D And things like that/and that sort of thing

We use these phrases so that we don't need to continue the examples.  
I don't eat chilli and garlic **and things like that**.  
She wears a lot of Armani and Versace **and that sort of thing**.

## E Sometime/any time

It'll be ready **sometime** next week. (= next week but I don't know when)  
You can collect it **any time** after 10. (= at 10.30 or 12.30, or 3.00 in the afternoon, etc.)

## F A bit

It usually means 'a little', but it can also mean 'quite a lot' in spoken English.  
Could you speak up **a bit**? (= a little) I can't hear you very well.  
I thought the hotel was **a bit** (= quite) expensive, actually.

## G Approximately

These words are used with numbers and all mean **approximately**.  
It'll take you **about/around** 40 minutes.      It's **roughly** ten miles.  
We're expecting 100 people, **more or less**.      We interviewed 20 or so, I think.

# Exercises

## 98.1 What could *thing(s)* and *stuff* refer to in these sentences?

- 1 I never wear that stuff; it's got such a strong smell. *perfume/aftershave*
- 2 This thing has got stuck in the lock.
- 3 I bought a couple of bottles when I was in Scotland. It's great stuff.
- 4 We don't need these things on a picnic. We can eat the food with our fingers.
- 5 What's that white stuff called that you mix with water to make bread?
- 6 There was a great thing on television last night about elephants.
- 7 I couldn't get any more stuff in my suitcase.
- 8 It's a wonderful thing and keeps my young children occupied for ages.
- 9 I don't know why I bought that thing – it's too heavy for me to carry even when it's empty.
- 10 It's good stuff. My hair feels really soft, and it didn't cost a lot.

## 98.2 Add a word or phrase in the spaces to make this conversation less precise and more natural.

A: How many people were at the conference?

B: (1) ..... 400.

A: Was it good?

B: Er, I (2) ..... enjoyed it.

A: You don't seem very sure.

B: Well, there were some good (3) ..... , but it was (4) ..... too long.

A: And did you go to John's talk?

B: Naturally.

A: How did it go?

B: Well, he was (5) ..... nervous at the beginning, but it went really well.

A: What was it about exactly?

B: Oh you know, changes in the family, (6) .....

A: How many people were in the audience?

B: 75 (7) .....

A: That's good, isn't it?

B: I think John was (8) ..... disappointed – he wanted at least 100.

## 98.3 Reply to each of these questions with a suitable 'vague' response.

1 A: Did you get everything you wanted?

B: Yeah, ..... *more or less* .....

2 A: Did you say the walls were blue?

B: Yeah, .....

3 A: Will there be 20 chairs in the room?

B: Yeah, .....

4 A: Is it a very serious film?

B: Yeah, .....

5 A: Are you tired?

B: Yeah, .....

6 A: Can I collect it tomorrow?

B: Yes, .....

### A Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing than speaking, and is used in notices, business letters and legal English. You will hear some examples in spoken English, e.g. airport announcements.

*Notice in café:* Only food purchased (= bought) here may be eaten on the premises.

*Police statement:* I apprehended (= caught) the accused outside the supermarket.

*Theatre announcement:* The play will commence (= start) in two minutes.

*Business meeting:* The meeting will resume (= start again) this afternoon at 2 pm.

*Lawyer in court:* My client had a broken ankle, thus (= so) he couldn't drive the car.

*Business letter:* I regret to inform you (= I'm sorry to say) that we are unable to ... (= can't)

*Notice:* If you require (= need) further assistance (= more help), please contact ...

*Airport announcement:* Will passengers for Miami please proceed to (= go to) gate 36.

### B Informal English

Informal language is more common in spoken English. For example:

- most uses of **get** are informal (see Unit 29)
- many **phrasal verbs** are informal (see Units 23 and 24)
- many **idioms** are informal (see Unit 13)
- most **shortened words** are informal (see Unit 100)

Informal language is not suitable for formal written English, but in spoken English (and most e-mails or letters to friends) it will help you generally to sound more natural.

I had to go and **pick up** (= collect) the kids (= children) from school.

I reckon (= think) we'll **get** (= receive/obtain) the money **pretty** (= quite) soon.

I'm just going to the **loo**. (= toilet)

Do you fancy going out? (= Would you like to go out?)

I managed to **fix up** (= arrange/make) an appointment for 7.30.

My flat is very **handy** for the shops. (= near the shops and very convenient)

I thought the book was **terrific**. (= marvellous)

Most of the students are **bright** (= intelligent) but Paul is really **thick**. (= stupid)

**What's up?** (= What's the matter?)

We must **get in touch with** them (= contact them) very soon.

When we **get to** (= reach/arrive) the hotel, I'll **have a word with** (= speak to) them.

I offered him ten **quid** (= pounds), but the **guy** (= man) wasn't interested.

A: Here's the book I promised you.

B: Oh, **cheers**. (= thank you. It can also mean 'goodbye'.)

Did you bring your **bike**? (= bicycle)

### C Slang

This is a form of very informal language. It includes words used by particular groups of people, e.g. young people often refer to 'drugs' as **dope**, and also words which many people think are impolite and unacceptable in most situations. You should probably not use these words, but some of them are quite common. For example, the word **piss** is a slang word meaning to urinate/go to the toilet, and it is also used in a number of other slang expressions with different meanings.

**Piss off!** (= go away) He was **pissed**. (= drunk) It's **pissing with rain**. (= raining heavily)

# Exercises

99.1 Put the words on the left into the correct column on the right.

		formal	informal
handy	loo	<u>purchase</u>	.....
purchase	resume	.....	.....
thus	terrific	.....	.....
quid	commence	.....	.....
apprehend	reckon	.....	.....
guy	cheers	.....	.....

99.2 Find a synonym in the box for each of the words in 99.1.

so	buy	<u>purchase</u>	convenient	catch
start	man		start again	pounds
thanks	think		marvellous	toilet

99.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases in these sentences with more informal language.

- 1 Where did you purchase that book?
- 2 I'm just going to the toilet.
- 3 The woman on the desk told us to proceed to gate 12.
- 4 What's the matter?
- 5 Would you like to go out for a meal?
- 6 When are you going to collect your bicycle?
- 7 My flat is five minutes from where I work, thus it's very convenient.
- 8 The man in the market wanted twenty pounds for this ring.
- 9 Most of the children are very clever.
- 10 I think it'll commence quite soon.

99.4 Now rewrite the underlined parts of this letter in more suitable formal English.

Dear Mr Collins,

We're really sorry to say that we can't lend you the sum of £500 that you need, but it may be possible to provide you with a loan for some of the money.

If you would like to contact the branch and have a word with Mrs Jenkins, she will fix up an appointment with the assistant manager. He will be happy to discuss the matter with you.

Yours sincerely,

99.5 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is formal or informal/spoken. Use your dictionary to find out if these underlined words are formal or informal/spoken. What do they mean?

I thought the film was a drag.

Patrons only.

It was too much hassle to go.

Someone has pinched my pen.

He's a nice bloke.

Smoking isn't permitted.



**A** Letters or words?

Most abbreviations are spoken as individual letters:

BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation	MP	Member of Parliament
UN	United Nations	PM	Prime Minister
EU	European Union	ID	Identification, e.g. Do you have an ID card?
USA	United States of America	PC	Personal computer
WWW	World Wide Web	CV	Curriculum vitae
ISP	Internet Service Provider	CD	Compact Disc

A few abbreviations are spoken as words, e.g. AIDS /*aɪdz*/ (= Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome), and occasionally they can be spoken as individual letters or a word, e.g. VAT /*væt*/ or [V-A-T] Value Added Tax (= a tax on goods/products in EU countries)

If you don't understand an abbreviation, you can ask about its meaning like this:

A: What does V-A-T stand for?

A: What does EU stand for?

B: Value Added Tax.

B: European Union.

**B** Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only; they are still pronounced as full words.

Mr /*mɪstə*/

St Mark (Saint Mark)

Mrs /*mɪsɪs*/ (= a married woman)

Dean St (Dean Street)

Ms /*mɒz*/ (= a woman who may be single or married)

Dr (Doctor)

**C** Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

**NOTE**

We write 'etc'. and 'e.g.', but when we speak we usually say 'and so on' and 'for example'.

<i>abbreviation</i>	<i>pronunciation</i>	<i>meaning</i>	<i>Latin</i>
etc.	et cetera	and so on	et cetera
e.g.	E-G	for example	exempli gratia
i.e.	I-E	that's to say/in other words	id est

**D** Shortened words

Some common English words can be shortened, especially in spoken English. In some cases, the shorter form is more common and the full form sounds very formal/strange, e.g. refrigerator, influenza, gymnasium and veterinary surgeon.

phone (telephone)

fridge (refrigerator)

bike (bicycle)

maths (mathematics)

exam (examination)

TV/telly (television)

board (blackboard)

plane (aeroplane)

a paper (newspaper)

case (suitcase)

photo (photograph)

vet (veterinary surgeon)

ad/advert (advertisement)

flu (influenza) (= illness like a cold but more serious)

lab (laboratory) (= special room where scientists work)

gym (gymnasium) (= large room with equipment for physical exercise)

sales rep (sales representative)

# Exercises

100.1 What do these letters stand for? Complete each one.

- |                                    |                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1 BBC = British Broadcasting ..... | 5 PM = Prime .....    |
| 2 MP = Member of .....             | 6 UN = United .....   |
| 3 WWW = World Wide .....           | 7 PC = Personal ..... |
| 4 CD = ..... Disc                  | 8 ID = .....          |

100.2 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.

Michael

Peter had a mathematics examination this afternoon and then he had to take his bicycle to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch television while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the refrigerator. If there's a problem (for example, Doctor Brown rings about the influenza vaccination), my telephone number is next to the photographs on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.

Margaret (Peter's mother)

100.3 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

- |               |                  |
|---------------|------------------|
| 1 for example | 4 in other words |
| 2 and so on   | 5 Mister         |
| 3 Street      | 6 Doctor         |

100.4 Complete these sentences with suitable words or abbreviations from the opposite page.

- 1 She didn't want to walk, so she went on her bike.
- 2 If you go to Mediterranean islands, ..... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
- 3 If you want to apply for the job, you need to send your ..... with a letter of application.
- 4 I asked the teacher to write the word on the .....
- 5 In that shop on the corner you can get books, pens, writing paper, .....
- 6 She was away from college last week because she had ..... I think she's better now, though.
- 7 When I sold my records, I put an ..... in the paper and had three replies the same day.
- 8 It was a warm day, so I put the milk and butter in the .....
- 9 If the tickets are very expensive, ..... more than £50, don't buy any.
- 10 What does EU ..... for?

100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

PTO    RSVP    ASAP    CC/cc

# Answer key

## Unit 1

### 1.1 Suggested answers:

- 1 It is better to plan regular self-study.
- 2 No, study the units that interest you.
- 3 Yes.
- 4 Yes, it usually is necessary.
- 5 It is probably better to revise for short periods but do it often.

### 1.3 revision/revise; pronunciation/pronounce; choice/choose; interest/interest

### 1.4 1 Did you do 2 for half an hour 3 the left-hand page

4 I spent twenty minutes 5 the whole page

### 1.5 2 True 3 False (it means doing certain things in the same way) 4 True

5 False ('at least 50' means a minimum of 50) 6 True 7 True

8 False ('revision' means studying something a second or third time)

9 True 10 False ('a blank piece of paper' has no writing on it)

## Unit 2

### 2.1 Possible answers:

CLOTHES	RAILWAYS/TRAVEL	WORDS WITH 'un-' PREFIX
put on gloves size jumper wear tie	platform train get on late passenger	unfriendly unhappy unable unkind

### 2.2 1 on 2 black 3 put on 4 make 5 gave 6 finger

### 2.3 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 a 7 b 8 b

### 2.4 The answers here will depend on your first language: a translation may or may not be suitable for all of the words. Example sentences are a good idea for most words, and there is usually something else that is also useful to know. Here are some suggestions: concentrate: the main stress is on the first syllable, and it is followed by the preposition 'on'. The noun is 'concentration'.

beard: a picture is the best way to show meaning; it is pronounced **ˈbiəd**; also useful to know 'moustache'.

nearly: synonym = almost. Usually goes before the main verb except the verb 'to be', e.g. we nearly lost the game; it is nearly 4 o'clock.

empty: opposite = full. Also useful to learn 'half-empty' (= 'half-full') but seems more negative.

rescue: synonym = save; noun and verb.

knife: a picture is the best way to show meaning; the letter 'k' is silent; also important to know the plural form 'knives', and the words 'fork' and 'spoon'.

## 2.5 Possible answers:

take: a picture, a bath, a decision, a bus

make: a mistake, a decision, a mess, a noise, friends, money, coffee

do: homework, research, someone a favour, an exam, sport, the shopping, the washing-up

## Unit 3

- 3.1 1 bilingual 2 pronunciation 3 uncountable 4 opposites 5 guess; look it up
- 3.2 2 Wrong ('homesick' means you are unhappy living away from home and want to return)  
3 Right  
4 Right  
5 Wrong (the opposite of 'polite' is 'impolite')  
6 Wrong (the past tense of 'begin' is 'began')  
7 Right  
8 Right  
9 Right  
10 Wrong ('depend' is followed by the preposition 'on')
- 3.3 k in knife; b in comb; t in castle; l in salmon; p in receipt
- 3.4 1 very small  
2 /lu:z/ like 'choose'  
3 win a game  
4 chose/chosen  
5 choice  
6 It's an adjective.  
7 be and feel, e.g. She's homesick; He feels homesick.  
8 law and order
- 3.5 1 = def. 3 2 = def. 1 3 = def. 2 4 = def. 1

## Unit 4

- 4.1 2 in Seville; preposition 6 of money; preposition  
3 got/took/caught a train; verb 7 wonderful hotel/place/location; noun  
4 a beautiful city; indefinite article 8 to Spain; preposition  
5 expensive/good hotel; adjective 9 never stays; adverb
- 4.2 uncountable noun: traffic  
plural noun: shorts; jeans  
a phrasal verb: get in; put on  
idiom: get a move on
- 4.3 1 transitive 2 transitive 3 intransitive 4 transitive  
5 intransitive 6 intransitive
- 4.4 Syllables and main stress (underlined):  
One syllable: noun  
Two syllables: English; decide; before, adverb  
Three syllables: informal; adjective; opposite; understand  
Four syllables: education; preposition  
Five syllables: pronunciation

- 4.5** 1 adjectives 4 un- (unhappy; unlucky)  
 2 happily; luckily; dangerously; cheaply 5 dangerous/safe; cheap/expensive  
 3 happy/content/cheerful; lucky/fortunate

## Unit 5

- 5.1** 1 notebook 2 file 3 briefcase 4 socket 5 plug  
 6 tape recorder/cassette recorder

- 5.2** 2 a cassette/tape 7 rub things out/erase them  
 3 an OHT 8 (photo)copy things  
 4 notes/papers 9 because you want it louder  
 5 notes/books/pens, etc 10 because there aren't enough books/you've forgotten your book  
 6 a plug

- 5.3** 2d 3e 4a 5f 6g 7h 8b

- 5.4** 1 What does 'swap' mean?  
 2 How do you pronounce it?  
 3 How do you spell it?

## Unit 6

- 6.1** 2 incorrect 5 impatient 9 impolite 13 unlock  
 3 illegible 6 irregular 10 invisible 14 unpack  
 4 impossible 7 unfriendly 11 unemployed 15 disagree  
 8 informal 12 dishonest 16 dislike

- 6.2** 2 unlock the door 3 disappear 4 get undressed

- 6.3** 2 it's very untidy 3 he got undressed 4 it's completely illegible  
 5 she's very impatient 6 inadequate 7 unpleasant  
 8 dishonest

- 6.4** 2 misunderstood/misread/misheard 3 unpacked 4 disappeared  
 5 redo/rewrite 6 overslept 7 unlock 8 disliked 9 redo/retake  
 10 overdoing 11 reopen 12 overcharged

## Unit 7

- 7.1** education; improvement; jogging; government; spelling; hesitation; arrangement  
 stupidity; happiness; weakness; similarity; activity; sadness; popularity

- 7.2** 2 election 3 education 4 government 5 weakness  
 6 stupidity 7 management 8 improvement

- 7.3** 2 translator 3 actor 4 psychologist 5 economist 6 footballer

- 7.4** pop singer bus driver shop manager child psychologist  
 film director ballet dancer computer operator professional footballer

- 7.5** 2 murders someone 6 drives a lorry  
 3 manages a bank 7 writes articles in newspapers and magazines  
 4 acts on TV 8 paints pictures  
 5 translates books and articles, etc.

## Unit 8

- 8.1 2 attractive 3 creative 4 cloudy 5 (un)suitable  
6 useful/useless 7 careful/careless 8 thoughtful 9 political  
10 enjoyable 11 painful 12 dirty 13 sunny  
14 musical 15 (un)comfortable 16 famous 17 (un)reliable  
18 emotional

- 8.2 2 famous 3 helpful 4 dangerous 5 painful  
6 useful 7 reliable 8 industrial 9 economical  
10 homeless 11 fashionable 12 incomprehensible

- 8.3 1 *opp* awful/terrible 2 *opp* useless 3 *opp* wonderful/great  
4 *opp* careless 5 *opp* ugly

- 8.4 homeless family famous actor  
careless mistake useful advice  
comfortable bed cloudy morning  
industrial area enjoyable party

### 8.5 Possible answers:

- cloudy, sunny, foggy
- careful, careless, dangerous, reliable
- famous, dirty, attractive, industrial
- comfortable, fashionable, reliable, unreliable, economical

## Unit 9

- 9.1 1 guess 2 diet 3 queue 4 murder  
5 ring 6 kiss 7 chat 8 dream

- 9.2 1 We waited a long time.  
2 This apple tastes strange.  
3 We queued for half an hour.  
4 The holiday cost about £500.  
5 I replied to his letter yesterday.  
6 She smiled at me this morning.

- 9.3 1 I'll give him a ring this evening.  
2 I'll go on a diet if necessary.  
3 If you don't know, just have a guess.  
4 I put on the brakes but I still couldn't stop in time.  
5 I had a dream about my mother.  
6 Did you have a look in the paper?

- 9.4 1 same meaning  
2 completely different (the verb 'to book' = 'to reserve')  
3 completely different ('a break' is a rest; 'to break a leg' = to fracture a leg)  
4 similar (but not exactly the same because 'a run' here is not just the action of running; it is an activity that the person chooses to do)

## Unit 10

### 10.1 Possible answers:

*Money:* credit card, cash machine, income tax, box office (where you buy tickets)

*Kitchens:* dishwasher, washing machine, frying pan, tin opener

*Jobs:* bus driver, postman, babysitter, pop star, film star, rock star

*Roads/transport:* traffic lights, traffic jam, bus stop, bus driver, travel agent

*Things we wear:* T-shirt, sunglasses, earrings, make-up

- 10.2
- |               |                    |                    |                |
|---------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| 2 traffic jam | 3 film star        | 4 traffic lights   | 5 waiting room |
| 6 babysitter  | 7 sunglasses       | 8 income tax       | 9 hair dryer   |
| 10 bus stop   | 11 science fiction | 12 washing machine |                |

### 10.3 Possible answers:

1 living room, waiting room, chat room, bedroom, bathroom, classroom

2 pop star, rock star, film actor, film director

3 birthday card, postcard, Christmas card, phone card, credit limit

4 toothbrush, toothache, toothpick

5 traffic jam, traffic warden, street lights

6 sunshine, suntan, sunshade, sunburn

7 haircut, hairdresser, hairstyle, tumble dryer

8 girlfriend, pen friend, school friend

## Unit 11

- 11.1
- |            |               |
|------------|---------------|
| easy-going | good-looking  |
| five-star  | short-sleeved |
| brand-new  | second-hand   |
| part-time  | left-handed   |
| well-known |               |

- 11.2
- |           |           |            |           |
|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|
| 1 sleeved | 2 handed  | 3 new      | 4 behaved |
| 5 part    | 6 written | 7 off/paid | 8 hand    |
| 9 looking | 10 known  | 11 going   | 12 year   |

### 11.3 Possible answers:

1 well-paid; well-organised; well-written, well-equipped, etc.

2 part-time; full-time

3 badly-written; badly-dressed; badly-behaved; badly-organised, etc.

4 right-handed; left-handed

- 11.4
- |         |         |        |        |        |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 hotel | 2 delay | 3 note | 4 walk | 5 fine |
|---------|---------|--------|--------|--------|

## Unit 12

- 12.1
- heavy traffic; heavy rain; heavy smoker  
miss a bus; miss a person; miss a lesson  
tell a joke; tell a lie; tell the truth

- 12.2
- |                   |               |                |            |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|------------|
| 2 a slight accent | 3 weak coffee | 4 a loud voice |            |
| 5 a soft drink    | 6 tell a lie  | 7 miss the bus | 8 dry wine |

- 12.3** 1 missed      2 told      3 start      4 great  
 5 start      6 hard      7 vitally      8 heavy  
 9 strong      10 missed      11 well      12 wasted  
 13 fast; wide

- 12.4** 1 size; large      2 wide range      3 broad shoulders      4 vast majority

## Unit 13

- 13.1** 1 hang on      6 up  
 2 I haven't a clue      7 keep an eye on  
 3 go ahead      8 make it  
 4 Never mind      9 make up your mind  
 5 if you like      10 up to you

- 13.2** 1 term      2 turns      3 nerves      4 theory      5 place/world  
 6 mind      7 rid      8 like      9 early      10 tongue  
 11 hand      12 getting      13 changed      14 get

- 13.3** 1 easy  
 2 for ever (they are not coming back)  
 3 manage

## Unit 14

- 14.1** *The correct prepositions and sample replies:*

- 2 at      B: French and German.  
 3 for      B: Her brother, I think.  
 4 for      B: Assistant manager.  
 5 to      B: I think it's a comedy programme.  
 6 about      B: She said the vegetables were cold.  
 7 for      B: The fact that she was late twice last week.  
 8 to      B: The man over there.  
 9 at      B: One of the students in her class.  
 10 in      B: Thrillers, I think.  
 11 on      B: How much it costs, I expect.  
 12 of      B: The fact that she can't get out; she's claustrophobic.

- 14.2** 2j      3a      4l      5h      6b      7d      8k      9g      10i      11e      12f

- 14.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 to my brother/sister/mother  
 3 with her homework/her results  
 4 from hay fever/sunburn  
 5 with this TV  
 6 into five languages/French  
 7 of flying/heights/spiders  
 8 in art/music  
 9 on sport/English food  
 10 from British people  
 11 of going to Greece  
 12 of tourists/holidaymakers

- 14.4** fond of; concentrate on; rely on



## Unit 15

- 15.1** 1 on 2 by 3 on 4 on 5 on 6 by 7 for  
8 in 9 on 10 by 11 in 12 on 13 by 14 by  
15 on 16 in 17 in 18 at 19 by 20 in
- 15.2** 1 by myself/on my own 2 in time 3 on fire 4 on the phone  
5 on TV 6 by mistake/accident 7 in the end 8 at the end  
9 at the moment 10 by chance
- 15.3** 1 by accident 2 by himself/on his own 3 on foot (or 'by bus, by taxi, by train')  
4 on business 5 on the radio 6 out of work  
7 by train (or 'by car, by bus') 8 in love

## Unit 16

- 16.1** 2 I'm; cancelled; problem 3 keep; mind 4 sort 5 lot  
6 apologise; matter 7 long; worry 8 kind 9 beg; problem  
10 about; up
- 16.2** *Possible answers:*  
2 I'm sorry I'm late, but I missed the bus.  
3 Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you.  
4 Don't worry. It doesn't matter.  
5 I'm very sorry to disturb you, but ...  
6 Never mind. Don't worry. I'll sort it out.  
7 I must apologise for not coming to the meeting yesterday. Unfortunately, ...  
8 Please accept our apologies for the delay in sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately, we had a fire at the factory last month, and this ...

## Unit 17

- 17.1** A: Would you like to go out this evening?  
B: I'm afraid I haven't got any money. (omit 'but')  
A: That's OK, I'll pay. How about going to see a film?  
B: No, I think I'd rather stay in and do my homework. (omit 'to' after 'rather')  
A: Why don't you do your homework this afternoon?  
B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
A: OK. We could go tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, great.  
A: Right. What film shall we see?  
B: I don't mind.
- 17.2** 1 sure/no problem  
2 wondering; love  
3 fancy; don't; idea  
4 shall; about; could; rather; like  
5 would; mind
- 17.3** *Possible answers:*  
1 Yeah, sure.  
2 Yes, of course.  
3 I'm afraid not.  
4 Yes, I'd love to.

- 5 I'd love to, but I'm afraid I can't.
- 6 Yeah, great.
- 7 Yes, that's a good idea.
- 8 Yes, if you like.
- 9 Well, it's a bit difficult actually because I promised to help ...
- 10 Yeah, I don't mind/if you like.

## Unit 18

- 18.1**
- 1 What do you think of ... ?
  - 2 What do you think about ... ?
  - 3 How do you feel about ... ?
- 18.2**
- 1 of; personally ('actually' would also be correct here)
  - 2 according
  - 3 point
  - 4 totally ('completely' would also be possible here)
  - 5 opinions/views

- 18.3** *Possible answers:*
- 2 In my opinion the club needs new players.
  - 3 I don't agree with you at all.
  - 4 According to the newspaper terrorists started the fire.
  - 5 Yes, I see what you mean.
  - 6 What do you think about giving ... ?

- 18.4** 1c    2a    3d    4b

- 18.5** *Possible answers:*
- 1 Yeah, possibly, but that doesn't mean all women want to be housewives. Some want to have careers.
  - 2 Yes, I agree to some extent, but how do you know if people don't want to work? They may want to work but there are no jobs.
  - 3 Yes, I agree with you, but of course we have to decide what the best way to help them is.

## Unit 19

- 19.1**
- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: I love modern art.<br>B: Yes, so <u>do</u> I.                       | 5 A: Do you like tea?<br>B: Yes, but I prefer coffee <u>to</u> tea.        |
| 2 A: Do you like this?<br>B: Yes, I like <u>it</u> very much.            | 6 A: Does he like football?<br>B: No, he's not <u>interested</u> in sport. |
| 3 A: Would you like to go out?<br>B: No, I'd prefer <u>to</u> stay here. | 7 A: I don't like his new CD.<br>B: No, <u>neither</u> do I.               |
| 4 I'm looking forward to <u>seeing</u> you next week.                    | 8 I don't mind <u>helping</u> them.  |

- 19.2**
- |           |               |        |           |
|-----------|---------------|--------|-----------|
| 1 stand   | 2 thing/stuff | 3 on   | 4 like    |
| 5 forward | 6 interest    | 7 into | 8 hearing |

- 19.3**
- 2 I think they'd rather go home.
  - 3 His books don't interest me.
  - 4 I don't really like things like that.
  - 5 I'm very interested in archaeology.
  - 6 I don't mind the new building.

- 19.4** 2 So do I/me too.    3 Neither do I/me neither.    4 Neither can I/me neither.  
 5 So am I/me too.    6 Neither am I/me neither.

## Unit 20

- 20.1** 2 single    3 special/much    4 get    5 What  
 6 longer    7 How    8 sort/kind

- 20.2** 2 Have you got the time?  
 3 How old are you?  
 4 How far is it?  
 5 What sort/type/kind of food do you eat?  
 6 Excuse me. How do I get to (the national museum)?  
 7 What's their new flat like?  
 8 What are you doing this evening?  
 9 How long have you been here? / When did you get here?

- 20.3** 2 How's it going? (Also 'How are things going?')    3 Whereabouts do you live ...  
 4 What's your steak like?    5 ... the first time you've been to ...  
 6 matter

- 20.4** A: How long have you been here?  
 B: Just a couple of days.  
 A: Really? And how long are you staying / how long are you here for / how much longer are you here for?  
 B: Until next Friday.  
 A: Is this the first time you've been to Spain?  
 B: No, I came last year.

## Unit 21

- 21.2** 1 so    2 so    3 not    4 it    5 so    6 not

- 21.3** 2f    3e    4b    5d    6a

- 21.4** 1 shame    2 If you like    3 how    4 doubt it  
 5 Whatever you like/want    6 that sounds awful/terrible

- 21.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 How exciting/That sounds wonderful.  
 2 Oh, what a nuisance/pain.  
 3 If you like/I don't mind.  
 4 I don't mind/Wherever you like.  
 5 Oh, that's brilliant/How exciting.  
 6 Oh, what a shame/pity.  
 7 Really? That's dreadful/Oh, how awful.  
 8 Oh, what a nuisance/pain.

## Unit 22

- 22.1** 2 Happy (21st) Birthday (or Many happy returns)  
 3 Happy New Year  
 4 Congratulations (on passing your exams)/Well done  
 5 Good luck (in your driving test)  
 6 See you soon

- 22.2** 1 How do you do?; How do you do?/Pleased/nice to meet you.  
 2 Have a nice weekend; Yes, you too/same to you.  
 3 Bless you!  
 4 Cheers; cheers
- 22.3** 2 Sorry? (with rising intonation)  
 3 Goodbye. Nice to meet you/Nice to have met you.  
 4 Excuse me.  
 5 Goodnight. (See you in the morning/tomorrow.)  
 6 Excuse me. (You would probably add something like 'I think you've dropped something.')  
 7 Congratulations.  
 8 Good luck.

- 22.4** We use 'hard luck' to someone who has just failed in something, e.g. failed an exam. We ask people to 'say cheese' when we are about to take a photo of them. We say 'watch out' as a warning, e.g. to warn someone crossing a road that a cyclist is right behind them and could hit them if they aren't careful. We say 'keep your fingers crossed' when we wish and hope that a situation will have a happy or good result, e.g. 'I'm taking my driving test tomorrow, so keep your fingers crossed'. (= Let's hope I pass.)

## Unit 23

- 23.1** 2 picked      3 gone      4 get      5 gets      6 put  
 7 look      8 carry/get      9 get      10 run

**23.2** *Possible answers:*

- 2 an hour late/for Paris/from Heathrow
- 3 in a dictionary
- 4 my boss/my parents/the neighbours/my teacher, etc.
- 5 her coat/her jacket/her gloves, etc.
- 6 smoking/chocolate, etc.
- 7 the cat/the children, etc.
- 8 the car
- 9 paper, coffee, bread, etc.
- 10 by ten pounds/next week, etc.

- 23.3** 1 def. 3      2 def. 5      3 def. 2      4 def. 4

- 23.4** Look at the examples on page 48.

## Unit 24

- 24.1** 1 *correct*  
 2 ... I'd pick them up after school.  
 3 She grew up on a farm.  
 4 *correct*  
 5 ... will sort it out.  
 6 *correct*  
 7 ... broke into the house?  
 8 *correct*

- 24.2** 1 going up; get by; carry on  
 2 come in/go in; take off  
 3 make up; leave out  
 4 turned down; sort out

- 24.3** 1 down            2 out            3 on            4 out            5 up  
 6 away/out        7 off            8 up            9 off/out        10 down

**24.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 excuses/stories  
 3 the TV/the light/the fire  
 4 my flat/my house  
 5 the problem/the mess/the central heating  
 6 tonight/on Saturday evening  
 7 the second question/the final part  
 8 just outside London/on the motorway, etc.  
 9 in English/on your salary  
 10 in a small town/by the sea

**24.5** *Possible answers:*

- U52: grow up; go out (with sb); split up  
 U53: wake up; get up; stay in; go out  
 U61: do up; take sth off; put sth on  
 U79: plug sth in; turn sth off/on/over; switch sth on/off/over  
 U80: put sb through; get through; phone sb back; be back; get back

## Unit 25

- 25.1** 2 I haven't got a job at the moment.  
 3 Does he have any change for the machine?  
 4 She doesn't have much money.  
 5 We haven't got a video at school.  
 6 A: Have you got an English dictionary?      B: Yes, I have.

- 25.2** 3 We've got a small garden.  
 4 I think I've got a cold.  
 5 A: Have you got a spare pen?  
 6 ... she's got a new boyfriend.  
 7 *cannot change*  
 8 *cannot change*  
 9 I've got a new computer.  
 10 Have you got the time?

- 25.3** 2 dream            3 rest/break            4 party            5 think            6 problem  
 7 time            8 lunch            9 look            10 argument/row

- 25.4** 2 Could I have a look at your paper?  
 3 Could I have a word with you?  
 4 Could I have a drink/something to drink?  
 5 Could I have a think about it?

- 25.5** 2 Mary is having a baby/going to have a baby.  
 3 Mary had a problem working the video/with the video.

- 4 Mary had a look at my bad shoulder.  
5 Mary had a great time in Ireland.

## Unit 26

- 26.1** 1 do      2 take/do      3 make      4 do      5 take  
6 made      7 do      8 take/make      9 doing      10 made
- 26.2** 1 do my/the shopping      2 making progress      3 take a break      4 do me a favour  
5 makes a (big) difference      6 make (a lot of) money      7 make a decision  
8 did badly      9 take a seat      10 take a week off/take a week's holiday
- 26.3** 1 Sally did the shopping this morning.      2 Maria did her homework after dinner.  
3 Simon took a picture/photo of me this morning.      4 Michael did well in his exams.

## Unit 27

- 27.1** 1 break somebody's heart; the law  
2 give somebody a hand; somebody a lift  
3 keep in touch; somebody waiting
- 27.2** 2 keep      3 broken      4 see      5 gave  
6 keep      7 see      8 see      9 break      10 see
- 27.3** 2 gave her a ring  
3 broken the law  
4 keep in touch  
5 break her heart  
6 give you a hand
- 27.4** 1 dry      2 laughing      3 awake      4 fit/healthy      5 forgetting      6 quiet

## Unit 28

- 28.1** 1 catch (also take/get)      2 leave      3 let      4 caught  
5 left      6 leave      7 catch      8 let's
- 28.2** 1 alone      2 catch      3 know      4 see  
5 left      6 message      7 catch      8 cold
- 28.3** 1b and e; 2a and f; 3c and d
- 28.4** *Possible answers:*  
2 me help you/me do it      3 me give you a lift      4 you know

## Unit 29

- 29.1** 1 buy/find      2 fetch      3 arrive      4 became      5 find  
6 receive      7 becoming      8 buy      9 receive      10 arrive
- 29.2** 2 I'm getting hungry.      3 I'm getting hot.      4 It's getting late.  
5 It's getting dark.      6 I'm getting worse at English.
- 29.3** 2 get to know people in this country      3 get on (very) well with my boss  
4 get rid of most of the furniture in this room      5 How are you getting on?  
6 really get on my nerves      7 getting ready to go out      8 get up

## Unit 30

- 30.1** 2 coming 3 go 4 take 5 taking ('bringing' is also possible here if the speaker already imagines him/herself at the party) 6 bring 7 go 8 come
- 30.2** 2 try 3 are you 4 fetch 5 together
- 30.3** 1 shopping 2 for a meal/for something to eat 3 for a drink  
4 sightseeing 5 for a drive 6 for a swim or swimming
- 30.4** 2 deaf 3 bankrupt 4 grey 5 bald  
6 mad 7 blind 8 together

## Unit 31

- 31.1** 2 ripe 3 horrible 4 banana 5 sore 6 fresh  
7 photograph 8 brother 9 salmon 10 old socks 11 doorbell  
12 silk
- 31.2** 1 looks sad 2 feels soft 3 tastes horrible/bad
- 31.3** 1 listening to; heard 2 heard 3 hear 4 look at 5 watch  
6 listening to 7 touch 8 press 9 hold 10 watch or look; see

## Unit 32

- 32.1** 1 carton 2 cup 3 bowl 4 box  
5 bottle 6 glass 7 tin 8 jar
- 32.2** 1 a cup or jar of coffee 2 is possible; also a bottle or glass of wine 3 is normal  
4 a tube of toothpaste 5 is possible; also a bottle/carton or glass of milk  
6 a packet of cigarettes 7 is possible; also a packet of salt  
8 is normal; also a bag of tomatoes (if they are fresh)
- 32.3** 2 gang 3 slices/pieces 4 piece 5 bit/lot 6 sheet/piece/bit  
7 group (also crowd) 8 pairs 9 piece/bit 10 bit/drop/(lot)  
11 pair 12 bit
- 32.4** 1 *both correct* 2 sheet is wrong 3 gang is wrong  
4 *both correct*; group is wrong 5 *both correct* 6 piece is wrong  
7 *both correct* (but 'bit' would be more likely) 8 piece is wrong

## Unit 33

- 33.2** 1 I need some information.  
2 The teacher has (some) news about the school trip.  
3 The furniture is very old.  
4 I'm looking for a new pair of jeans. *or* I'm looking for (some) new jeans.  
5 Your hair is getting very long.  
6 Do you have any scissors? *or* Do you have a pair of scissors?  
7 We had a lot of homework yesterday.  
8 Do you think she's making progress with her English?  
9 These trousers are too small.  
10 She gave me some good advice.

- 33.3** Countable: cup; coin  
 Uncountable: housework; spaghetti; money; travel  
 Countable and uncountable:  
 coffee U e.g. I love coffee.  
 C e.g. I sat down and ordered a coffee. (= cup of coffee)  
 work U e.g. Most people enjoy their work.  
 C e.g. The Mona Lisa is a famous work of art.

- 33.4** 1 some scissors/a pair of scissors  
 2 some sunglasses/a pair of sunglasses  
 3 some advice/a bit of advice  
 4 some furniture  
 5 some scales  
 6 some headphones/a pair of headphones

- 33.5** Uncountable nouns: traffic, weather  
 Plural noun: roadworks

## Unit 34

- 34.1** 1 to work    2 to help    3 going    4 to spend    5 to go out/going out  
 6 eating    7 to work/working    8 going    9 to finish    10 helping

- 34.2** *Possible ways to complete part (c):*

- 1 to have a successful career; to be happy; to have children  
 2 doing housework; waiting at bus stops; going to the dentist  
 3 getting up late; walking in the country; spending money  
 4 walking long distances; doing sport; drinking coffee  
 5 to live until they are 75; to have some disappointments; to meet a person they will love  
 6 making their bed; cooking their dinner; cleaning their room  
 7 come home at a certain time; tidy their own rooms; get up at a certain time  
 8 get up when they like; do what they like; have parties at their home

- 34.3** 2 He offered to lend her the money for the hotel/offered to pay for the hotel.  
 3 He refused to pay for the flight and her entertainment.  
 4 She promised to bring him back a present and pay him back in six months.  
 5 They decided to go to the south of France for two weeks.  
 6 She forgot to bring him back a present.

## Unit 35

- 35.1** 2 He told me it's impossible/He said it's impossible.  
 3 The teacher is going to explain what to do.  
 4 She suggested that we go to ... /She suggested going to ...  
 5 Can we discuss my report?  
 6 I want him to leave.  
 7 You must answer the question.  
 8 I apologised for my mistake.  
 9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.  
 10 I asked the waiter for a knife.
- 35.2** 2 showed/told    3 complained    4 asked    5 tell (*also warn*)    6 persuaded  
 7 advised/told    8 mention    9 blamed    10 explained



### 35.3 Possible answers:

- 1 that we go for a meal/stop for lunch
- 2 them to be quiet/to turn down the music
- 3 it was great
- 4 it in class
- 5 me to pay/me to lend her some
- 6 him to go/to walk there
- 7 her to lock her door/ring the police
- 8 the manager (for the defeat)
- 9 them not to drink it
- 10 how it works

### 35.4 ORDER

- 1 + object, e.g. He ordered a meal.
- 2 + object + infinitive, e.g. He ordered us to leave.
- 3 + 2 objects, e.g. He ordered me a steak.

#### RECOMMEND

- 1 + object, e.g. She recommended the school.
- 2 + 'that' clause, e.g. She recommended that we stay in a hotel.
- 3 + preposition, e.g. What would you recommend for young children?

#### PREVENT

- 1 + object, e.g. I couldn't prevent the accident.
- 2 + object + preposition, e.g. They prevented us from leaving.

## Unit 36

- 36.1 2 tiny 3 exhausted 4 astonished 5 fascinating  
6 marvellous, terrific, great 7 freezing 8 enormous/huge  
9 starving 10 terrified

### 36.2 Possible answer:

We're delighted with the hotel – our room is (absolutely) huge and the food is (absolutely) delicious. We've been lucky with the weather as well – it's been hot every day so far, so we've spent most of the time on the beach.

Tomorrow we're planning to walk to a village a couple of kilometres along the coast. In this weather, I'm sure we'll be really exhausted by the time we get back, but it does sound a(n) (absolutely) fascinating place, so I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you about it.

- 36.3 2 terrifying 3 astonished 4 exhausted 5 starving 6 delighted

- 36.4 2 disappointed 3 embarrassed 4 confused 5 astonished

## Unit 37

- 37.1 1 on 2 in 3 at 4 at 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 at 9 on 10 in

- 37.2 2 down the hill 3 under the fence/under it 4 out of the car/out of it  
5 (in the flat) below me

- 37.3 1 across 2 through/across 3 into 4 in 5 near  
6 along 7 between 8 at/in 9 through/around

## Unit 38

- 38.1** 1 My brother often visits us on Sundays.  
2 She hardly ever phones me.  
3 I have never broken my leg.  
4 I hardly ever saw him during the summer.  
5 I occasionally get up early. ('occasionally' could also begin or end the sentence)  
6 I quite often lose my glasses. ('quite often' could also end the sentence)
- 38.2** 1 hardly ever/rarely      2 quite/pretty      3 nearly      4 slightly  
5 incredibly/really      6 often
- 38.3** 2 No, they were rather quiet (actually).  
3 No, it's rather clean (actually).  
4 No, it was rather good (actually).
- 38.4** 2 He's been getting very/really good marks in his exams.  
3 It's a very/really nice house.  
4 John said the flat was fairly/quite/rather small.  
5 They said it was a bit/slightly boring.  
6 The clothes were quite/fairly/rather expensive.

## Unit 39

- 39.1** 1 both      2 get      3 while      4 leaving  
5 both      6 just as      7 while      8 both
- 39.2** *Possible answers:*  
2 we went for a swim  
3 I have finished here/I finish here  
4 leaving/I go out  
5 he was leaving the house  
6 John/Maria looked up the other half  
7 the others arrived  
8 I don't think I have his number  
9 I was coming round the corner  
10 I saw her face
- 39.3** *Possible answers:*  
1 And for another, I've got lots of work to do.  
2 Then finally we came back through the Loire valley and stayed in Tours for a couple of days.  
3 Secondly,/Anyway, we can't really afford it.
- 39.4** *Possible answer:*  
Dear Sir,  
I have just returned from a weekend break at The Royal Hotel, and I'm afraid it was not a very enjoyable stay. Firstly, there was very little variety in the food and sometimes no choice at all. Secondly, the service was very slow most of the time and we had to wait half an hour between courses. And finally, when we complained to the head waiter about these delays, he was very rude and the service did not improve.



I sincerely hope that action will be taken to improve the restaurant, and I shall expect a letter of apology and explanation for the very poor standard of service in a hotel with such a fine reputation.

Yours faithfully,

## Unit 40

- 40.1** in addition; as well; also; what's more  
although; whereas; however; despite
- 40.2** 1 Although    2 in spite of    3 both    4 although    5 whereas  
6 both    7 However    8 both    9 however    10 also
- 40.3** He went to school today although he didn't feel very well.  
He always worked hard at school whereas most of his classmates were lazy.  
He's got the right qualifications. What's more, he's the most experienced.  
He didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave him.  
He decided to take the job. However, it's not really what he wants.
- 40.4** 1 Despite/In spite of    2 whereas    3 In addition/What's more    4 However  
5 although    6 However    7 as well/too    8 though    9 whereas  
10 What's more/In addition
- 40.5** *Possible answers:*  
1 she spoke very quickly  
2 the others couldn't  
3 the bad weather  
4 it's much cheaper  
5 I think they'll probably pass  
6 I wasn't bored at all

## Unit 41

- 41.1** 1 to    2 from    3 with/to    4 in  
5 between    6 from    7 with; of    8 in; with
- 41.2** 2 unlike/different from    3 in common    4 in common  
5 live at home/have jobs/like sport    6 is lazy/went to university
- 41.3** 2 Manuela is completely different from her brother.  
3 Our house is very small compared with/to their houses.  
4 Everyone in the class passed the exam except Carla.  
5 The two girls have nothing in common.  
6 It's free every day apart from Saturday.  
7 Everyone liked it with the exception of William.  
8 We have similar taste in clothes/We like similar clothes.

## Unit 42

- 42.1** 2 I turned up the radio in the lounge so (that) I could hear it in the kitchen.  
3 The restaurant was full, so we went to the bar next door.  
4 I stayed at home because I was expecting a phone call.  
5 It's a very large city, so you have to use public transport a lot.  
6 I learned to drive so (that) my mother didn't have to take me everywhere.

- 42.2** 2 She got the job because of her excellent qualifications.  
 3 We couldn't eat outside because of the terrible weather.  
 4 She didn't go to school because of her bad cold.  
 5 The referee had to stop the game because of the bad light.  
 6 I was half an hour late because of the heavy traffic.

- 42.3** 1 otherwise 2 unless 3 as long as 4 Unless 5 as long as 6 otherwise

- 42.4** 1 As 2 so that 3 As a result/Therefore 4 unless

**42.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I want to improve my English because I will need it in my job very soon.  
 2 I bought myself a personal stereo so that I could listen to English cassettes on the bus.  
 3 I usually study English at the weekend as I am very busy during the week.  
 4 I always write words down in my notebook, otherwise I'll forget them.  
 5 I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, and therefore I find it difficult to remember everything I study.  
 6 My brother has got a number of American friends. As a result, he gets a lot of opportunities to practise his English.

**Unit 43**

- 43.1** 2 moon 3 stars 4 southern 5 behind; ahead 6 in  
**43.2** 2 an ocean 3 a country 4 a desert 5 a river and a rainforest 6 a sea  
 7 a continent 8 islands 9 mountain in the world 10 Lakes  
**43.3** 1 the 2 - 3 - 4 the 5 - 6 - 7 the 8 - 9 the  
**43.4** 1 hurricane 2 flood 3 earthquake 4 volcano (volcanic eruption)  
**43.5** 1 drowned 2 destroyed 3 diving 4 flew 5 hit 6 climb

**Unit 44**

- 44.1** 1 foggy 2 snowing 3 cloudy 4 pouring with rain/raining 5 icy 6 sunny  
**44.2** 1 fog 2 breeze 3 lightning 4 shower  
 5 destroyed 6 comes 7 temperature 8 zero  
**44.3** 2 True 3 True 4 True 5 False (a shower is a short period of rain)  
 6 False (the air will feel wet or damp) 7 True  
 8 False (it hardly ever pours with rain in the desert)  
**44.4** 1 blows 2 hot/warm 3 winds/gales 4 snows 5 humid

**Unit 45**

- 45.1** 1 same 2 different /lepəd; /mɒski:təʊ/ 3 different /beə; /i:gl/  
 4 different /gəʊnlə; /dʒɪrə:f/ 5 same 6 different /mʌŋki; /mɒski:təʊ/  
 7 different /kæməʊl; /sneɪk/ 8 different /lepəd; /ʃu:k/ 9 same 10 same  
**45.2** 1 wild 2 danger 3 insects 4 keep 5 ground 6 protect

**45.3** *Likely answers:*

FARM ANIMALS: horse, goat, pig, sheep

WILD ANIMALS: monkey, lion, zebra, elephant, tiger, camel, leopard, bear

INSECTS: fly, mosquito, bee, ant

**45.4** Possible answers:

- 1 rabbit    2 pigs    3 leopards    4 spiders    5 camels

**45.5** Possible answers:

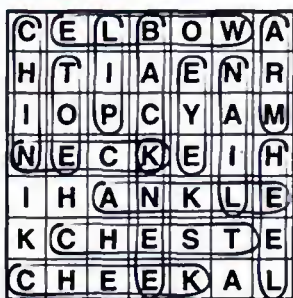
- 2 whales or sharks    3 monkeys or dogs are the most probable answer  
 4 leopards, lions, tigers and other big cats    5 camels    6 whales  
 7 monkeys or giraffes    8 snakes    9 elephants    10 sheep

**Unit 46**

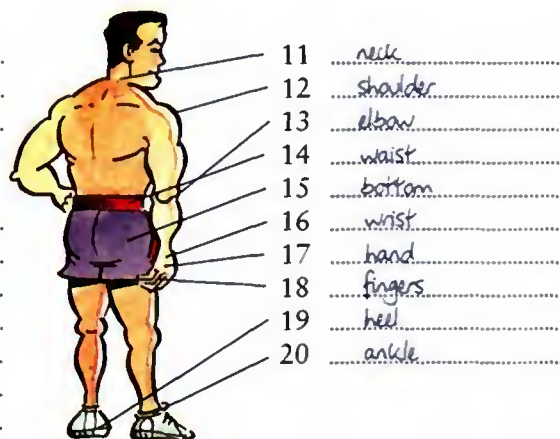
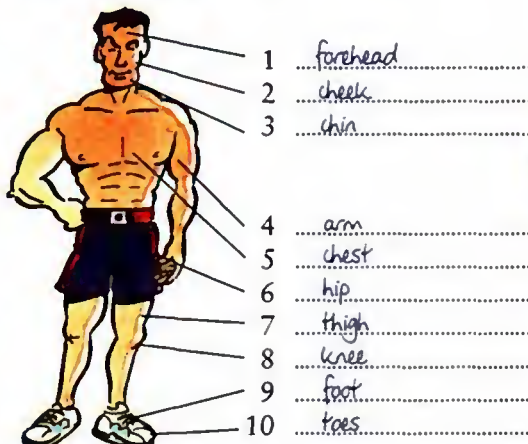
- 46.1** 1 Britain, the United States of America, Canada, Australia    2 Portuguese  
 3 Swiss-German, French, Italian (A small number of people also speak a language called Romansch.)    4 Arabic    5 Polish    6 Spanish    7 Israel    8 China
- 46.2** 2 the Middle East    3 the Caribbean (also the West Indies)    4 the Mediterranean  
 5 the Far East    6 South America (also Latin America)
- 46.3** Japan    Japanese    Egyptian    Arabic    Italian    Austria  
Korea    Chinese    Germany    Saudi Arabia    Egypt
- 46.4** 1 the Japanese    2 Israelis    3 Brazilians    4 the British/British people  
 5 The Swiss/Swiss people    6 Russians
- 46.5** 1 Greece    2 Turkey    3 South Korea    4 Russia    5 Poland    6 Spain
- 46.7** British people are generally polite.  
 In general, British people are polite.  
 British people tend to be polite.

**Unit 47**

**47.1**



**47.2**



- 47.3 2 bite your nails    3 comb your hair    4 fold your arms  
5 blow your nose    6 nod your head

47.4 *Possible answers:*

- 2 running/exercise  
3 they're happy or when someone says something funny  
4 when they're nervous  
5 when they have a cold  
6 when they want to say 'no'  
7 when they mean 'yes'  
8 when they're sad, upset, or possibly when they're very happy  
9 they're tired or bored

## Unit 48

- 48.1 2 hair    3 skin    4 hair    5 height/build    6 shoulders  
7 moustache    8 looking

- 48.2 2 plain    3 overweight    4 good-looking/handsome    5 slim

- 48.3 1 What does he/she look like?  
2 How tall is he/she?  
3 How much does he/she weigh?

48.4 *Possible answers:*

- 2 I'm roughly 75 kilos.  
3 She's around 1 metre 70.  
4 They're both thirtyish.

## Unit 49

49.1

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
clever	stupid
nice	unpleasant
relaxed	tense
hard-working	lazy
generous	mean

- 49.2 unfriendly; unreliable; unkind; unpleasant  
inflexible; insensitive  
dishonest

- 49.3 2 mean    3 unreliable    4 lazy    5 shy  
6 flexible    7 sensitive    8 ambitious

- 49.4 1 comes; fun    2 make    3 sense    4 confident  
5 show    6 first    7 humour    8 narrow

- 49.5 kindness    optimism/optimist (person)    punctuality    laziness  
confidence    ambition

## Unit 50

50.1 2 pride 3 anger 4 jealousy 5 happiness 6 embarrassment

50.2 2f 3e 4a 5c 6d

50.3 *Possible answers:*

- 1 They are strolling along a beach.
- 2 They are pushing a car.
- 3 He/she is pressing a button.
- 4 They are whispering.
- 5 He is waving goodbye (to someone).

50.4 1 glanced 2 whispered 3 strolled 4 march 5 stared 6 shouting

50.5 1 on/at 2 at 3 of 4 at 5 of 6 of

50.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 upset/embarrassed
- 2 frightened/excited
- 3 angry
- 4 angry/embarrassed
- 5 -
- 6 -
- 7 mixed feelings (sad to be leaving but happy to be going home)
- 8 -

## Unit 51

- 51.1
- 1 John is Jill's brother-in-law.
  - 2 Timothy is Jill's nephew.
  - 3 Eve and Ana are Timothy's cousins.
  - 4 Eve is Sheila's niece.
  - 5 Albert Dodds is Tom's grandfather.
  - 6 Barry is Eve's uncle.
  - 7 Susan is Timothy's aunt.
  - 8 As Paul died in 2000, Jill is a widow.
  - 9 Tom is Mary's grandson.
  - 10 The only two people who are not related are John and Sheila.

51.2 1 first 2 after 3 parent 4 colleagues 5 old 6 ex

## Unit 52

52.1 2 retired 3 (mid-) twenties 4 (late) forties (NOT in her middle age)  
5 (early) thirties 6 elderly/old 7 baby 8 teenager 9 adult  
10 adolescence (NOT teenage)

- 52.2
- 2 False: He grew up in California.
  - 3 False: He went out with Anthea for three years.
  - 4 False: They split up because they had lots of rows.
  - 5 True
  - 6 False: Marie got pregnant a year after they got married.
  - 7 False: Marie is now expecting her second child.
  - 8 False: Sam left Marie.

52.3 2c 3a 4f 5i 6h 7d 8b 9g

## Unit 53

53.1 have: lunch, dinner, a sleep, a lie-in, a late/an early night, a wash, a shave, a bath/shower, a (lunch) break, a rest, have friends for dinner

- 53.2** 2 fall asleep      3 have a rest      4 play cards      5 go to bed  
6 clean my teeth      7 feed the dog      8 get up early
- 53.3** 2 go out      3 stay in      4 early      5 lie-in  
6 come round      7 play      8 on my own/alone (or by myself)
- 53.4** 1 What time do you have breakfast?  
2 In the morning I always leave home at 8 o'clock.  
3 I didn't have a shave this morning. or I didn't shave this morning.  
4 I live on my own.  
5 I usually wash my hair every day.  
6 I went to bed and fell asleep/went to sleep very quickly.
- 53.5** 1 up; up      2 in; out      3 round (or 'over')

## Unit 54

- 54.1** 1 yes      2 yes      3 shut      4 no (the ground floor flats don't have balconies)  
5 no (ground floor)      6 no (a park)
- 54.2** 1 doorbell/bell      2 on      3 climb; lift      4 view      5 steps      6 rent  
7 belongs; condition      8 heat; heating
- 54.3** *Possible answers:*

<i>positive</i>	<i>negative</i>
2 there's a good view	there's no view
3 it's quiet	it's noisy
4 it's got large rooms	it's got small rooms
5 it's in good condition	it's in bad condition
6 it has central heating/it's warm	it's cold and draughty

## Unit 55

- 55.1** *Likely answers:*  
2 cooking and washing-up  
3 wash and shower (and bath)  
4 sit and relax (and watch TV)  
5 eat meals  
6 guests sleep/where you keep things you don't use all the time  
7 work/study
- 55.2** 2 in the fridge  
3 in the oven  
4 in the washing machine  
5 in the dishwasher or in the sink  
6 in a cupboard  
7 in the freezer
- 55.3** LIVING ROOM: curtains, carpet, sofa, armchair  
KITCHEN: sink, dishwasher, kettle, oven, fridge, saucepan
- 55.4** 1 in      2 out; back      3 on; in      4 on      5 in      6 out; on



- 55.6** Turn on/off: oven, cooker, grill, hob, dishwasher, TV, sound system, washing machine, kettle, microwave  
 Wash: cups and saucers, saucepans, frying pan, food processor  
 Sit on: sofa, (arm)chair  
 Boil: kettle, saucepan

## Unit 56

- 56.1** *Most likely order (the first two could be reversed):*

I cleaned my teeth.  
 I had a wash.  
 I put on my pyjamas.  
 I got into bed.  
 I set the alarm clock.  
 I switched off the light.  
 I went to sleep.

- 56.2** *Possible answers:*

2 He hoovered the living room.      3 He did the ironing.      4 He did the washing.  
 5 He did the washing-up.      6 He made the bed.

- 56.4** 1 Yes      2 Two pillows      3 Yes      4 Three (that we can see)      5 No      6 Yes

## Unit 57

- 57.1**

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past tense</i>	<i>past participle</i>
break	broke	broken
fall	fell	fallen
spill	spilt (also spilled)	spilt ( <i>also</i> spilled)
forget	forgot	forgotten
lose	lost	lost
burn	burnt (also burned)	burnt ( <i>also</i> burned)
cut	cut	cut

- 57.2** 2h      3f      4g      5c      6b      7a      8e

- 57.3** *Possible answers:*

She broke her glasses; She had/got a stain on her trousers; She burnt the food

- 57.4** *Possible answers:*

2 I dropped it (on the floor).  
 3 I fell over/fell off my bike.  
 4 It's not working properly.  
 5 (I'm afraid) I lost it.  
 6 I left it at home.  
 7 It's not working.  
 8 It's out of order.

## Unit 58

- 58.1** 1 sold; bought      2 lost; cost; found      3 paid  
 4 gave; spent      5 won      6 wasted

- 58.2** 1 How much is your gold ring worth?  
 2 I'm afraid I can't afford it or can't afford to go.  
 3 Could you lend me some money?  
 4 How much did your dictionary cost? or How much did you pay for your dictionary?  
 5 That disco costs a fortune.
- 58.3** 1 yes    2 no    3 yes    4 no    5 yes    6 no    7 no    8 no

## Unit 59

- 59.1** 1 A cold: sneezing, a sore throat, a cough  
 2 Flu: sneezing, a sore throat, a cough, a high temperature (aching muscles)  
 3 A hangover: headache, feeling sick  
 4 Diarrhoea: keep going to the toilet
- 59.2** 1 different    2 same    3 same    4 different    5 different    6 different
- 59.3** 1 a    2 -    3 - ('a' is possible)    4 a    5 -    6 -
- 59.4** *Possible answer:*  
 I had terrible toothache, so I made an appointment to see the dentist. She had a look at the tooth and decided that I needed a filling. She gave me an injection, which was quite painful, but afterwards it felt much better.
- 59.5** 1 feel    2 hurts    3 get/have    4 attack    5 ache  
 6 pain    7 lung    8 prescription    9 disease    10 aches

## Unit 60

**60.2**

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
cut	cut	blood	bleed
injury	injure	bruise	bruise
shot	shoot	treatment	treat

- 60.3** *Possible answer:*  
 Paul somehow fell from the tree where he was picking apples and he knocked himself unconscious. His wife immediately rang for an ambulance and it soon arrived and he was rushed to hospital. He had to have a number of stitches for a large cut on the side of his head, but fortunately it wasn't serious.
- 60.4** 2a    3f    4e    5c    6b

## Unit 61

- 61.1** *Possible answers:*  
 shoes, socks, jeans, gloves, tights
- 61.2** 2g, 3a, 4c, 5e, 6i, 7b, 8h, 9f
- 61.3** an earring, a ring, a button, a pocket, a necklace
- 61.4** *Possible answers:*  
 1 top or blouse; skirt    2 suit; trousers    3 tie; shirt    4 do  
 5 enough; size    6 too; enough

**61.5 Possible answers:**

worn by women: dress, top, blouse, skirt, tights, necklace

worn by men and women: hat, gloves, jeans, trousers, jacket, scarf, coat

**Unit 62**

**62.1** 2 clothes    3 vegetables    4 furniture    5 electrical appliances    6 jewellery  
7 toys    8 stationery

**62.2** butcher: chicken

newsagent: envelopes, notebook

chemist: aspirin, toothbrush

supermarket: aspirin, envelopes, toothbrush, chicken, grapes, notebook, bananas, loaf of bread, carrots

department store: envelopes, gloves, armchair, notebook

*Possible answers:*

butcher: steak, sausages, bacon, lamb

newsagent: cigarettes, sweets, greeting cards

chemist: soap, shampoo, perfume, toothpaste

supermarket: coffee, wine, cakes, biscuits, cheese

department store: clothes, washing machines, saucepans

**62.3** 1 butcher('s)    2 shopping centre    3 shop/sales assistant  
4 changing/fitting room    5 till/cash desk    6 window shopping  
7 off-licence    8 chemist('s)

**62.4** 1 looking for    2 size    3 being served/just looking  
4 changing room    5 take it

**Unit 63**

**63.1** 1 potato/peas; peach/pear    2 beans/broccoli; banana    3 mushroom; melon  
4 carrot/cauliflower/cabbage/celery; cherry    5 aubergine; apple

**63.2** lettuce/chicken  
orange/broccoli  
aubergine/tomato  
raspberry/calf  
onion/mushroom  
salmon/lamb  
prawn/pork

**63.3** 2 leeks; the others are common in salad but leeks aren't  
3 peach; the others are vegetables but a peach is a fruit  
4 crab; the others are types of meat but crab is a type of seafood  
5 aubergine; the others are types of fruit but an aubergine is a vegetable

**63.4** *Most likely answers:*

<i>always</i>	<i>sometimes</i>	<i>never</i>
cherries	apple	banana
grapes	peach	pineapple
strawberries	pear	melon
		orange

63.5 1 beef 2 veal 3 pork 4 lettuce 5 vinegar or lemon juice

## Unit 64

64.1 *Typical answers for Britain:*

raw fish (no)	fried rice (yes)
fried eggs (yes)	baked potatoes (yes)
roast beef (yes)	raw spinach (in salad, but not very common)
roast peppers (yes)	boiled eggs (yes)
grilled cheese (yes, usually on toast)	baked bananas (yes, as a dessert)

64.2 2 spaghetti with courgette and bacon  
3 steak  
4 roast fillet of pork  
5 steak in a pepper sauce  
6 breast of chicken in a white wine sauce  
7 ice cream and chocolate mousse  
8 probably the salmon

64.3 *Possible answers:*

lemon: sour	bacon: salty/tasty
bread: fresh	fillet steak: rare/well-done
cakes: fattening/sweet	mineral water: still/sparkling
	coffee: sweet/bitter

## Unit 65

65.1 2g 3b 4f 5c 6h 7a 8e

65.2 2 cultural activities 3 wide range; whatever (*or anything*)  
4 nightlife 5 opportunities 6 cope; commuters

65.3

<i>towns and cities</i>	<i>villages in the countryside</i>
dirty/polluted	clean air
dangerous	safe
traffic congestion/congested	not much traffic
lots to do/good nightlife	nothing to do in the evening

## Unit 66

66.1 2 grass 3 leaves 4 plants 5 roots 6 flowers

66.2 1 in 2 up 3 on 4 by 5 of 6 about

66.3 1 gate 2 tractor 3 footpath 4 field  
5 valley 6 woods 7 village

66.4 1 countryside 2 agriculture 3 crops 4 rural  
5 village 6 wood 7 cottage 8 transport

66.5 1 thing 2 quiet 3 fresh 4 surrounded  
5 pace 6 worst 7 nightlife 8 privacy

## Unit 67

- 67.1** 2 junction    3 keep going    4 turn    5 get (also come)    6 school  
7 turn right    8 Maldon    9 on    10 after
- 67.2** 1 accident    2 service    3 injured; damaged  
4 blocked; tailback (also traffic jam)    5 pavement    6 broke down  
7 overtook    8 crashed    9 pedestrians
- 67.3** 1 You can't park/wait    2 50 mph is the speed limit    3 You can't turn right  
4 There is only one lane    5 End of motorway    6 Car park  
7 Traffic lights    8 Low bridge    9 Roadworks

## Unit 68

- 68.1** 1 ride    2 get in    3 fare    4 run  
5 fly    6 timetable    7 get    8 missed
- 68.2** *Possible answers:*  
1 bus fare; train fare; air fare; taxi fare  
2 get on the bus; get on the coach; get on the train; get on the plane  
3 bus station; railway station; coach station  
4 bus driver; train driver; taxi driver; van driver; lorry driver  
5 get in the car; get in the taxi; get in the van; get in the lorry (People also sometimes say 'get in the bus' or 'get in the train'.)  
6 train journey; bus journey; car journey; coach journey
- 68.3** 1 coach    2 van    3 lorry    4 motorbike    5 bike/bicycle
- 68.4** 1 platform    2 bus stop    3 full (up)    4 pilot  
5 punctual    6 queue    7 journey    8 due

## Unit 69

- 69.1** 1d    2e    3a    4b    5c
- 69.2** 1e    2a    3d    4b    5c
- 69.3** 1 What's your job?  
2 I work for the government.  
3 My salary is \$50,000.  
4 My total income is £30,000.  
5 My job involves looking after all the computers.  
6 I'm in charge of one of the departments.
- 69.4** A: What are your working hours?  
A: Do you do/work any overtime?  
A: How much holiday/how many weeks holiday do you get?  
A: Do you get sick pay?

## Unit 70

- 70.1** *Possible answers:*  
2 a pilot    3 a sailor    4 a mechanic    5 a police officer  
6 a vet    7 a firefighter    8 an accountant    9 a doctor, nurse, surgeon, or vet  
10 someone in the army, navy or air force

- 70.2** 2 designs buildings      3 controls the financial situation of people and companies  
 4 treats animals                5 represents people with legal problems  
 6 plans the building of roads, bridges, machines, etc.      7 builds walls  
 8 buys and sells shares      9 repairs cars                              10 operates on people

- 70.3** 1 Really? When did she join the army?      2 Really? When did he join the navy?  
 3 Really? When did he join the air force?      4 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

**70.4** *Possible answers:*

an architect to design the house  
 a lawyer to give legal advice  
 a carpenter to make cupboards and fit doors  
 a plumber to fit the kitchen and bathroom  
 an electrician to do all the electrical work  
 an accountant to calculate how much everything will cost

## Unit 71

- 71.1** 2 unemployed      3 resign/quit      4 promoted  
 5 prospects          6 retire            7 employees      8 take over

- 71.2** 1b    2e    3d    4a    5f    6c

- 71.3** 1 abroad      2 part-time      3 course      4 challenge  
 5 rise          6 her              7 over          8 earn/get

**71.4**

<i>verb</i>	<i>general noun</i>	<i>person</i>
manage	management	manager
promote	promotion	–
employ	employment	employer (boss)/employee (worker)
resign	resignation	–
retire	retirement	–
train	training	trainer (gives the training)/trainee (receives it)

## Unit 72

- 72.1** 2 appointment      3 drawer      4 meeting      5 computer  
 6 e-mail                7 reports      8 letter          9 visitors      10 minutes

- 72.2** 1 noticeboard      2 filing cabinet      3 briefcase  
 4 paperwork      5 wastepaper basket/bin

- 72.3** 2 The photocopier isn't working.  
 3 We've got loads of work today.  
 4 The computer is down.  
 5 We've run out of paper for the photocopier.

- 72.4** 2 calendar      3 diary      4 invoice      5 factory      6 agenda

## Unit 73

- 73.1** 1 loan      2 interest      3 inflation      4 turnover      5 it breaks even      6 overheads

- 73.2** 1 by 2 from; to 3 of 4 to 5 in 6 in
- 73.3** 1 fell 2 gradual 3 be successful 4 aim 5 expand 6 goes up/rises
- 73.4** 1 rose 2 fell slightly 3 sharp fall  
4 steady rise 5 rose sharply 6 rose by 60,000
- 73.5** 1 loss 2 interest/inflation 3 cut/increase  
4 materials 5 economy 6 political/economic

## Unit 74

**74.1**

<i>infinitive</i>	<i>past tense</i>	<i>past participle</i>
win	won	won
lose	lost	lost
beat	beat	beaten
catch	caught	caught
draw	drew	drawn

**74.2** head it; pass it; catch it; throw it; hit it; kick it; drop it

**74.3** Possible answers:

- tennis, table tennis, baseball, hockey, squash, cricket, golf
- football, rugby, American football, basketball, volleyball
- rugby, American football, cricket, baseball, basketball, football (goalkeeper only)
- football, rugby, American football
- football

**74.4** 1 score/result 2 beat 3 drew 4 stadium  
5 spectators/crowd 6 winner(s) 7 leading 8 latest

**74.5**

<i>sport</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>equipment</i>
football	pitch	boots, training shoes, net, whistle
tennis	court	training shoes, racket, net
golf	course	clubs

## Unit 75

**75.1**

<i>sport</i>	<i>place</i>	<i>equipment</i>
swimming	pool	trunks, costume
motor racing	circuit	crash helmet
ice hockey	rink	sticks, skates, puck

**75.2** 1 do 2 play 3 join 4 support  
5 gave up/stopped 6 go 7 take up 8 get/be/keep

**75.3** 2 fit 3 climbing 4 opposite 5 seriously  
6 hockey 7 racing 8 up 9 gym/pool 10 you/me

## Unit 76

**76.1** 1 stalls 2 C 3 yes 4 yes

- 76.2** 1d 2g 3f 4a 5h 6e 7b 8c
- 76.3** 1 musical 2 audience 3 director 4 critics  
5 reviews 6 subtitles 7 to book 8 stars
- 76.4** 1 set 2 love 3 about 4 background/family  
5 away 6 at 7 wrong 8 romantic comedy
- 76.5** 1 war film 2 romantic comedy 3 action film  
4 horror film 5 horror film 6 thriller

## Unit 77

- 77.1** 2 violinist 3 guitarist 4 cellist 5 drummer
- 77.2** 1 instrument 2 classical; composer 3 choir 4 out/released; one  
5 produced (recorded or released are also possible) 6 latest (new is also possible)
- 77.3** 1 orchestra 2 group/band; solo 3 plays; performs/sings  
4 single/record; album 5 opera 6 lead 7 jazz 8 singles/records  
9 guitarist 10 lead
- 77.4** 1 songs/music 2 taste 3 record (CD)/single 4 hit 5 released/produced

## Unit 78

- 78.2** 1 in; about 2 of 3 for 4 in 5 to
- 78.3** 1 comes 2 daily 3 monthly 4 journalists/reporters 5 headline  
6 photographers 7 article/report 8 review 9 advertisements/adverts  
10 According
- 78.4** *Possible answers:*  
2 Japan and the US are going to start fresh discussions  
3 Germany supports the US plan/has decided to support the ...  
4 The police have discovered an important witness  
5 The government is going to reduce spending on new hospitals  
6 (The) bad weather has had a bad effect on the railway service  
7 Ministers are in a new argument over tax  
8 There will be a new attempt to reduce teenage smoking

## Unit 79

- 79.1** *Possible answers:*  
2 Could you turn it up?  
3 Could you turn/switch over?  
4 Could you turn it down?  
5 Could you turn/switch it off?
- 79.2** Documentary: World in Action and Cutting Edge  
Quiz show: Telly Addicts  
Game show: Bruce's Price is Right (The Krypton Factor is also a game show)  
Drama series: Cracker  
Current affairs: World in Action  
Comedy series: 2 Point 4 Children  
Soap operas: EastEnders and Coronation Street



79.3 1 on; operas 2 highlights 3 on; repeat

## Unit 80

80.1 *Possible answers:*

phone card; phone box; phone call; phone directory; answerphone; mobile phone; public phone; on the phone

80.2 1 speak to 2 Speaking 3 My name is 4 message  
5 out/not here/in a meeting 6 back 7 (phone) number  
8 Is that 9 here/in 10 be 11 leave 12 message  
13 give 14 ring/call 15 (phone) number 16 Is that  
17 This is/It's 18 through 19 engaged 20 on

## Unit 81

81.1 2 floppy disk 3 user-friendly 4 Internet Service Provider 5 keyboard  
6 e-mail address 7 laser printer 8 laptop 9 back-up copy 10 websites

81.2 1 save the data in this document 2 cut 3 open a new document 4 copy  
5 print 6 open an existing document 7 paste

81.3 1 printed; crashed 2 connect 3 download 4 virus  
5 checked; sent 6 browsing 7 search 8 at; dot

## Unit 82

82.1 2 science 3 technology 4 art 5 French 6 history  
7 English 8 geography 9 music 10 chemistry

82.2 1 3 2 5 3 11 4 16 5 go to university or college/get a job

82.3 1 divided 2 lessons 3 breaks  
4 pupils 5 subjects 6 terms

82.4 2 into hospital 3 to bed 4 to university 5 to church 6 to prison

82.5 1 I failed my exam. 2 I did very badly.  
3 I'm hopeless/terrible/not very good at English. 4 I got a very low mark.

## Unit 83

83.1 2 medicine/biology 3 agriculture/chemistry 4 psychology 5 business studies  
6 history of art 7 politics 8 law

83.2 1 a grant 2 a degree 3 undergraduates 4 lecturers  
5 graduates 6 postgraduates 7 research 8 lectures

83.3 1 get 2 go to 3 doing 4 get 5 lasts/goes on for

83.4 1 at 2 in 3 doing; in(to)/on 4 postgraduate/Masters 5 department

## Unit 84

84.1 1c 2i 3g 4h 5b 6f 7d 8a 9e

84.2 2 the judge 3 prisoners 4 the jury 5 barristers (lawyers) 6 criminals

- 84.3 1 broken 2 committed 3 against 4 illegal 5 fine  
6 prove 7 guilty 8 evidence 9 sentence 10 offence

84.4 Possible answers (for Britain):

- 1 Yes
- 2 Visit the owner and the house that was broken into and take fingerprints if possible
- 3 Probably not (less than 50% of burglars are caught)
- 4 Burglary
- 5 No, not at 15
- 6 Probably a suspended sentence (= the boys are free but if they commit another crime in the next year or two years, they will receive a much tougher punishment) unless the boys already have a record for burglary. In this case, they could be sent to a centre for young offenders.

## Unit 85

85.1

<i>crime</i>	<i>person</i>
murder	murderer
burglary	burglar
theft	thief
shoplifting	shoplifter

- 85.2 2 murder 3 with shoplifting 4 charged with manslaughter  
5 been charged with theft

- 85.3 2d 3f 4a 5b 6e

- 85.5 1 carry/have 2 allowed/able/permitted 3 punishment 4 reduce/prevent

## Unit 86

- 86.1 1 monarchy 2 republic/democracy 3 dictatorship

86.2

<i>general noun</i>	<i>person</i>
democracy	democrat
politics	politician
conservatism	conservative

<i>verb</i>	<i>general noun</i>
elect	election
govern	government
vote	vote

- 86.3 1 Elections are held every five years.  
2 The government is left-wing.  
3 I believe in democracy.  
4 Who is in power at the moment?

- 86.4 1 elections 2 Prime 3 vote 4 party  
5 votes 6 majority 7 leader 8 policies

## Unit 87

- 87.2 landing card; birth/marriage certificate; driving licence; application/enrolment form

- 87.3 2 checked 3 fill 4 sign 5 signature  
6 runs out/expires; renew 7 surname/family name 8 enrolment/registration

- 87.5** 2 Where do you come from?/Where are you from?  
 3 Are you single or married?  
 4 When did you arrive?  
 5 When are you leaving?/When do you leave?

**87.6** *Problems mentioned were:*

- Delays, e.g. in getting a new passport
- Officials putting the wrong information on documents, which then need to be changed, e.g. driving licence
- Officials losing information you have given them
- Being asked to explain the same information over and over again to different officials, especially over the telephone
- Spending a long time getting a document in one country, then discovering that nobody is interested in it when you arrive in another country
- Officials who behave like policemen

**Unit 88**

**88.2**

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
waste	waste
pollution	pollute
damage	damage

<i>noun</i>	<i>verb</i>
protection	protect
destruction	destroy
survival	survive

- 88.3** 1 recycle  
 2 waste; save/conserve  
 3 cut down/destroy; protect

- 88.4** 1b 2d 3a 4c

- 88.5** 1 carbon dioxide 2 terrible happens (and people often die) 3 food  
 4 rain 5 rain 6 fighting between two or more groups 7 the same country  
 8 kill (a famous person, usually for political reasons) 9 army  
 10 in the armed forces (army, navy or air force)

**88.6** *Possible answers:*

- 1 plane/bus 2 President/Prime Minister 3 bomb  
 4 hostages/prisoners 5 killed/injured/wounded 6 settlement

**Unit 89**

- 89.1** 1 boarding card 2 excess baggage 3 check-in desk  
 4 flight number 5 overhead locker 6 departure lounge  
 7 baggage reclaim 8 passport control 9 hand luggage

- 89.2** 1 check-in (desk) 2 boarding card 3 excess baggage 4 hand luggage  
 5 overhead locker 6 runway 7 cabin crew 8 hire

- 89.3** 1 delay 2 cards 3 lounge  
 4 customs 5 luggage (also 'bags') 6 board

- 89.4** 1 took off 2 captain/pilot 3 fasten 4 flew  
 5 crew 6 landed 7 get off 8 flight/journey

## Unit 90

- 90.1** Hotel: 1g 2i 3b 4d 5k 6h 7e 8f 9j 10a 11c  
Restaurant: 1f 2i 3d 4k 5h 6a 7j 8g 9b 10e 11c
- 90.2** 1 bill 2 board 3 room (or twin-bedded room) 4 available ('free' is possible)  
5 lift 6 order 7 wine 8 meal 9 have 10 included
- 90.3** Possible answers:  
2 I'd like to book a double room for next weekend. or Do you have any double rooms available next weekend?  
3 Could you order a taxi for me, please? or Could I pay my bill, please?  
4 How do I get to the nearest bank from here? or Could you tell me the way to the nearest bank, please?

## Unit 91

- 91.1** 1 time 2 sightseeing 3 packed 4 look 5 galleries  
6 lost 7 market/place 8 go out 9 spent 10 photos/pictures
- 91.3** Possible answers:  
1 Yes, it's a great place.  
2 Yes, it's very cosmopolitan.  
3 Yes, it was (absolutely) packed.  
4 Yes, the nightlife is very good.  
5 Yes, we had a great time.  
6 Yes, Kyoto is definitely worth seeing/worth a visit.

## Unit 92

- 92.1** Possible answers:  
suntan; sunbathe; sunburn; sunblock
- 92.2** 2d 3e 4a 5f 6c
- 92.3** 1 playing volleyball 2 windsurfing 3 paddling 4 sunbathing
- 92.4** Vertical: cool down, tan, brown, camping  
Horizontal: calm, towel, rock(s), cliff, horizon, swim, skin
- 92.5** 1 go 2 spend 3 rent 4 go 5 lying/sitting/being 6 get

## Unit 93

- 93.1** 1 at 2 in 3 at 4 in 5 on 6 at  
7 On 8 at 9 on 10 at 11 in 12 on
- 93.2** 1 by 2 until 3 since 4 for 5 during 6 for 7 in 8 in
- 93.3** 2 the other day 3 recently/lately 4 for ages 5 for the time being
- 93.4** 1 two 2 19th; 20th 3 1963; 40  
4 eight 5 ten

**93.5** Possible answers:

- 1 7; 8      2 the morning      3 Saturdays      4 August      5 two years  
6 1999      7 last Wednesday      8 40 minutes      9 you're 17      10 October

**Unit 94**

**94.1**

- four hundred and sixty-two
- two and a half
- two thousand three hundred and forty-five
- nought point two five
- one million two hundred and fifty thousand
- ten point oh four (*or* nought four)
- forty-seven per cent
- the tenth of April (*or* April the tenth)
- the third of July (*or* July the third)
- six oh two eight four seven seven (*or* double seven)
- five degrees below zero (*or* minus five degrees centigrade)
- nineteen seventy-six

**94.2**

- 1 thousand      2 the fourth of August      3 two hundred and twenty  
4 the thirty-first of August      5 seven two three six oh nine

**94.3**

- 1 majority      2 minority      3 calculator      4 work      5 stuck

**94.4**

- 1 59      2 192      3 60      4 5      5 8      6 15

**94.5**

*Answers to questions 6 and 7:*

- 6 thirty seven point six (degrees)      7 approximately one point six kilometres in a mile

**Unit 95**

**95.1**

*Possible answers:*

- It's about two minutes' walk.
- It's about a kilometre.
- No, it isn't.
- Yes, it's too far to walk.
- Yes, quite a long way.
- It's about 20 kilometres.
- It's about 15 minutes' walk.
- No, not far.

**95.2**

*Possible questions:*

- What's the size of the lake?  
How deep is it? *or* What's the depth of the lake?  
How far is it from one side of the lake to the other?  
How high is the mountain? *or* What's the height of the mountain?  
How long is the pitch? *or* What's the length of the pitch?  
How wide is the pitch? *or* What's the width of the pitch?  
How tall is she?

**95.3**

- No, he's quite thin.
- No, it's quite shallow.
- No, it's quite narrow.

- 4 No, he's fairly short.  
 5 No, it's quite big (or it's a great big place).  
 6 No, it's great/really interesting/very lively.

## Unit 96

- 96.1** 1 square    2 rectangular    3 round    4 pointed  
**96.2** 1 grey    2 pink    3 beige    4 purple    5 turquoise  
**96.3** 2 a star-shaped ring    3 a round mirror    4 a pointed nose  
 5 diamond-shaped earrings    6 a striped sofa    7 a light blue shirt  
 8 a dark blue jumper    9 a tartan tie  
**96.4** 1 a pencil    2 a football/rugby/hockey pitch    3 a carrot    4 the moon  
 5 the sea    6 an egg    7 a (coat/clothes) hanger    8 prawns

## Unit 97

### 97.1 Possible answers:

Please queue other side  
 Mind the step  
 Sold out  
 Out of order  
 Keep right; Keep off the grass  
 Beware of pickpockets  
 Mind your head  
 Please do not disturb; Please do not feed the animals  
 No exit; No smoking; No parking

### 97.2 Possible answers:

2 in a Bed & Breakfast (cheap hotel)    6 outside a theatre/cinema/concert hall  
 3 on the underground    7 on the outside of a parcel/package  
 4 in a bank or post office    8 in a park  
 5 by a public telephone

- 97.3** 1 Please do not feed the animals    5 Do not lean out of the window  
 2 Do not leave bags unattended    6 No smoking  
 3 Please do not disturb    7 Keep right; No smoking; No exit  
 4 No parking    8 Mind your head

## Unit 98

### 98.1 Possible answers:

2 the key    3 whisky    4 knives and forks    5 flour  
 6 programme    7 clothes/belongings    8 a type of toy  
 9 a suitcase    10 shampoo/conditioner

### 98.2 Possible answers:

1 About/Around/Roughly    2 sort of    3 things    4 a bit    5 sort of/a bit  
 6 and things/stuff like that or and that sort of thing    7 more or less/or so    8 a bit

**98.3** Possible answers:

- 2 sort of/blueish      3 more or less/roughly      4 sort of  
5 a bit/sort of      6 any time

**Unit 99**

**99.1**

<i>formal</i>	<i>informal</i>
purchase	handy
resume	loo
thus	terrific
commence	quid
apprehend	reckon
	guy
	cheers

- 99.2** so/thus      buy/purchase      convenient/handy      catch/apprehend  
start/commence      man/guy      start again/resume      pounds/quid  
thanks/cheers      think/reckon      marvellous/terrific      toilet/loo

- 99.3** 1 Where did you buy/get that book?  
2 I'm just going to the loo.  
3 The woman on the desk told us to go to gate 12.  
4 What's up?  
5 Do you fancy going out for a meal?  
6 When are you going to pick up your bike?  
7 My flat is five minutes from where I work, so it's very handy.  
8 The guy in the market wanted 20 quid for this ring.  
9 Most of the kids are very bright.  
10 I reckon it'll start pretty soon.

- 99.4** We regret to inform you that we are unable to lend you the sum of £500 that you require, but it may be possible to ...

If you would like to contact the branch and speak to Mrs Jenkins, she will arrange an appointment with the assistant manager. He will ...

- 99.5** a drag (*infml*) = boring  
pinched (*infml*) = stolen  
patrons (*fml*) = People who use a hotel/restaurant or shop. The word patron often appears on notices in hotel or restaurant car parks.  
bloke (*infml*) = man  
hassle (*infml*) = trouble or inconvenience  
permitted (*fml*) = allowed

**Unit 100**

- 100.1** 1 British Broadcasting Corporation      2 Member of Parliament  
3 World Wide Web      4 Compact Disc      5 Prime Minister  
6 United Nations      7 Personal Computer      8 Identification

**100.2** Michael,

Peter had a maths exam this afternoon and then he had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch TV/telly while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the fridge. If there's a problem (e.g. Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination), my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.

Margaret (Peter's mum)

**100.3** 1 e.g.    2 etc.    3 St    4 i.e.    5 Mr    6 Dr

**100.4** 2 e.g.    3 CV    4 board    5 etc.    6 flu    7 ad(vert)  
8 fridge    9 i.e.    10 stand

**100.5** PTO stands for 'please turn over' at the bottom of a page.

RSVP means 'please reply' (from the French 'répondez, s'il vous plaît') and is found at the bottom of formal invitations, e.g. to a reception or wedding.

ASAP/asap stands for 'as soon as possible' and is commonly used in e-mails and faxes.

CC/cc stands for 'carbon copy' and is used in business letters and e-mails to show you are sending a copy to someone else. In the past, carbon copies were made using carbon paper. We don't use this any more, but we still use the abbreviation.



# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

Symbol	Examples		
/i:/	sleep	me	
/ɪ/	happy	recipe	
/ɪ/	pin	dinner	
/ʊ/	foot	could	pull
/u:/	do	shoe	through
/e/	red	head	said
/ə/	arrive	father	colour
/ɜ:/	turn	bird	work
/ɔ:/	sort	thought	walk
/æ/	cat	black	
/ʌ/	sun	enough	wonder
/ɒ/	got	watch	sock
/ɑ:/	part	heart	laugh
/eɪ/	name	late	aim
/aɪ/	my	idea	time
/ɔɪ/	boy	noise	
/eə/	pair	where	bear
/ɪə/	hear	beer	
/əʊ/	go	home	show
/aʊ/	out	cow	
/ʊə/	pure	fewer	

## Consonant sounds

Symbol	Examples		
p	put		
b	book		
t	take		
d	dog		
k	car	kick	
g	go	guarantee	
tʃ	catch	church	
dʒ	age	lounge	
f	for	cough	
v	love	vehicle	
θ	thick	path	
ð	this	mother	
s	since	rice	
z	zoo	houses	
ʃ	shop	sugar	machine
ʒ	pleasure	usual	vision
h	hear	hotel	
m	make		
n	name	now	
ŋ	bring		
l	look	while	
r	road		
j	young		
w	wear		

# Pronunciation problems

when 'a' is /e/	when 'u' is /ʌ/	when 'i' is /aɪ/	when 'o' or 'oo' is /ʌ/
pa <u>ti</u> ent	pu <u>n</u> ctual	pi <u>l</u> ot	gl <u>o</u> ves
<u>A</u> sia	lu <u>g</u> gage	vi <u>r</u> us	<u>o</u> ven
da <u>n</u> gerous	hu <u>n</u> gry	di <u>a</u> l	mo <u>n</u> th
pa <u>v</u> ement	di <u>s</u> cuss	he <u>p</u> atitis	fr <u>o</u> nt
ba <u>co</u> n	fu <u>n</u> ction	mi <u>n</u> us	mo <u>n</u> key
ph <u>ra</u> se	pu <u>b</u> lish	li <u>ce</u> nce	g <u>o</u> vernment
eng <u>a</u> ged	cu <u>s</u> tom <u>s</u>	di <u>e</u> t	w <u>o</u> rry
su <u>n</u> ba <u>th</u> e	lu <u>ck</u>	stri <u>p</u> ed	fl <u>oo</u> d
la <u>t</u> ely	ba <u>n</u> kru <u>p</u> t	ti <u>n</u> y	bl <u>oo</u> d

When ow is /əʊ/, e.g. row (= line), throw, blow, show, know, elbow

When ou or ow is /aʊ/, e.g. lounge, drought, row (= argument), towel, allowed, blouse, shower

When ou is /u:/, e.g. soup, group, through, wound, souvenir, routine

When ou is /ʌ/, e.g. cousin, couple, trouble, tough, rough, enough

When a, au or aw is /ɔ:/, e.g. draw, raw, law, stall, fall, cause, audience, launch, exhausted

When a or au is /ɑ:/, e.g. vase, calm, laugh, draughty, half

When a or u is /ɪ/, e.g. busy, business, minute, lettuce, purchase, surface, orange, damage

When o is /u:/, e.g. move, prove, improve, lose

When or or ur is /ɜ:/, e.g. purple, burn, burglary, worth, work, curtain

When ea is /e/, e.g. dreadful, jealous, health, dead, bread, instead, pleasant, weather, weapon

**Silent letters** (the underlined letters are silent):

island, knee, knife, know, knock, knowledge, wrong, wrist, muscle, castle, whistle, fasten, listen, bombh, lamh, thumh, combh, scissors, psychology, honest, hour, cupboard, answer, guess, handsome, aisle, half, calm, Christmas, mortgage

**Short syllables** (the underlined letters often disappear or are only /ə/):

fattening, miserable, comfortable, fashionable, restaurant, strawberry, eventually, parliament, actually, occasionally, prisoner, medicine, favourite, temperature, literature

**Problem pairs:**

quite /kwaɪt/ and quiet /kwaɪət/      desert /dezət/ and dessert /dɛ'zɜ:t/      soup /su:p/ and soap /səʊp/

**Note:**

The pronunciation of these letters at the end of words is often like this:

-ous /əs/, e.g. famous, dangerous, unconscious, ambitious, cautious, jealous

-age /ɪdʒ/, e.g. luggage, baggage, village, damage, cabbage, bandage, message, manage

-able /əbl/, e.g. comfortable, reliable, suitable, unbreakable, vegetable, fashionable, miserable

-are /eə/, e.g. care, spare, square, beware, stare, fare, aware, rare(ly), barely

-ile /aɪl/, e.g. fragile, mobile, file, while

-tory/tary /təri/, e.g. directory, history, secretary, documentary

-ture /tʃə/, e.g. picture, signature, departure, capture, temperature, literature, feature

-ate /eɪt/ at the end of verbs, e.g. educate, operate, communicate

-ate /ət/ at the end of nouns and adjectives, e.g. graduate, approximate, certificate

# Index

The numbers in the Index are Unit numbers not page numbers.

- a day (an hour a day) /ə deɪ/ 1  
a long time ago 93  
about /ə'baʊt/ 48, 98  
about (the film's about ...) /ə'baʊt/ 76  
above /ə'bvʌv/ 37  
abroad /ə'brɔ:d/ 71  
absolutely /,æbsə'lju:tli/ 36  
accident /'æksɪdɪnt/ 67  
according to /ə'kɔ:dn̩ tu:/ 18, 78  
accountant /ə'kaʊntənt/ 70  
ache /eɪk/ 2, 59  
across /ə'krɒs/ 37  
action film /'ækjən fɪlm/ 76  
active volcano /,æktɪv vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 43  
activity /æk'tɪvətɪ/ 7  
actor /'æktə/ 7, 76  
ad/advert /æd/ 'ædvɜ:t/ 78, 100  
addition /ə'dɪʃən/ 94  
adjective /'ædʒektɪv/ 4  
admit (+ -ing) /əd'mɪt/ 34  
adolescence /,ædəl'esəns/ 52  
adolescent /,ædəl'esənt/ 52  
adult /'ædʌlt/ 52  
adverb /'ædvɜ:b/ 4  
advice /əd'vaɪs/ 3, 27, 33  
advise /əd'vaɪz/ 69  
advise (somebody + inf) /əd,vaɪz/ 35  
afford (I can't afford ...)  
/ə'fɔ:d/ 58  
afraid (of something/somebody)  
/ə'freɪd/ 14  
after (+ -ing) /'ɑ:ftə/ 39  
after that /,ɑ:ftə 'ðæt/ 39  
afterwards /'ɑ:ftəwɜ:dz/ 39  
against (the law) /ə,genst/ 84, 85  
age /eɪdʒ/ 48  
agenda /ə'dʒendə/ 72  
aggressive /ə'ɡresɪv/ 65  
agree (I agree with you) /ə'ɡri:/ 14, 18  
agriculture /'ægrɪkʌltʃə/ 66, 83  
ahead (of us) /ə'hed/ 43  
AIDS /eɪdz/ 100  
aim /eɪm/ 73  
air force /eə fɔ:s/ 70  
airport /'eəpɔ:t/ 68  
aisle /aɪl/ 76  
alarm clock /ə'lɑ:m klɒk/ 56  
album (new/latest album) /'ælbəm/ 77  
all over the floor 56  
all over the place 13  
allow (somebody to do something)  
/ə'laʊ/ 34, 85  
almost /'ɔ:lməʊst/ 38  
alone /ə'ləʊn/ 53  
along /ə'lɒŋ/ 37, 67  
also /'ɔ:lsoʊ/ 40  
although /ɔ:l'ðəʊ/ 40  
always /'ɔ:lweɪz/ 38  
ambitious /æm'bɪʃəs/ 49  
ambulance /'æmbjələns/ 60  
American /ə'merɪkən/ 46  
and for another (thing) 39  
and so on /ən 'səʊ ɒn/ 100  
anger /'æŋɡə/ 50  
angry /'æŋɡri/ 50  
ankle /'æŋkl/ 47  
answer (n, v) /'ɑ:nsə/ 9  
answerphone /'ɑ:nsəfəʊn/ 80  
ant /ænt/ 45  
any time (after 10) /'eni taɪm/ 98  
anyway /'eniweɪ/ 39  
apart from /ə'pɑ:t frəm/ 41  
apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/ 92  
aperitif /ə,perə'ti:f/ 90  
apologise (for something)  
/ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ 14, 16, 35  
apology /ə'pɒlədʒɪ/ 16  
appear /ə'piə/ 6  
appear (+ inf) 34  
apple /'æpl/ 63  
application (form) /,æplɪ'keɪʃən/ 87  
apply for a job /ə'plai/ 14, 71  
appointment /ə'pɔɪntmənt/ 72  
apprehend /,æprɪ'hend/ 99  
approximately /ə'prɒksɪmətli/ 98  
Arabic /'ærəbɪk/ 46  
architect /'ɑ:kɪtekt/ 70  
architecture /'ɑ:kɪtektʃə/ 83  
Are you married? 20  
Argentina /,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə/ 46  
Argentinian /,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən/ 46  
arithmetic /ə'riθmətɪk/ 94  
arm /ɑ:m/ 47  
armchair /,ɑ:m'tʃeə/ 55  
armed /ɑ:md/ 85  
armed forces /,ɑ:md' fɔ:sɪz/ 70  
army /'ɑ:mi/ 70  
around /ə'raʊnd/ 98  
arrange (meetings) /ə'reɪndʒ/ 72  
arrest /ə'rest/ 84  
art gallery /'ɑ:t ,gæləri/ 91  
article (definite/indefinite)  
/'ɑ:tɪkl/ 4  
article (in a paper) 78  
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ 7  
as (= because) /æz/ 42  
as (= when) 39  
as a result 42  
as long as 42  
as soon as 39  
as well 40  
ask (somebody + inf) /ɑ:sk/ 35  
ask (somebody + wh- word) 35  
ask (somebody for something) 35  
assassinate /ə'sæsɪneɪt/ 88  
asthma /'æsmə/ 59  
astonishing/astonished /ə'stɒnɪʃɪŋ  
/ə'stɒnɪʃt/ 36  
at (8.00) /æt/ 93  
at (the bus stop) 37  
at all (e.g. I don't like it at all)  
/ət 'ɔ:l/ 18  
at Christmas/Easter/the weekend/  
night 93  
at first /ət 'fɜ:st/ 76  
at home /ət 'həʊm/ 57  
at least /ət 'li:st/ 1  
at night /ət 'naɪt/ 15  
at the end 15  
at the moment 15  
athletics (track) /æθ'letɪks/ 75  
attend (meetings) /ətend/ 69, 72  
attractive /ə'træktɪv/ 8, 48  
aubergine /'əʊbəʒi:n/ 63  
audience /'ɔ:diəns/ 76  
aunt /ɑ:nt/ 51  
available (rooms) /ə'veɪləbl/ 90  
avoid /ə'vɔɪd/ 85  
avoid (+ -ing) 34  
aware of (the problem) /ə'weə əv'  
14  
awful /'ɔ:fəl/ 2, 36, 76  
BA/BSc /,bi:'eɪ/ ,bi:es'si:/ 83  
babysitter /'beɪbɪ,sɪtə/ 10  
back (v) /bæk/ 78  
back-up (copy) /'bækʌp/ 81  
backache /'bækeɪk/ 59

- background /'bækgraʊnd/ 76  
backing group /'bækɪŋ gru:p/ 77  
bad (at something) /'bæd/ 14  
badly-behaved /,bædli'beɪvd/ 11  
badly-dressed /,bædli'drest/ 11  
bag /bæg/ 5  
bag (of shopping) 32  
baggage reclaim /'bæɡɪdʒ rɪ,kleɪm/ 89  
bake /beɪk/ 64  
balcony /'bælkəni/ 54  
bald (go bald) /bɔ:ld/ 30  
ballet dancer /'bæleɪ ,du:nsə/ 7  
banana /bə'nɑ:nə/ 63  
band (rock/pop) /bænd/ 77  
bandage /'bændɪdʒ/ 60  
bankrupt (go bankrupt) /'bæŋkrʌpt/ 30  
barrister /'bærɪstə/ 84  
baseball /'beɪsbɔ:l/ 74  
basketball /'bɑ:skɪtbɔ:l/ 74  
bass guitarist /,beɪs ɡɪ'tu:ɪst/ 77  
bat /bæt/ 74  
bath /bɑ:θ/ 56  
bathroom /'bɑ:θrʊm/ 55, 56  
BBC /,bi:bi:'si:/ 100  
be (really) into something 19  
be back (= return) /bi: 'bæk/ 80  
be delayed / held up /bi: dɪ'leɪd, held 'ʌp/ 16  
be out (= available to buy) /bi: 'aʊt/ 77  
be out (= not at home) 80  
beach /bi:tʃ/ 92  
beach (umbrella) 92  
bear /beə/ 45  
beard /bɪəd/ 48  
beat (= win) /bi:t/ 74  
beat somebody up /,bi:t 'ʌp/ 60  
beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfəl/ 48  
because (of) /bi:'kɔ:z/ 42  
bed /bed/ 56  
bed & breakfast (B&B) /,bed ən 'brekfəst/ 90  
bedroom /'bedrʊm/ 10, 55, 56  
bedside table /,bedsaɪd 'teɪbl/ 56  
bee /bi:/ 45  
beef /bi:f/ 63  
before (+ -ing) /bɪ'fɔ:/ 39  
behind /bɪ'haɪnd/ 37  
beige /beɪʒ/ 96  
belief /bɪ'li:f/ 86  
believe (in something) /bɪ'li:v/ 86  
belong (to somebody) /bɪ'lɒŋ/ 14, 54  
below /bɪ'ləʊ/ 37  
belt /belt/ 61  
bend (n, v) /bend/ 67  
best friend /,best 'frend/ 51  
between /bɪ'twi:n/ 37  
beware (of pickpockets) /bɪ,wəə/ 97  
bicycle /'baɪsɪkl/ 68  
bid (= try) /bɪd/ 78  
big /bɪɡ/ 95  
bike /baɪk/ 99, 100  
bill (pay the bill) /bɪl/ 90  
billion /'bɪljən/ 94  
biology /baɪ'ɒlədʒi/ 82  
birth certificate /'bɜ:θ sə,tɪfɪkət/ 87  
bit (a bit tired/nervous, etc.) /bɪt/ 38, 98  
bit (a bit of advice/luck, etc.) 32  
bite (your nails) /baɪt/ 47  
bitter /bɪtə/ 64  
bitterly disappointed /'bɪtəli ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ 12  
black coffee /,blæk 'kɒfi/ 2.  
blame (somebody for something) /bleɪm/ 35  
blank piece of paper 1  
blanket /'blæŋkɪt/ 56  
bleed /bli:d/ 60  
bless you /'bles ju:/ 22  
blind (go blind) /blaɪnd/ 30  
blinds /blaɪndz/ 55  
block (the road) /blɒk/ 67  
block (of flats) 54  
blond(e) hair /,blɒnd 'heə/ 2, 48  
blood /blʌd/ 60  
blouse /blaʊz/ 61  
blow your nose /bləʊ jɔ: 'nəʊz/ 47, 59  
board (blackboard/whiteboard) /bɔ:d/ 5, 100  
board a plane /,bɔ:d ə 'pleɪn/ 89  
board pen /'bɔ:d ,pen/ 5  
boarding card /'bɔ:dɪŋ ,kɑ:d/ 89  
boil /bɔɪl/ 64  
boiling /'bɔɪlɪŋ/ 44  
bold /bɔ:ld/ 1  
book (a room/seat) /bʊk/ 76, 90  
boots /bu:tɪz/ 61, 74  
boring/bored /'bɔ:ɪŋ/bɔ:d/ 36  
born (I was born ...) /bɔ:n/ 52  
borrow /'bɒrəʊ/ 5, 58  
boss /bɒs/ 71  
both /bəʊθ/ 41  
bother (I don't bother to ...) /'bɒðə/ 53  
bottle (of water) /'bɒtl/ 32  
bottom (= part of the body) /'bɒtəm/ 47  
bowl (of sugar) /bɔ:l/ 32  
box (theatre) /bɒks/ 76  
box (of chocolates) 32  
box office /'bɒks ,ɒfɪs/ 10  
boxing (ring/gloves) /'bɒksɪŋ/ 75  
boyfriend /'bɔɪfrend/ 52  
brackets /'brækɪts/ 1, 4  
brake (n, v) (put on the brakes) /breɪk/ 9, 67  
branch (of a tree) /brɑ:nʃ/ 66  
brand-new /,brænd'nju:/ 11  
Brazil /brə'zɪl/ 46  
Brazilian /brə'zɪliən/ 46  
break (v) /breɪk/ 27, 57  
break (n) 53, 82  
break (take a break) 26  
break a record 27  
break an arm/leg 60  
break down (= stop working) 24, 67  
break even 73  
break in(to) 24, 85  
break somebody's heart 27  
break the law 27, 84, 85  
break the news 27  
breathe (in and out) /bri:ð/ 47  
breeze /bri:z/ 44, 92  
bricklayer /'brɪk,leɪə/ 70  
bridge /brɪdʒ/ 67  
briefcase /'brɪ:fkeɪs/ 5, 72  
bright (= intelligent) /braɪt/ 99  
brilliant /'brɪljənt/ 76  
brilliant idea /,brɪljənt aɪ'dɪə/ 18  
bring (versus take) /brɪŋ/ 30  
Britain /'brɪtən/ 46  
British /'brɪtɪʃ/ 46  
broad shoulders /,brɔ:d 'ʃəʊldəz/ 48  
broad-minded /,brɔ:d'maɪndɪd/ 49  
broccoli /'brɒkəli/ 63  
broken /'brəʊkən/ 72  
brother-in-law /'brʌðərɪnlɔ:/ 10, 51  
brown (= have a suntan) /braʊn/ 92  
browse /braʊz/ 81  
bruise (n, v) /bru:z/ 60  
brush (my teeth) /brʌʃ/ 53  
build /bɪld/ 70  
build (medium build) 48  
bump into (somebody) /,bʌmp 'ɪntu:/ 60  
bunch (of flowers/grapes) /bʌŋʃ/ 32  
bureaucracy /bjʊ'rɒkrəsi/ 87

bureaucrat /'bjʊərəkræt/ 87  
 burglar /'bɜːglə/ 85  
 burglar alarm /'bɜːglə ə,lɑːm/ 85  
 burglary /'bɜːgləri/ 85  
 burn (n, v) /bɜːn/ 60  
 burn (v) 57  
 bus /bʌs/ 68  
 bus driver /'bʌs ,draɪvə/ 7, 10  
 bus station /'bʌs ,steɪʃən/ 68  
 bus stop /'bʌs ,stɒp/ 10, 68  
 business studies /'biznis ,stʌdiz/ 83  
 busy /'bɪzi/ 90  
 but /bʌt/ 40  
 butcher /'bʊtʃə/ 62  
 butterfly /'bʌtəflaɪ/ 45  
 button /'bʌtən/ 61  
 buy /baɪ/ 70  
 by (a book by Dickens, etc.) /baɪ/ 15  
 by (10%) 73  
 by (8.15) 93  
 by accident /baɪ 'æksɪdənt/ 15  
 by bus/car/taxi, etc. 15, 68  
 by chance (meet somebody by chance) /baɪ 'tʃɑːns/ 15  
 by hand (made by hand) /baɪ 'hænd/ 15  
 by mistake (take something by mistake) /baɪ mɪ'steɪk/ 15  
 by myself /baɪ maɪ'self/ 15  
  
 cabbage /'kæbɪdʒ/ 63  
 cabin crew /'kæbɪn kruː/ 89  
 cable TV /'keɪbl ,ti:'viː/ 79  
 calculator /'kælkjələtə/ 72, 94  
 calendar /'kæləndə/ 72  
 calf /kɔːf/ 63  
 call (n) (local/international) /kɔːl/ 80  
 calm (sea) /kɑːm/ 92  
 camel /'kæməl/ 45  
 camping (go/do a lot of) /kæmpɪŋ/ 75  
 can (of cola) /kæn/ 32  
 cancel /'kænsəl/ 16  
 can't stand /,kɑːnt stænd/ 19  
 can't stand (+ -ing) 34  
 capital (city) /'kæpɪtəl/ 46  
 capital punishment 85  
 captain (= pilot) /'kæptɪn/ 89  
 car /kɑː/ 68  
 car park /'kɑː puːk/ 65  
 career /kə'reɪə/ 71  
 careful /'keəfəl/ 8, 35  
 careless /'keələs/ 8

Caribbean (the Caribbean) /,kæri'biːən/ 46  
 carpenter /'kɑːpəntə/ 70  
 carpet /'kɑːpɪt/ 55  
 carrot /'kærət/ 63  
 carry a gun /'kæri/ 85  
 carry on 3, 23  
 carton (of orange juice) /'kɑːtən/ 32  
 case (= suitcase) /keɪs/ 100  
 cash desk /'kæʃ ,desk/ 62  
 cash machine /'kæʃ mə'ʃiːn/ 10  
 cassette /kə'set/ 5  
 cassette recorder /kə'set rɪkɔːdə/ 5  
 castle /'kɑːsl/ 91  
 catch (I didn't catch that) /kætʃ/ 28  
 catch a ball 28, 74  
 catch a bus/train 12, 28, 68  
 catch a cold/flu 28  
 catch a criminal 28, 84  
 catch (somebody doing something) 28  
 cathedral /kə'thiːdrəl/ 91  
 cauliflower /'kɒlt ,flaʊə/ 63  
 CD (compact disc) /,si:'diː/ 100  
 CD player /,si:'diː ,pleɪə/ 55  
 CD-ROM /,si:'diː'rɒm/ 81  
 celery /'seləri/ 63  
 cellist /'tʃelɪst/ 77  
 cello /'tʃeləʊ/ 77  
 central heating /,sentrəl 'hiːtɪŋ/ 54  
 century /'sentʃəri/ 93  
 certificate (exam/marriage) /sə'tɪfɪkət/ 87  
 chalk /tʃɔːk/ 5  
 change (bus/train) /tʃeɪndʒ/ 68  
 change (into other clothes) 61  
 change my mind 13  
 changing room /'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ruːm/ 62  
 channel (TV) /'tʃænəl/ 79  
 charge (money) /tʃɑːdʒ/ 58  
 charge (somebody with a crime) 84  
 chat (n, v) /tʃæt/ 9  
 chat room /'tʃæt ,ruːm/ 10  
 chat show /'tʃæt ,ʃəʊ/ 79  
 cheap /tʃiːp/ 58  
 check (= examine) /tʃek/ 87, 89  
 check (adj) 96  
 check in (v) /tʃek 'ɪn/ 90  
 check out (v) /tʃek 'aʊt/ 90  
 check (the meaning) 3  
 check-in (desk) /'tʃekɪn/ 89  
 cheek /tʃiːk/ 47  
 cheers /tʃɪəz/ 22, 99  
 chemist /'kemɪst/ 59, 62

chemistry /'kemɪstri/ 82  
 cherry /'tʃeri/ 63  
 chest /tʃest/ 47  
 chest of drawers /tʃest əv 'drɔːz/ 56  
 chicken /'tʃɪkɪn/ 63  
 childhood /'tʃaɪldhʊd/ 52  
 chilled /tʃɪld/ 64  
 chilly /'tʃɪli/ 44  
 chimney /'tʃɪmni/ 54  
 chin /tʃɪn/ 47  
 China /tʃaɪnə/ 46  
 Chinese /tʃaɪ'niːz/ 46  
 choice /tʃɔɪs/ 1, 3  
 choir /'kwaɪə/ 77  
 choose /tʃuːz/ 1, 3  
 chop (v) /tʃɒp/ 63  
 circle /'sɜːkl/ 96  
 circle (theatre) 76  
 circuit (racing) /'sɜːkɪt/ 75  
 circulation /,sɜːkjə'leɪʃən/ 78  
 civil war /,sɪvəl 'wɔː/ 88  
 civilian /sɪ'vɪliən/ 88  
 clap /klæp/ 50  
 classical music /,klæsɪkəl 'mjuːzɪk/ 77  
 classmate /'klɑːsmet/ 51  
 clean (v, adj) /kliːn/ 9  
 clean (v) 5  
 clean my teeth 53, 56  
 cleaner /'kliːnə/ 53  
 clever /'klevə/ 49  
 client /'klaɪənt/ 69  
 cliff(s) /klɪf(s)/ 92  
 climb /klaɪm/ 54  
 close down /,kləʊz 'daʊn/ 6  
 close (to the station) /kləʊs/ 54  
 close (friend/family) 51  
 cloud /klaʊd/ 44  
 cloudy /'klaʊdi/ 8, 44  
 club (football/golf) /klʌb/ 74, 75  
 coach (type of transport) /kəʊtʃ/ 68  
 coat /kəʊt/ 61  
 coffee table /'kɒfi ,teɪbl/ 55  
 coin /kɔɪn/ 58  
 cold (n, adj) /kəʊld/ 9  
 cold (= illness) 59  
 collar /'kɒlə/ 61  
 colleague /'kɒliːg/ 51, 72  
 colour /'kɒlə/ 96  
 comb (your hair) /,kəʊm/ 47  
 come across (= seem) /,kʌm ə'krɒs/ 49  
 come from (I come from Argentina) /'kʌm frəm/ 46

come in /,kʌm 'ɪn/ 24  
 come out (= publish) /,kʌm 'aʊt/ 78  
 come out (the sun came out) 44  
 come round (= become conscious) /,kʌm 'raʊnd/ 60  
 come round (= visit) 53  
 come (versus go) 30  
 comedy /'kɒmədi/ 76  
 comedy series /'kɒmədi ,sɪəri:z/ 79  
 comfortable /'kʌmfətəbl/ 8  
 coming in the opposite direction /,kʌmɪŋ ɪn ði: 'ɒpəzɪt dɪ'rekʃən/ 67  
 comma /'kɒmə/ 4  
 commence /kə'mens/ 99  
 commercial centre /kə,mɜ:ʃəl 'sentə/ 65  
 commit a crime /kə,mɪt ə 'kraɪm/ 84, 85  
 common sense /,kɒmən 'sens/ 49  
 communism /'kɒmjənɪzəm/ 86  
 communist /'kɒmjənɪst/ 86  
 commuter /kə'mju:tə/ 65  
 compare /kəm'peə/ 41  
 compared with/to /kəm'peəd wɪð/ tu:/ 41  
 comparison /kəm'pærɪsən/ 41  
 competitive /kəm'petɪtɪv/ 75  
 complain (to somebody/about something) /kəm'pleɪn/ 14, 35  
 complaint /kəm'pleɪnt/ 69  
 complete opposite /kəm'pli:t 'ɒpəzɪt/ 75  
 completely different /kəm'pli:tli 'dɪfərənt/ 41  
 complex (plot) /'kɒmpleks/ 76  
 composer /kəm'pəʊzə/ 77  
 computer /kəm'pjʊ:tə/ 72  
 computer operator 7  
 conductor (music) /kən'dʌktə/ 77  
 confusing/confused /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ /kən'fju:zd/ 36  
 congested /kən'dʒestɪd/ 65  
 congratulations /kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz/ 22  
 connect /kə'nekt/ 81  
 conservatism /kən'sɜ:vətɪzəm/ 86  
 conservative /kən'sɜ:vətɪv/ 86  
 conserve /kən'sɜ:v/ 88  
 contestant /kən'testənt/ 79  
 continent /'kɒntɪnənt/ 43  
 cooker /'kʊkə/ 55  
 cool (somebody) down /,ku:l 'daʊn/ 92

cope with (something/somebody) /'kəʊp wɪð/ 65  
 copy /'kɒpi/ 81  
 correct (v) /kə'rekt/ 5  
 cosmopolitan /,kɒzmə'pɒlɪtən/ 65, 91  
 cost (v) /kɒst/ 58  
 cost a fortune /,kɒst ə 'fɔ:tʃu:n/ 58  
 cost of living /,kɒst əv 'lɪvɪŋ/ 58, 65  
 cottage /'kɒtɪdʒ/ 66  
 cough /kɒf/ 59  
 Could I speak to ...? /'kʊd aɪ ,spi:k tu:/ 80  
 Could I/you (possibly) ...? 17  
 counter (meat/fish) /'kaʊntə/ 62  
 country /'kʌntri/ 43  
 country of origin /,kʌntri əv 'ɒrɪdʒɪn/ 87  
 countryside /'kʌntrɪsaɪd/ 66  
 courgette /kə:'ʒet/ 63  
 course (food in a restaurant) /kɔ:s/ 59  
 court (tennis) /kɔ:t/ 74  
 court (justice) 84  
 courteous /'kɔ:tiəs/ 3  
 cousin /'kʌzən/ 51  
 cover (v) /'kʌvə/ 1  
 cover the cost (of something) /,kʌvə ðə 'kɒst/ 83  
 crab /kræb/ 63  
 crash (computer) /kræʃ/ 81  
 crash helmet /'kræʃ ,helmət/ 75  
 crash into /,kræʃ 'ɪntə/ 67  
 cream (medicine) /kri:m/ 60  
 creative /kri'eɪtɪv/ 8  
 creature /'kri:tʃə/ 45  
 credit card /'kredɪt kɑ:d/ 10  
 crime prevention /,kraɪm prɪ'venʃən/ 85  
 crime rate /'kraɪm reɪt/ 65  
 criminal /'krɪmɪnəl/ 85  
 critic /'krɪtɪk/ 76  
 crops /krɒps/ 66  
 crowd /kraʊd/ 74  
 crowded /kraʊdɪd/ 65  
 cry /kraɪ/ 47  
 cucumber /'kju:kʌmbə/ 63  
 cultural activity /,kʌltʃrəl æk'tɪvəti/ 65  
 cup /kʌp/ 55  
 cup (of coffee) 32  
 cupboard /'kʌbəd/ 55  
 curly hair /,kɜ:li 'heə/ 48  
 currency /'kʌrənsi/ 58  
 current affairs /,kʌrənt ə'feɪz/ 79

curtain (theatre) /'kɜ:tən/ 76  
 curtains /'kɜ:tənz/ 55  
 cut (n, v) (= injure) /kʌt/ 57, 60  
 cut (= reduce) 78  
 cut (= remove) 81  
 cut (oneself) 57  
 cut (something) down /,kʌt 'daʊn/ 88  
 CV (curriculum vitae) /,si:'vi:/ 100  
 cycle (v) /'saɪkl/ 68  
 cyclist /'saɪklɪst/ 68  
 daily /'deɪli/ 78  
 damaged (badly damaged) /'dæmɪdʒd/ 67  
 dangerous /'deɪndʒərəs/ 8, 65  
 dark /dɑ:k/ 54  
 dark (colour) 96  
 dark skin /,dɑ:k 'skɪn/ 48  
 date /deɪt/ 94  
 date (of arrival/departure) 87  
 date of birth /,deɪt əv 'bɜ:θ/ 87  
 deaf (go deaf) /'def/ 30  
 deal with (something/somebody) /di:l wɪð/ 69  
 decade /'dekeɪd/ 93  
 decide (+ inf) /dɪ'saɪd/ 34  
 decimal /'desɪməl/ 94  
 deep /di:p/ 95  
 defendant /dɪ'fendənt/ 84  
 define /dɪ'faɪn/ 1  
 definite article /,defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkl/ 4  
 degree (do/have/get) /dɪ'ɡri:/ 83  
 degrees (e.g. centigrade) /dɪ'ɡri:z/ 44  
 delay /dɪ'leɪ/ 11, 89  
 delayed (be/get delayed) /dɪ'leɪd/ 16  
 delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ 36  
 delighted /dɪ'laɪtɪd/ 36  
 demands /dɪ'mə:ndz/ 88  
 democracy /dɪ'mɒkrəsi/ 86  
 democrat /'deməkɹæt/ 86  
 democratic /,demə'krætɪk/ 86  
 dentist /'dentɪst/ 70  
 deny (+ -ing) /dɪ'naɪ/ 34  
 department (university) /dɪ'pu:tmənt/ 83  
 department store /dɪ'pu:tmənt stɔ:/ 62  
 departure (board/lounge/time) /dɪ'pu:tʃə/ 89  
 depend (it depends on) /dɪ'pend/ 3  
 depend on (somebody/something) 14

depressing/depressed /di'presɪŋ/di'prest/ 36  
 depth /depθ/ 95  
 desert /'dezət/ 43  
 design /di'zain/ 70, 96  
 desk /desk/ 72  
 despite (the fact that) /di'spaɪt/ 40  
 dessert /di'zɜ:t/ 64, 90  
 destination /,destɪ'neɪʃən/ 89  
 destroy /di'strɔɪ/ 43, 88  
 destruction /di'strʌkʃən/ 88  
 dial /daɪəl/ 80  
 dialling code /'daɪəlɪŋ ,kəʊd/ 80  
 diamond /'daɪəməʊnd/ 96  
 diarrhoea /,daɪə'riə/ 59  
 diary /'daɪəri/ 72  
 dictator /dɪk'teɪtə/ 86  
 dictatorship /dɪk'teɪtəʃɪp/ 86  
 diet (n, v) (go on a diet) /daɪət/ 9  
 different from /'dɪfərənt frɒm/ 14, 41  
 dimension /,daɪ'menʃən/ 95  
 dining room /daɪnɪŋ ru:m/ 10, 55  
 director (film/theatre) /di'rektə/ 76  
 dirty /'dɜ:ti/ 3, 8, 65  
 disagree /,dɪsə'grɪ:/ 6, 18  
 disappear /,dɪsə'piə/ 6  
 disappointing/disappointed /,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ/,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd/ 36  
 disaster /di'zʌ:stə/ 43, 88  
 disaster movie /di'zʌ:stə ,mu:vi/ 36  
 discuss /di'skʌs/ 7, 35  
 discussion /di'skʌʃən/ 7  
 disease /di'zi:z/ 59  
 disgusting /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/ 18  
 dishonest /di'sɒnɪst/ 6, 49  
 dishwasher /'dɪʃ,wɒʃə/ 10, 55  
 disk (hard/floppy) /dɪsk/ 81  
 dislike /dɪ'slaɪk/ 6  
 dismiss somebody /dɪ'smɪs/ 71  
 distance /'dɪstəns/ 95  
 divide (arithmetic) /dɪ'vaɪd/ 94  
 divided (into) 82  
 diving /'daɪvɪŋ/ 92  
 division /dɪ'vɪʒən/ 94  
 do (my) homework /du: 'həʊmwɜ:k/ 3, 26  
 do (the) housework /du: 'həʊswɜ:k/ 26  
 do (my) packing /du: 'pækɪŋ/ 6  
 do a bit/a lot of sightseeing 91  
 do a course 26  
 do a degree 83  
 do a sport 75  
 do a subject 26, 82, 83

do an exam 82  
 do an exercise 1  
 do not lean our of the window 97  
 do not leave bags unattended 97  
 do research (in/inro) 26  
 do somebody a favour 26  
 do something/nothing 26  
 do the shopping 26, 62  
 do up (your jacket) 61  
 do well/badly 26, 82  
 Do you think you could ...? /du: ju: θɪŋk ju: kʊd/ 17  
 doctor /'dɒktə/ 70  
 document /'dɒkjəmənt/ 81, 87  
 documentary /,dɒkjə'mentəri/ 79  
 dollar /'dɒlə/ 58  
 don't worry /,dɒnt 'wəri/ 16  
 doorbell /'dɔ:bel/ 54  
 dope (= drugs) /dəʊp/ 99  
 double room /'dʌbl ,ru:m/ 90  
 doubt (I doubt it) /daʊt/ 21  
 down /daʊn/ 37  
 down (= not working) 72  
 download /,daʊn'ləʊd/ 81  
 Dr /'dɒktə/ 100  
 drama series /'drʌ:mə ,sɪəri:z/ 79  
 draughty /'drʌ:ftɪ/ 54  
 draw (n, v) (= the same score) /drɔ:/ 74  
 drawer(s) /drɔ:z/ 72  
 dreadful /'dredfəl/ 36, 76  
 dream (n, v) (have a dream) /dri:m/ 9  
 drive(r) /'draɪvə/ 68  
 driving licence /draɪvɪŋ ,laɪsəns/ 87  
 drizzle /'drɪzl/ 44  
 drop (v) /drɒp/ 57, 73  
 drop (of milk) 32  
 drop (v) (= stop) 68  
 drought /draʊt/ 88  
 drown /draʊn/ 43  
 drummer /'drʌmə/ 77  
 drums /drʌmz/ 77  
 dry weather /,draɪ 'weðə/ 12  
 dry wine /,draɪ 'waɪn/ 12  
 dub (dubbed) /dʌb/ 76  
 due to (arrive) /'dju: tu:/ 68  
 due to (= because of) 42  
 during /'dʒʊərɪŋ/ 93  
 duty free /,dʒu:ti 'fri:/ 89  
 DVD /,di:,vi: 'di:/ 81  
 e-mail /'i:meɪl/ 72  
 e-mail (send/check) 81  
 e-mail address /'i:meɪl ə,dres/ 81

e.g. /,i: 'dʒi:/ 100  
 eagle /'i:gl/ 45  
 earache /'ɪərəɪk/ 59  
 early night /,ɜ:li 'naɪt/ 13  
 earn /ɜ:n/ 69, 71  
 earrings /'ɪərɪŋz/ 10, 61  
 earth /ɜ:θ/ 43  
 earthquake /'ɜ:θkweɪk/ 43, 88  
 easy-going /,i:zi'gəʊɪŋ/ 11, 49  
 economic policy /,i:kə,nɒmɪk 'pɒləsi/ 86  
 economical /,i:kə'nɒmɪkəl/ 8  
 economist /'i:kɒnə'mɪst/ 7  
 editor /'edɪtə/ 78  
 Egypt /'i:dzɪpt/ 46  
 Egyptian /'i:dzɪptʃən/ 46  
 elbow /'elbəʊ/ 47  
 elderly /'eldəli/ 52  
 elect /'ɪlekt/ 7, 86  
 election (win the election) /'ɪlektʃən/ 7, 86  
 electrical appliances /ɪ,lektɪrɪkəl ə'plɑ:tənsɪz/ 62  
 electrician /,elɪk'trɪʃən/ 70  
 elephant /'elɪfənt/ 45  
 embarrassing/embarrassed /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ɪm'bærəst/ 36  
 embarrassment /ɪm'bærəsəmənt/ 50  
 emergency services /ɪ,mɜ:ʒɪnsɪ 'sɜ:vɪsɪz/ 70  
 emotional /ɪ'məʊʃənəl/ 8  
 employee /ɪm'plɔɪi:/ 71  
 employer /ɪm'plɔɪə/ 7, 71  
 engaged (= busy) /ɪn'geɪdʒd/ 80  
 engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə/ 70  
 engineering /,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ/ 83  
 enjoy (+ -ing) /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/ 2, 34  
 enjoy your meal /ɪn,dʒɔɪ ju: 'mi:l/ 22  
 enjoyable /ɪn'dʒɔɪəbl/ 8  
 enormous /ɪ'nɔ:məs/ 36, 54  
 enough (big enough) /ɪ'nʌf/ 61  
 enrolment form /ɪn'rəʊlmənt ,fɔ:m/ 87  
 enter (university) /'entə/ 83  
 enthusiasm /ɪn'θju:ziəzəm/ 21  
 environment /ɪn'vaɪrənmənt/ 88  
 equator /'i:kweɪtə/ 43  
 equipment /'i:kwɪpmənt/ 33, 74  
 escape /ɪ'skeɪp/ 85  
 etc. /et'setə/ 100  
 EU (European Union) /,i:'ju:/ 100  
 euro /'ju:roʊ/ 58  
 Europe /'juərəp/ 46  
 eventually /ɪ'ventʃuəli/ 39

evidence /'evidəns/ 84  
 ex- (husband/girlfriend, etc.) /eks/ 51  
 exam /ɪg'zæm/ 100  
 examination /ɪg,zæmɪ'neɪʃən/ 83  
 except (for) /ɪk'sept/ 41  
 exception (with the exception of ...) /ɪk'sepʃən/ 41  
 excess baggage /ɪk'ses 'bæɡɪdʒ/ 89  
 exciting/excited /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ /ɪk'saɪtɪd/ 36  
 excuse /ɪk'skju:s/ 16  
 excuse me /ɪk'skju:s mi:/ 22  
 exercise (do/take exercise) /'eksəsaɪz/ 75  
 exhausted/exhausting /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ /ɪg'zɔ:stɪŋ/ 36  
 expand /ɪk'spænd/ 73  
 expect (= think) (+ inf) /ɪk'spekt/ 34  
 expecting (a baby) /ɪk'spektɪŋ/ 52  
 expenditure /ɪk'spendɪtʃə/ 73  
 expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ 58  
 expire /ɪk'spaɪə/ 87  
 explain (+ wh- word) /ɪk'spleɪn/ 35  
 extremely /ɪk'stri:mli/ 38  
 eyebrow /'aɪbrəʊ/ 47

factory /'fæktəri/ 65, 69, 72  
 fail (an exam) /feɪl/ 82  
 failure /'feɪljə/ 82  
 fair hair /,feə 'heə/ 48  
 fairly /'feəli/ 38  
 fall (n, v) /fɔ:l/ 73  
 fall asleep 53  
 fall in love 52, 76  
 fall out (of the window) 60  
 fall over 23, 57  
 fall slowly/sharply 2  
 family name /'fæməli neɪm/ 51  
 famine /'fæmɪn/ 88  
 famous /'feɪməs/ 8  
 fancy /'fænsi/ 99  
 fancy (Do you fancy going ...?) /'fænsi/ 17  
 far (not far/too far) /fɑ:/ 95  
 Far East (the Far East) /,fɑ:r i:st/ 46  
 fare (bus/air fare) /feə/ 58, 68  
 farewell /,feə'wel/ 22  
 farm /fɑ:m/ 66  
 farmhouse /'fɑ:mhaʊs/ 66  
 farming /'fɑ:mɪŋ/ 66  
 fascinating/fascinated /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/ /'fæsɪneɪtɪd/ 36

fashionable /'fæʃənəbl/ 8  
 fast asleep /,fɑ:st ə'sli:p/ 12  
 fasten (your seat belt) /'fɑ:sən/ 89  
 fat /fæt/ 48, 95  
 father-in-law /'fɑ:ðərɪn,lɔ:/ 51  
 fattening /'fætənɪŋ/ 64  
 fault /fɔ:lt/ 35  
 favour (do somebody a favour) /'feɪvə/ 26  
 favourite (programme) /'feɪvərɪt/ 79  
 fear /fɪə/ 50  
 feed /fi:d/ 53  
 feel /fi:l/ 50  
 feel (it feels soft) /fi:l/ 31  
 feel (I don't feel well) 59  
 feel like (it feels like wool) 31  
 feel like (a drink/going out) 13, 34  
 feeling (a great feeling) /'fi:lɪŋ/ 50  
 feelings (mixed feelings) /'fi:lɪŋz/ 50  
 fence /fens/ 54, 66  
 field /'fi:ld/ 66  
 file (for papers) (n, v) /faɪl/ 5, 72  
 filing cabinet /'faɪlɪŋ,kæbɪnət/ 72  
 fill in (a form) /,fɪl 'ɪn/ 87  
 filling (in tooth) /'fɪlɪŋ/ 59  
 film director /'fɪlm dɪ'rektə/ 7  
 film star /'fɪlm ,stɑ:/ 10, 76  
 finally /'faɪnəli/ 39  
 finance (v) /'faɪnæns/ 73  
 find out /,faɪnd 'aʊt/ 23  
 fine (adj) /faɪn/ 17  
 fine (n) (50 euro fine) 11, 84  
 fine, thanks /'faɪn ,θæŋks/ 20, 22  
 finger /'fɪŋgə/ 2, 47  
 finish (+ -ing) /'fɪnɪʃ/ 34  
 fire brigade /'faɪə brɪ'geɪd/ 70  
 firefighter/fireman /'faɪə,faɪtə/ /'faɪəmən/ 70  
 first(ly) /'fɜ:stli/ 39  
 first impression 49  
 first language 46  
 first name 51  
 first of all /,fɜ:st əv 'ɔ:l/ 39  
 first-class (ticket) /'fɜ:stklɑ:s/ 11  
 fit (adj) (= healthy) /fɪt/ 75  
 fit (v) (right size) /fɪt/ 61  
 fitting room /'fɪtɪŋ ru:m/ 62  
 fix up (= arrange) /,fɪks 'ʌp/ 99  
 fizzy (water) /'fɪzi/ 64  
 flatmate /'flætmeɪt/ 51  
 flats /flæts/ 54  
 flexible /'fleksɪbl/ 49  
 flexitime /'fleksɪtaɪm/ 69

flight /flaɪ/ 68  
 flight attendant /'flaɪ ə,tendənt/ 89  
 flight number /'flaɪ ,nʌmbə/ 89  
 flight of stairs /,flaɪ əv 'steəz/ 54  
 flood /flʌd/ 43, 88  
 floor (on the third floor) /flɔ:/ 54  
 floppy disk /,flɒpi 'dɪsk/ 81  
 flowers /'flaʊəz/ 66  
 flu (= influenza) /flu:/ 59, 100  
 fly (n) (insect) /flaɪ/ 45  
 fly (v) (plane) 68  
 fog /fɒg/ 44  
 foggy /'fɒgi/ 8, 44  
 fold your arms /,fəʊld jɔ:r 'ɑ:mz/ 47  
 food processor /,fu:d 'praʊsesə/ 55  
 foot /fʊt/ 47  
 football /'fʊtbɔ:l/ 74  
 footpath /'fʊtpɑ:θ/ 66  
 for (+ a period of time) /fɔ:/ 93  
 for (a walk/swim/drive/run) 15  
 for ages /fɔr 'eɪdʒɪz/ 93  
 for example /fɔr ɪg'zɑ:mpəl/ 100  
 for one thing 39  
 for the time being 93  
 force (somebody to do something) /fɔ:s/ 34  
 forehead /'fɒrɪd/ 47  
 foreign policy /,fɔrɪn 'pɒləsi/ 86  
 forest /'fɒrɪst/ 43  
 forget /fə'get/ 57  
 forget (+ inf) 34  
 fork /fɔ:k/ 90  
 fortnight /'fɔ:tnaɪt/ 93  
 fortunately /'fɔ:tʃənətli/ 53  
 four-star hotel /,fɔ:,stɑ: hæʊ'tel/ 11  
 fraction /'frækʃən/ 94  
 fragile /'frædʒaɪl/ 97  
 France /frɑ:ns/ 46  
 free /fri:/ 58  
 freezer /'fri:zə/ 55  
 freezing /'fri:zɪŋ/ 36, 44  
 French /frenʃ/ 46  
 frequently /'fri:kwəntli/ 38  
 fresh (bread/fruit) /fref/ 64  
 fresh air /,fref 'eə/ 66  
 fresh challenge /,fref 'tʃælɪndʒ/ 71  
 fridge (= refrigerator) /frɪdʒ/ 55, 100  
 friendly /'frendli/ 49  
 frightened/frightening /'fraɪtənd/'fraɪtənɪŋ/ 36  
 from (23 to 25) /frɒm/ 73  
 front door /,frʌnt 'dɔ:/ 54



front garden /,frʌnt 'gɑ:dən/ 54  
 fruit /fru:t/ 63  
 fry /fraɪ/ 64  
 frying pan /'fraɪŋ pæn/ 10, 55  
 full board /,fʊl 'bɔ:d/ 90  
 full name /,fʊl 'neɪm/ 51  
 full of (something) 14  
 full stop /,fʊl 'stɒp/ 4  
 full up /,fʊl 'ʌp/ 68  
 full-time (end of game) /,fʊl'taɪm/  
 74  
 full-time job 11  
 fully booked /,fʊli 'bʊkt/ 90  
 fun (play for fun) /fʌn/ 75  
 furniture /'fɜ:nɪtʃə/ 33

gale /geɪl/ 44  
 game show /'geɪm ʃəʊ/ 79  
 gang (of youths/kids) /gæŋ/ 32  
 garage /'gærɑ:ʒ/ 54  
 garlic /'gɑ:li:k/ 63  
 gate /geɪt/ 54, 66, 89  
 generally /'dʒenərəli/ 46  
 generous /'dʒenərəs/ 49  
 geography /dʒi'ɒgrəfi/ 82  
 German /'dʒɜ:mən/ 46  
 Germany /'dʒɜ:məni/ 46  
 get (= arrive/reach) /get/ 29, 67, 99  
 get (= become) 29  
 get (= fetch) 29  
 get (= find/buy) 29  
 get (= receive) 29, 99  
 get a bus/train 65  
 get a job 82  
 get a place (at university) 83  
 get away (= escape) 85  
 get back (= return) 80  
 get by 24  
 get changed 29  
 get delayed/held up 16  
 get divorced 29, 52  
 get dressed 6, 29, 61  
 get fit 75  
 get home 53  
 get in (a car) 68  
 get in touch (with somebody) 99  
 get into (a fight) 60  
 get into bed 56  
 get into trouble 85  
 get lost 29, 91  
 get married 14, 29, 52  
 get off (a bus) 2, 12, 68  
 get on (a plane) 68, 89  
 get on (with somebody) 21, 23, 29  
 get on (my) nerves 13, 29

get out (of a car) 68  
 get over (an illness) 23  
 get ready 29  
 get rid of something /,get 'rɪd əv/  
 13, 29  
 get through (= finish) /,get 'θru:/  
 23  
 get through (= make phone  
 contact) 23, 80  
 get to know somebody 29  
 get to work 53  
 get undressed 6, 29  
 get up (= get out of bed) 29, 53  
 get whatever/wherever you want 65  
 getting (hot/cold/better/worse)  
 /getɪŋ/ 29  
 getting nowhere 13  
 giraffe /dʒɪ'rɑ:fi/ 45  
 girlfriend /'gɜ:lfrend/ 52  
 give somebody a hand 27  
 give somebody a hug 27  
 give somebody a kiss 27  
 give somebody a lift 27  
 give somebody a message 80  
 give somebody a push 27  
 give somebody a ring 9, 27, 80  
 give up (= stop doing something)  
 /,gɪv 'ʌp/ 23, 34, 75  
 glance (at) (n, v) /glɑ:ns/ 50  
 glass (of water) /glɑ:s/ 32  
 global warming /,glɔ:bəl 'wɔ:mɪŋ/  
 88  
 glove /glʌv/ 2, 61  
 go (= its usual position) /gəʊ/ 30  
 go (= leads to/takes you) 30  
 go ahead 13  
 go along here 67  
 go and get ... 30  
 go back to school 82  
 go bald /,gəʊ 'bɔ:ld/ 30  
 go bankrupt /,gəʊ 'bæŋkrʌpt/ 30  
 go blind /,gəʊ 'blaɪnd/ 30  
 go camping/swimming/diving, etc.  
 92  
 go deaf /,gəʊ 'def/ 30  
 go down 73  
 go (out) for a walk/drive/drink/  
 meal 30  
 go grey 30  
 go into hospital 60, 82  
 go into the army/navy 70  
 go into town 65  
 go mad 30  
 go off (= ring) /gəʊ ɒf/ 23  
 go off (= explode) 23

go off (= go bad) 23  
 go on (= continue) 83  
 go on a (training) course 71  
 go on a diet 9  
 go on a tour of ... 91  
 go on holiday 92  
 go out (social activity) 53, 91  
 go out with somebody 52  
 go shopping 62  
 go sightseeing 91  
 go skiing/swimming 75  
 go through customs 89  
 go to bed 53  
 go to court 84  
 go to school/university/church 82  
 go to sleep 53, 56  
 go to university 52, 83  
 go to work 56  
 go together 30  
 go up (= increase) 23, 73  
 go wrong 76  
 goal /gəʊl/ 74  
 goat /gəʊt/ 45  
 goldfish /'gəʊlɪʃ/ 45  
 golf (course) /gɒlf/ 74  
 golf (club) /gɒlf/ 74  
 good at something 14, 82  
 good for you 75  
 good fun 49, 76  
 good luck 22  
 good morning/afternoon/evening  
 night 22  
 good-looking /,gʊd'lʊkɪŋ/ 11, 48  
 gorilla /gə'rɪlə/ 45  
 govern /'gʌvən/ 7  
 government /'gʌvənmənt/ 7, 86  
 GP /,dʒɪ:'pi:/ 70  
 grade /greɪd/ 82  
 gradual(ly) /'grædʒʊəli/ 73  
 graduate (n) /'grædʒʊət/ 83  
 graduate (v) /'grædʒʊət/ 83  
 grandfather/grandmother  
 /'græn,fu:ðə/ 'græn,mʌðə/ 51  
 grant (n) /grɑ:nt/ 83  
 grapes /greɪps/ 63  
 grass /grɑ:s/ 66  
 great (= fantastic) /greɪt/ 17, 36  
 great big (dog) 95  
 great success /,greɪt sək'ses/ 12  
 great time /,greɪt 'taɪm/ 12  
 Greece /gri:s/ 46  
 Greek /gri:k/ 46  
 green beans /,gri:n 'bi:nz/ 63  
 greetings /'gri:tɪŋz/ 22  
 grey /greɪ/ 96

grill (v) /grɪl/ 64  
 grill (n) 55  
 gripping /'grɪpɪŋ/ 76  
 ground floor /,graʊnd 'flɔː/ 54  
 group (rock/pop) /gru:p/ 77  
 group (of people) 32  
 grow /grəʊ/ 73  
 grow (apples/wheat/crops) 66  
 grow up /,grəʊ 'ʌp/ 24, 52, 66  
 guess (n, v) (have a guess) /ges/ 9  
 guess the meaning 3  
 guidebook /'gaɪdbʊk/ 91  
 guilty /'gɪlti/ 84  
 guitar /gɪ'tɑː/ 77  
 guitarist 77 /gɪ'tɑːrɪst/  
 guy /gaɪ/ 99  
 gym /dʒɪm/ 75, 100

hair /heə/ 33  
 hair dryer /'heə ,draɪə/ 10  
 haircut /'heəkʌt/ 10  
 half /hɑːf/ 94  
 half board /,hɑːf 'bɔːd/ 90  
 hall /hɔːl/ 55  
 hand /hænd/ 47  
 hand luggage /'hænd ,lʌgɪdʒ/ 33, 89  
 handbag /'hænbæg/ 61  
 handle (v) /'hændl/ 69  
 handsome 48 /'hænsəm/  
 handy 99 /'hændi/  
 hang on /,hæŋ 'ɒn/ 13  
 hang something up 61  
 hangover /'hæŋəʊvə/ 59  
 happiness /'hæpɪnəs/ 7, 50  
 Happy Birthday/Christmas/New Year 22  
 hard disk /'hɑːd ,dɪsk/ 81  
 hard question 12  
 hard work 12  
 hard-working /,hɑːd'wɜːkɪŋ/ 49  
 hardly /hɑːdli/ 38  
 hardly ever 38  
 hardware /'hɑːdweə/ 81  
 hat /hæt/ 61  
 hate /heit/ 19, 50  
 have a baby 25  
 have a break 53  
 have a dream 9, 25  
 have a drink 25  
 have a(n) early/late night 53  
 have a go 30  
 have a guess 9  
 have a lie-in 53  
 have a look 9, 25

have a look at something 55  
 have a look round 91  
 have a nice weekend 22  
 have a nice/great/terrible time 25, 91  
 have a party 25  
 have a problem (-ing/with something) 25  
 have a rest 9, 25  
 have a shower/bath/shave/wash 25, 53, 56  
 have a sleep 25, 53  
 have a swim/paddle 92  
 have a think 25  
 have a try 25  
 have a word (with somebody) 25, 99  
 have an argument 25  
 have breakfast/lunch/a meal 25, 53  
 have friends for dinner 53  
 have got 25  
 have got something left 28  
 have something/nothing in common 41  
 have the bill 25  
 Have you got the time? 20, 25  
 head (the ball) /hed/ 74  
 headache /'hedɪk/ 59  
 headline /'hedlaɪn/ 78  
 headphones /'hedfəʊnz/ 33  
 healthy /'helθi/ 64  
 healthy economy 73  
 hear (versus listen to) /hɪə/ 31  
 hearing /'hɪərɪŋ/ 31  
 heart /hɑːt/ 59  
 heart attack /'hɑːt ə,tæk/ 59  
 heat (n) /hi:t/ 44  
 heat (v) 54  
 heatwave /'hi:tweɪv/ 44  
 heavy rain 12, 44  
 heavy smoker 12  
 heavy traffic 12  
 Hebrew /'hi:bru:/ 46  
 heel /hi:l/ 47  
 height /hait/ 95  
 height (medium height) 48  
 held up (be/get held up) /,held 'ʌp/ 16  
 help yourself /help jɔː'self/ 17  
 helpful /'helpfəl/ 8  
 hemisphere (northern/southern) /'hemɪsfɪə/ 43  
 hepatitis /,hepa'taɪtɪs/ 59  
 herd (of cows) /hɜːd/ 32  
 high /haɪ/ 95

high-rise (building) /,haɪ'reɪz/ 65  
 highlight (new words) /'haɪlaɪt/ 5  
 highlighter pen /'haɪ,laɪtə pen/ 5  
 highlights (recorded highlights) /'haɪlaɪts/ 79  
 hijack /'haɪdʒæk/ 88  
 hiking /'haɪkɪŋ/ 75  
 hip /hɪp/ 47  
 hire /haɪə/ 89  
 historic monuments /hɪ'stɔːrɪk 'mɒnjəmənts/ 91  
 history /'hɪstəri/ 82  
 history of art 83  
 hit (a ball) /hɪt/ 74  
 hit (= affect badly) 43, 78  
 hit (record/single) 77  
 hit (your head) 60  
 hob /hɒb/ 55  
 hockey /'hɒki/ 74  
 hold /həʊld/ 31  
 hold (an election) 86  
 homeless /'həʊmləs/ 8  
 homesick /'həʊmsɪk/ 3  
 homework /'həʊmwɜːk/ 33  
 honest /'ɒnɪst/ 49  
 Hoover (v) /'hu:və/ 56  
 Hoover/vacuum cleaner 56  
 hope (+ inf) /həʊp/ 34  
 hopeless /'həʊpləs/ 66  
 hopeless at something 82  
 horizon /hə'reɪzən/ 92  
 horror film /'hɒrə ,fɪlm/ 76  
 hospital /'hɒspɪtəl/ 70  
 hostage /'hɒstɪdʒ/ 88  
 hot /hɒt/ 44  
 household (goods) /,haʊsəʊld/ 62  
 housework /'haʊswɜːk/ 3, 33, 56  
 How about you? 20, 22  
 How about (+ -ing)? 17  
 How are things? 98  
 How are you getting on? 29  
 How are you? 20, 22  
 How do I get to ...? 20, 90  
 How do you do? 22  
 How do you feel about ...? 18  
 How do you pronounce ...? 5  
 How do you spell ...? 5  
 How do you use ...? 5  
 how fantastic/exciting/awful 21  
 How far is it? 20, 95  
 How long are you here for? 20  
 How long are you staying? 20  
 How long does it take? 26  
 How long have you been here? 20  
 How long/wide/high/deep is ...? 95

- How much does he/she weigh? 48  
 How much is that? 20  
 How much longer (are you staying)? 20  
 How old are you? 20  
 How tall is he/she? 48  
 How was (the party)? 20  
 however /hau'evə/ 40  
 How's it going? 20, 22, 30  
 hug (give somebody a hug) /hʌg/ 27  
 huge /hju:dʒ/ 36, 54  
 humid /'hju:mɪd/ 44  
 humidity /hju:'mɪdəti/ 44  
 hundred /'hʌndrəd/ 94  
 hungry (be hungry) /'hʌŋɡri/ 25  
 hurricane /'hʌrɪkən/ 43, 44  
 hurry up /,hʌri 'ʌp/ 23  
 hurt /hɜ:t/ 60  
 hurt (oneself) 59  
 hyphen /'haɪfən/ 4
- I (don't) think so 21  
 I beg your pardon 16  
 I don't mind 17, 21  
 I doubt it 21  
 I haven't a clue 13  
 I hope not 21  
 I hope so 21  
 I regret to inform you 99  
 I see 21, 27  
 I see what you mean 18, 27  
 I take your point 18  
 I was wondering if ...? 17  
 I won't be long 16  
 i.e. /,aɪ 'i:/ 100  
 ice /aɪs/ 44  
 ice hockey 75  
 icy /'aɪsi/ 44  
 identity card (ID) /aɪ'dentəti kɑ:d/ 87, 100  
 idiom /'ɪdiəm/ 4  
 idiot /'ɪdiət/ 49  
 if you like 13, 17, 21  
 ill /ɪl/ 1  
 illegal /ɪ'li:gəl/ 6, 84, 85  
 illegible /ɪ'ledʒəbl/ 6  
 illness (serious illness) /'ɪlnəs/ 7, 59  
 imagine (+ -ing) /ɪ'mædʒɪn/ 34  
 impatient /ɪm'peɪjənt/ 6  
 impolite /,ɪmpəl'aɪt/ 3, 6  
 impossible /ɪm'pɒsəbl/ 6  
 impression (make a good impression) /ɪm'preʃən/ 49  
 improve /ɪm'pru:v/ 7  
 improvement /ɪm'pru:vmənt/ 7
- in (Africa) 37  
 in (April) 93  
 in (ten days') time 93  
 in a hurry 15, 65  
 in a mess 6  
 in a moment 15  
 in a newspaper/magazine 15  
 in addition 40  
 in advance 76, 90  
 in business 15  
 in charge of 69, 71  
 in comparison with 41  
 in danger of extinction 45  
 in front of 37  
 in general 46  
 in good condition 54  
 in love 15  
 in my opinion 18  
 in order to 42  
 in other words 100  
 in power 86  
 in practice 13  
 in spite of 40  
 in the blue jumper/dark glasses 15  
 in the centre 54  
 in the country/countryside 66  
 in the end 15, 39  
 in the long term 13  
 in the morning/afternoon/evening 15  
 in the short term 13  
 in the wild 45  
 in theory 13  
 in time 15  
 in your twenties/thirties, etc. 52  
 in-house (training) /,ɪn'haʊs/ 71  
 inadequate /ɪ'nædɪkwət/ 6  
 included (Is breakfast included?) /ɪn'klu:dɪd/ 90  
 income /'ɪŋkʌm/ 69  
 income tax 10, 69  
 incomprehensible /ɪn,kɒmpri'hensəbl/ 8  
 incorrect /,ɪŋkər'ekt/ 6  
 increase (n, v) /'ɪŋkri:s/ 73  
 incredibly (expensive/cheap) /ɪn'kredɪbli/ 38, 58  
 indefinite article /ɪn,defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkl/ 4  
 independent school /,ɪndɪ'pendənt ,sku:l/ 82  
 industrial /ɪn'dʌstriəl/ 8  
 infinitive /ɪn'fɪnətɪv/ 4  
 inflation /ɪn'fleɪʃən/ 73  
 inflexible /ɪn'fleksəbl/ 49  
 inform /ɪn'fɔ:m/ 7
- informal /ɪn'fɔ:məl/ 6  
 information /,ɪnfə'meɪʃən/ 7, 33  
 information technology 82  
 injection /ɪn'dʒekʃən/ 59  
 injure /'ɪndʒə/ 60  
 injured (badly injured) /'ɪndʒəd/ 67  
 injury /'ɪndʒəri/ 60  
 innocent /'ɪnəsənt/ 84  
 insect /'ɪnsekt/ 45  
 insensitive /ɪn'sensətɪv/ 49  
 install /ɪn'stɔ:l/ 70  
 interest (pay interest) /'ɪntrəst/ 73  
 interest (v) 1  
 interest rate /'ɪntrəst reɪt/ 73  
 interested in something /'ɪntrəstɪd ɪn/ 14, 19  
 (the) Internet (the Net) /'ɪntənət/ 81  
 into /'ɪntu:/ 37  
 intransitive verb /ɪn,trænsətɪv 'vɜ:b/ 4  
 investigate /ɪn'vestɪgeɪt/ 84  
 investment /ɪn'vesmənt/ 73  
 invisible /ɪn'vɪzəbl/ 6, 8  
 invoice /'ɪnvɔɪs/ 72  
 involve /ɪn'vɒlv/ 69, 71  
 iron /aɪən/ 56  
 ironing (do the ironing) /'aɪənɪŋ/ 53, 56  
 irregular (verbs) /ɪ'regjələ/ 6  
 irresponsible /,ɪrɪ'spɒnsəbl/ 6  
 Is that ...? (on the phone) /ɪz ,ðæt/ 80  
 Is this the first time you've been to ...? 20  
 island /'aɪlənd/ 3, 43  
 ISP (Internet Service Provider) /,aɪs'pi:/ 81, 100  
 Israel /'ɪzreɪl/ 46  
 Israeli /ɪz'reɪli/ 46  
 it doesn't matter 16  
 It says (in the paper) /ɪt ,sez/ 78  
 Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ 46  
 Italy /'ɪtəli/ 46  
 it's a bit difficult (actually) ... 17  
 it's up to you 13  
 I'd love to 17  
 I'll clear it up 16  
 I'll leave it 62  
 I'll sort it out 16  
 I'll take it/them 62  
 I'm (very) sorry 16  
 I'm afraid I can't 17  
 I'm afraid not 17, 21  
 I'm afraid so 21

I'm being served 62  
I'm just looking (thanks) 62  
I'm looking for a ... 62  
I'm sorry about (the mess) 16  
I'm sorry I can't 17  
I'm sorry I'm late 16  
I'm sorry to disturb you 16  
I'm sorry to keep you waiting 16

jacket /'dʒækɪt/ 61  
Japan /dʒə'pæn/ 46  
Japanese /,dʒæpən'i:z/ 46  
jar (of marmalade) /dʒɑ:/ 32  
jazz /dʒæz/ 77  
jealous (of) /'dʒeləs/ 50  
jealousy /'dʒeləsi/ 50  
jeans /dʒi:nz/ 61  
jewellery /'dʒu:əlri/ 62  
job /dʒɒb/ 69  
job opportunities 65  
jog /dʒɒg/ 7  
jogging /'dʒɒŋŋ/ 7, 75  
join (the army/the police) /dʒɔɪn/  
70

join a club 75  
journalist /'dʒɜ:nəlist/ 7, 78  
journey /'dʒɜ:ni/ 68  
judge /dʒʌdʒ/ 84  
jug (of milk) /dʒʌg/ 32  
jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ 61  
junction /'dʒʌŋkʃən/ 67  
jury /'dʒʊəri/ 84  
just as 39

keen (on/not very keen on ...)  
/'ki:n/ 14, 19

keep (animals) /ki:p/ 45, 66  
keep (losing/interrupting/getting)  
27  
keep (+ noun/pronoun + adjective)  
27  
keep an eye on something/  
somebody 13  
keep fit /ki:p 'fɪt/ 27, 75  
keep going 67  
keep in touch 27  
keep off the grass 97  
keep quiet 27  
keep right/left 97  
keep somebody waiting 27  
kettle /'kɛtl/ 55  
key (adj) /ki:/ 78  
keyboard /'ki:bɔ:d/ 72, 81  
kick a ball /kɪk/ 74  
kids /kɪdz/ 2, 99

kill /kɪl/ 88  
kind (= nice) /kaɪnd/ 49  
kind (What kind of ...?) 19  
kiosk /'ki:nsk/ 62  
kiss /kɪs/ 9  
kitchen /'kɪtʃɪn/ 55  
knee /ni:/ 47  
knife /naɪf/ 3, 90  
knock (on/at a door) /nɒk/ 50  
knowledge /'nɒlədʒ/ 33  
Korea /kə'ri:ə/ 46  
Korean /kə'ri:ən/ 46

lab /læb/ 100  
labour (costs) /'leɪbə/ 73  
lake /leɪk/ 43  
lamb /læm/ 45, 63  
lamp /læmp/ 55, 56  
land (v) /lænd/ 89  
landing card /'lændɪŋ ,kɑ:d/ 87, 89  
lane /leɪn/ 67  
laptop /'læptɒp/ 81  
large /lɑ:dʒ/ 95  
laser printer /,leɪzə 'prɪntə/ 81  
last (v) /lɑ:st/ 83, 93  
lare (at night) /leɪ/ 85  
late night 13  
late twenties/thirties, etc. 52  
lately /'leɪtli/ 93  
latest (score/album) /'leɪtɪst/ 74, 77  
Latin America (South America)  
/,lætɪn ə'merɪkə/ 46  
laugh (n, v) /lɑ:f/ 9, 47  
law /lɔ:/ 3, 83  
lawyer /'lɔ:ɪ/ 70  
lazy /'leɪzi/ 49  
lead (= winning) /li:d/ 74  
lead singer/guitarist 77  
leader /'li:də/ 86  
leave a job/school (= permanently)  
/li:v/ 28, 71, 82  
leave a message 28, 80  
leave home/work (= depart) 28, 53  
leave lights on 85  
leave somebody (= permanent  
separation) 52  
leave somebody alone 28  
leave somebody/something  
somewhere (= allow them to  
stay) 28  
leave something behind (= forget  
something) 28, 57  
leave something out (= omit) 24  
leaves /li:vz/ 66  
lecture /'lektʃə/ 83

lecturer /'lektʃərə/ 70, 83  
leek /li:k/ 63  
left (e.g. I've got £20 left) /left/ 28  
left-hand page 1  
left-handed /,left'hændɪd/ 11  
left-wing /,left'wɪŋ/ 86  
lemon /'lemən/ 63  
lend /lend/ 58  
length /leŋθ/ 95  
leopard /'lepəd/ 45  
lesson /'lesən/ 83  
let me (help you) /,let mi:/ 28  
let me see 28  
let (somebody do something) 28,  
34  
let somebody know 28  
lettuce /'letɪs/ 63  
let's go/try 28  
liberal /'lɪbərəl/ 86  
liberalism /'lɪbərəlɪzəm/ 86  
library /'laɪbrəri/ 65  
lie down /,laɪ 'daʊn/ 23  
lie in bed /,laɪ ɪn 'bed/ 53  
lift (give somebody a lift) /lɪft/ 27  
lift (= to go up in a building) 54,  
90  
light colour /laɪt/ 96  
light (opp dark) 54  
light rain 44  
lightning /'laɪtnɪŋ/ 44  
like /laɪk/ 19  
like (+ -ing or inf) 34  
lion /laɪən/ 45  
lip /lɪp/ 47  
listen (to something/somebody)  
/'lɪsn/ 14  
listen to (versus hear) 31  
live (adj) /laɪv/ 79  
lively /'laɪvli/ 65, 91  
liver /lɪvə/ 59  
living room /'lɪvɪŋ ru:m/ 10, 55  
loads (of work) /lɔudz/ 72  
loan /lɔ:n/ 73, 83  
lobster /'lɒbstə/ 63  
lock /lɒk/ 6, 85  
long /lɒŋ/ 95  
(a) long way 95  
loo /lu:/ 99  
look (v) (it looks terrible) /lʊk/ 31  
look (n) (I didn't like the look of  
the fish) 31  
look after something/somebody 23,  
24, 70  
look at something 31  
look for a job 71

look for something 31  
look forward to something 19  
look like 31, 51  
look something up 5, 23  
look versus watch versus see 31  
lorry /'lɒri/ 67, 68  
lose /lu:z/ 3  
lose a game 74  
lose something (e.g. money) 57  
loser /'lu:zə/ 74  
loss (make a loss) /lɒs/ 73  
loud voice /,laʊd 'vɔɪs/ 12  
lounge /laʊndʒ/ 55  
love /lʌv/ 19  
love (+ -ing or inf) 34  
luckily /'lʌkɪli/ 53  
lucky (be lucky) /'lʌki/ 25  
luggage /'lʌɡɪdʒ/ 33  
luggage trolley /'lʌɡɪdʒ ,trɒli/ 89  
lunch break /'lʌnʃ breɪk/ 82  
lung /lʌŋ/ 59  
lung cancer /lʌŋ 'kænsə/ 59

MA/MSc /,em'eɪ/ /,emes'si:/ 83  
main course /,meɪn 'kɔ:s/ 64, 90  
main road /,meɪn 'rəʊd/ 67  
maintain (your interest) /meɪn'teɪn/  
1  
majority /mə'dʒɔrəti/ 86  
make (= manufacture) /meɪk/ 72  
make (= earn) 69  
make (somebody do something) 34  
make a decision 26  
make a difference 26  
make a loss 73  
make a meal 26  
make a mistake 2, 26  
make a noise 26  
make a profit 73  
make coffee 55  
make friends 26  
make it (e.g. I can't make it  
tonight) 13  
make money 26  
make my own breakfast/dinner 53  
make progress 26  
make something up (= invent) 24  
make the bed 56  
make up (your) mind 13  
make-up /'meɪkʌp/ 10  
manage (a business) /'mænɪdʒ/ 7  
manage (= be able to) (+ inf)  
/'mænɪdʒ/ 34  
management (bad management)  
/'mænɪdʒmənt/ 7

manager /'mænɪdʒə/ 70, 71  
Mandarin (also Cantonese)  
/'mændərɪn/ 46  
manslaughter /'mæn,slə:tə/ 85  
manual /'mænjuəl/ 70  
manufacture /,mænʃə'fæktʃə/ 72  
Many Happy Returns 22  
map /mæp/ 91  
march (= walk) (n, v) /mɑ:tʃ/ 50  
marital status /,mæritəl 'steɪtəs/  
87  
mark (high/low) /mɑ:k/ 82  
market /'mɑ:kɪt/ 91  
marriage /'mæriɪdʒ/ 52  
maths (mathematics) /mæθs/ 82,  
100  
May we remind passengers ... /meɪ/  
89  
maybe /'meɪbi/ 18  
me neither 19  
me too 19  
meal /mi:l/ 90  
mean (adj) /mi:n/ 49  
mean (= intend/plan) (+ inf) /mi:n/  
34  
mechanic /mi'kænik/ 70  
medicine /'medsən/ 83  
Mediterranean (the Mediterranean)  
/,medɪtər'eɪniən/ 46  
medium (height/build) /'mi:diəm/  
48  
medium-rare (meat) /,mi:diəm 'reə/  
64  
meet /mi:t/ 52  
meeting /'mi:tɪŋ/ 69  
melon /'melən/ 63  
mental arithmetic /,mentəl  
ə'riθmətɪk/ 94  
mention (that + clause) /'menʃən/  
35  
menu /'menju:/ 64, 90  
Merry Christmas /,meri 'krɪsməs/  
22  
mess (a complete mess) /mes/ 56  
message (give/leave a message)  
/'mesɪdʒ/ 80  
meter (taxi meter) /'mi:tə/ 68  
Mexican /'meksɪkən/ 46  
Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/ 46  
mice /maɪs/ 45  
microwave /'maɪkrəweɪv/ 55  
mid-twenties/thirties, etc. 52  
Middle East (the Middle East)  
/,mɪdl 'i:st/ 46  
middle-aged /,mɪdl'eɪdʒd/ 52

million /'mɪljən/ 94  
mind (+ -ing) /maɪnd/ 34  
mind (I don't mind) 19  
mind the step/your head 97  
minimum wage /,mɪnɪməm 'weɪdʒ/  
69  
minor offence /,maɪnər ə'fens/ 84  
minus /'maɪnəs/ 94  
minute /'mɪnɪt/ 93  
minutes (take the minutes) /'mɪnɪts/  
72  
mirror /'mɪrə/ 56  
misread /mɪs'reɪd/ 6  
miss a bus/train /mɪs/ 12, 57, 68  
miss a lesson 12  
miss a person 12  
misunderstand /,mɪsʌndə'stænd/ 6  
mobile phone /,məʊbaɪl 'fəʊn/ 80  
modem /'məʊdem/ 81  
monarchy /'mɒnəki/ 86  
monitor /'mɒnɪtə/ 72, 81  
monkey /'mʌŋki/ 45  
monthly /'mʌnθli/ 78  
mood (in a good/bad mood) /mu:d/  
57  
moon /mu:n/ 43  
more or less 98  
mosquito /'mɒs'ki:təʊ/ 45  
mother tongue /'mʌðə tʌŋ/ 10  
mother-in-law /'mʌðərɪn,lɔ:/ 51  
motor racing /'məʊtə reɪsɪŋ/ 75  
motorbike /'məʊtəbaɪk/ 68  
motorway /'məʊtəweɪ/ 67  
mountain /'maʊntɪn/ 43  
mouse (animal) /maʊs/ 45  
mouse (computer) 81  
moustache /mə'stɑ:ʃ/ 48  
move (along the ground) /mu:v/ 45  
moving /'mu:vɪŋ/ 76  
MP (Member of Parliament)  
/,em'pi:/ 100  
Mr /'mɪstə/ 100  
Mrs /'mɪsɪz/ 100  
Ms /mɪz/ 100  
multiplication /,mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən/ 94  
multiply /'mʌltɪplai/ 94  
murder(er) /'mɜ:də(r)/ 7, 85  
murder (n, v) /'mɜ:də/ 9  
muscular /'mʌskjələ/ 48  
mushroom /'mʌʃrʊm/ 63  
musical (n) /'mjuzɪkəl/ 76  
musical (adj) 8  
mussels /'mʌsəlz/ 63  
my name is ... (on the phone) 80

napkin /'næpkɪn/ 64, 90  
 narrow (road) /'nærəʊ/ 95  
 narrow-minded /,nærəʊ'maɪndɪd/ 49  
 natural disaster /'nætʃərəl/ 88  
 natural resources 88  
 navy /'neɪvi/ 70  
 near /nɪə/ 37  
 nearest /'niəst/ 95  
 nearly /'niəli/ 38  
 neck /nek/ 47  
 necklace /'nekləs/ 61  
 neither /'naɪðə/ 41  
 neither (do I) 19  
 nephew /'nefju:/ 51  
 net net 74  
 never /'nevə/ 38  
 never mind 13, 16  
 news /nju:z/ 33  
 newsagent /'nju:z,eɪdʒənt/ 62  
 next to /'nekst tu:/ 37  
 nice to have met you 22  
 nice to meet you 22  
 niece /ni:s/ 51  
 nightlife /'naɪtlaɪf/ 65, 66, 91  
 nine-to-five (job) /,naɪntəfaɪv/ 69  
 no exit/parking/smoking/vacancies 97  
 no problem 16  
 nod (your head) /nod/ 47  
 noisy /'nɔɪzi/ 54, 65  
 not bad /,nɒt 'bæd/ 20, 22  
 notebook /'nəʊtbʊk/ 5  
 notes (money) /'nəʊts/ 58  
 nothing (there's nothing to do) /'nʌθɪŋ/ 65  
 nothing special/much 20  
 notice (n) /'nəʊtɪs/ 97  
 noticeboard /'nəʊtɪsbɔ:d/ 72  
 nought /nɔ:t/ 94  
 noun naʊn/ 4  
 nowhere (there's nowhere to park) /'nəʊwɛə/ 65  
 nuisance (what a nuisance) /'nju:səns/ 21  
 number one (pop music) /,nʌmbə 'wʌn/ 77  
 nurse /nɜ:s/ 70  
 nursery school /'nɜ:səri sku:l/ 82

offer (+ inf) /'ɒfə/ 34  
 official (n) /ə'fɪʃəl/ 87  
 often /'ɒfən/ 38  
 oh (e.g. 603) /əʊ/ 94  
 OHP /əʊeɪt'fpi:/ 5  
 OHT /əʊeɪt'fɪti:/ 5  
 oil /ɔɪl/ 63, 64  
 old age /,əʊld 'eɪdʒ/ 52  
 old friend 51  
 on (the desk) /ɒn/ 37  
 on (= showing on TV) 79  
 on (Monday) 93  
 on business 15  
 on earth 43  
 on fire 15  
 on foot 15  
 on holiday 15  
 on (my) own 15, 53  
 on purpose 15  
 on strike 15  
 on the ground/first floor 54  
 on the one hand 13  
 on the other hand 13  
 on the outskirts (of town) 54  
 on the phone 2, 15, 80  
 on the radio 15  
 on the tip of my tongue 13  
 on time 15  
 on TV 15  
 one day 93  
 onion /'ɒnjən/ 63  
 online (go/get online) /,ɒn'laɪn/ 81  
 only child 51  
 open a document 81  
 opera /'ɒpərə/ 77  
 operate (on) /'ɒpəreɪt/ 70  
 opposite /'ɒpəzɪt/ 4, 37  
 (the) opposition /,ɒpə'zɪʃən/ 86  
 optimistic /,ɒptɪ'mɪstɪk/ 49  
 or so (= about) 98  
 orange /'ɒrɪndʒ/ 63  
 orchestra /'ɔ:kɪstrə/ 77  
 original /ə'rɪdʒənəl/ 18  
 otherwise /'ʌðəwaɪz/ 42  
 out (= not here) /aʊt/ 80  
 out of 37  
 out of order 57, 97  
 out of work 15, 71  
 oven /'ɒvən/ 55  
 over /'əʊvə/ 37  
 overcharge /,əʊvə'tʃɑ:dʒ/ 6  
 overdo /,əʊvə'du:/ 6  
 overhead locker /'əʊvəhed/ 89  
 overheads /'əʊvəhedz/ 73  
 oversleep /,əʊvə'sli:p/ 6, 53

overtake /,əʊvə'teɪk/ 67  
 overtime (do/work overtime) /'əʊvətəɪm/ 69  
 overweight /,əʊvə'weɪt/ 48  
 own (v) /əʊn/ 54  
 oyster /'ɔɪstə/ 63

pace (of life) /peɪs/ 66  
 pack (my suitcase) /pæk/ 6  
 packed (with tourists) /pækt/ 91  
 packet (of cigarettes) /'pækɪt/ 32  
 pain (I've got a pain in ...) /peɪn/ 59  
 pain (what a pain) 21  
 painful /'peɪnfəl/ 8, 59, 60  
 pair (of shoes/skis/shorts) /peə/ 32  
 palace /'pælis/ 91  
 pale /peɪl/ 96  
 pale skin /,peɪl 'skɪn/ 48  
 (a) paper (newspaper) /'peɪpə/ 100  
 paperwork (do paperwork) /'peɪpəwɜ:k/ 72  
 park (v) /pɑ:k/ 67  
 parking /'pɑ:kɪŋ/ 65  
 part-time (job) /,pɑ:t'taɪm/ 11, 71  
 partner /'pɑ:tənə/ 51  
 pass a ball /pɑ:s/ 74  
 pass an exam 82, 83  
 passenger /'pæsəndʒə/ 68  
 passport /'pɑ:spɔ:t/ 87  
 passport control 89  
 past /pɑ:st/ 37  
 paste /peɪst/ 81  
 path /pɑ:θ/ 54  
 pattern /'pætən/ 96  
 pavement /'peɪvmənt/ 67  
 pay (n, v) /peɪ/ 69  
 pay by (cheque/credit card) 62  
 pay for something 58  
 pay rise 71  
 pay something back 73  
 pay the bill 90  
 PC (personal computer) /,pi:'si:/ 100  
 peace and quiet /pi:s ən kwɑɪət/ 66  
 peace settlement 88  
 peach /pi:tʃ/ 63  
 pear /peə/ 63  
 peas /pi:z/ 63  
 pedestrian /prɪ'destriən/ 67  
 pedestrian crossing 67  
 peel /pi:l/ 63  
 pencil sharpener /'pensəl ,ʃɑ:pənə/ 5  
 pepper /'pepə/ 64

pepper (red/green) 63  
 per cent /pɜː 'sent/ 94  
 perform /pə'fɔːm/ 77  
 performance /pə'fɔːməns/ 76  
 perhaps /pə'hæps/ 18  
 personally I ... /'pɜːsənəli aɪ/ 18  
 persuade (somebody + inf) /pə'sweɪd/ 35  
 pessimistic /,pesɪ'mɪstɪk/ 49  
 pet /pet/ 45  
 petrol station /'petrəl ,steɪʃən/ 67  
 PhD /,piːtʃ'diː/ 83  
 philosophy /fɪ'lɒsəfi/ 83  
 phone /fəʊn/ 100  
 phone box/card/number 80  
 phone somebody back 80  
 photo (photograph) /'fəʊtəʊ/ 26, 100  
 photocopier /'fəʊtə,kɒpiə/ 5, 72  
 photocopy /'fəʊtə,kɒpi/ 5  
 photographer /fə'tɒgrəfə/ 78  
 phrasal verb /'freɪzəl ,vɜːb/ 4  
 physics /'fɪzɪks/ 82  
 pianist /'piːənɪst/ 77  
 piano /pi'ænoʊ/ 77  
 pick something up (= take it using one's hands) /,pɪk ʌp/ 23  
 pick something/somebody up (= collect) 23, 99  
 piece (of toast/advice) /piːs/ 32  
 pig /pɪg/ 45  
 pillow /'pɪləʊ/ 56  
 pilot /'paɪlət/ 68, 70  
 pineapple /'paɪnæpl/ 63  
 pink /pɪŋk/ 96  
 piss (v) (slang) /pɪs/ 99  
 pitch /pɪtʃ/ 74  
 pity (that's a pity) /'pɪti/ 21  
 place /pleɪs/ 91  
 place of birth 87  
 plain /pleɪn/ 48  
 plan (v) /plæn/ 70  
 plane /pleɪn/ 68, 100  
 planet /'plænɪt/ 88  
 plant /plɑːnt/ 66  
 plant bombs 88  
 plaster /'plɑːstə/ 60  
 plate /pleɪt/ 90  
 platform /'plætfɔːm/ 3, 68  
 play (n) /pleɪ/ 76  
 play a game 75  
 play cards /,pleɪ 'kɑːdz/ 53  
 pleasant /'plezənt/ 49  
 please accept our apologies 16  
 please do not disturb 97

please do not feed the animals 97  
 please queue other side 97  
 pleased to meet you 22  
 plenty (there's plenty to do) /'plenti/ 65  
 plug /plʌg/ 5  
 plug something in /,plʌg 'ɪn/ 5, 79  
 plum /plʌm/ 63  
 plumber /'plʌmə/ 70  
 plural noun /,plʊərəl 'naʊn/ 4  
 plus /plʌs/ 94  
 PM (Prime Minister) /,pi:'em/ 100  
 pocket /'pɒkɪt/ 61  
 point /pɔɪnt/ 96  
 point (at something/somebody) 50  
 point (decimal) 94  
 point (I don't see the point of ...) 27  
 point (I take your point) 18  
 pointed /'pɔɪntɪd/ 96  
 Poland /'pɒlənd/ 46  
 pole (north/south) /pəʊl/ 43  
 police force /pə'liːs ,fɔːs/ 70  
 police officer /pə'liːs ,ɒfɪsə/ 70  
 policeman/policewoman /pə'liːsmən/ /'pə'liːswʊmən/ 70  
 policy (economic/foreign) /'pɒləsi/ 86  
 Polish /'pɒlɪʃ/ 46  
 polite /pə'laɪt/ 3  
 political /pə'lɪtɪkəl/ 8  
 political party 86  
 politician /pɒlɪ'tɪʃən/ 86  
 politics /'pɒlətɪks/ 83, 86  
 pollute /pə'luːt/ 88  
 polluted /pə'luːtɪd/ 65  
 pollution /pə'luːʃən/ 88  
 pond /pɒnd/ 2  
 pop music /pɒp/ 77  
 pop singer 7  
 pop star 10  
 popular press /,pɒpjələ 'pres/ 78  
 population /,pɒpjə'leɪʃən/ 46  
 pork /pɔːk/ 63  
 porter /'pɔːtə/ 90  
 Portuguese /,pɔːtʃə'giːz/ 46  
 possibly /'pɒsəbli/ 18  
 post office /'pəʊst ,ɒfɪs/ 10  
 postbox /'pəʊsbɒks/ 10  
 postgraduate (course/degree) /,pəʊs'grædʒuət/ 83  
 postman /'pəʊsmən/ 10  
 potato /pə'teɪtəʊ/ 63  
 pour (with rain) /pɔː/ 44  
 prawn /prɔːn/ 63

prefer (I'd prefer to ...) /prɪ'fɜː/ 17, 19  
 prefer (+ -ing or inf) 34  
 prefer (Which do/would you prefer?) 19  
 prefer (I prefer X to Y) 19  
 prefix /'pri:fɪks/ 4  
 pregnant /'pregnənt/ 52  
 preposition /,prepə'zɪʃən/ 4  
 prescription /prɪ'skrɪpʃən/ 59  
 press (a button) /pres/ 31, 50  
 pretty (adv) /'prɪti/ 38  
 pretty (adj) /'prɪti/ 48  
 prevent /prɪ'vent/ 67, 85  
 price /praɪs/ 58  
 pride /praɪd/ 50  
 primary school /'praɪməri ,sku:l/ 82  
 Prime Minister /,praɪm 'mɪnɪstə/ 86  
 print /prɪnt/ 81, 87  
 print something out /,prɪnt 'aʊt/ 81  
 printer /'prɪntə/ 81  
 prison (in prison) /'prɪzən/ 84  
 prisoner /'prɪzənə/ 84  
 privacy /'prɪvəsi/ 66  
 private school /,praɪvət 'sku:l/ 82  
 prize /praɪz/ 79  
 proceed to ... /prə'siːd tuː/ 99  
 produce (= manufacture) /'prɒd'juːs/ 72  
 produce an album 77  
 profession /prə'feʃən/ 70  
 professional (footballer) /prə'feʃənəl/ 7  
 professor /prə'fesə/ 83  
 profit (make a profit) /'prɒfɪt/ 73  
 program (computer) /'prəʊgræm/ 81  
 programme (TV) 79  
 progress (make progress) /'prəʊgres/ 26, 33  
 promise (+ inf) /'prɒmɪs/ 34  
 promote /prə'məʊt/ 71  
 pronounce /prə'naʊns/ 1  
 properly (it isn't working properly) /'prɒpəli/ 57  
 property /'prɒpəti/ 85  
 prospects /'prɒspekts/ 71  
 protect /prə'tekt/ 45, 88  
 protect (oneself) 85  
 protect your skin /prə'tekt jɔ 'skɪn/ 92  
 protection /prə'tekʃən/ 88  
 proud (of) /praʊd/ 50

- prove /pru:v/ 84  
 psychologist /saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst/ 7  
 psychology /saɪ'kɒlədʒi/ 83  
 public school /'pʌblɪk ,sku:l/ 82  
 public transport (system) 65, 66  
 publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ 78  
 pull out /'pʊl 'aʊt/ 67  
 punctual /'pʌŋktʃuəl/ 49, 68  
 punishment /'pʌnɪʃmənt/ 84, 85  
 pupil /'pju:pəl/ 82  
 purchase /'pɜ:tɪʃəs/ 2, 99  
 purple /'pɜ:pəl/ 96  
 purpose /'pɜ:pəs/ 42  
 push /pʊʃ/ 50  
 put on clothes /put ɒn klaʊðz/ 2, 56, 61  
 put on the brakes 9  
 put on weight 64  
 put somebody through (= connect by phone) 80  
 put something back (= return it) 23, 55  
 put something off (= postpone) 23  
 pyjamas /'pi:dʒə:məz/ 33, 56
- quarter /'kwɔ:tə/ 94  
 question (v) /'kwɛstʃən/ 84  
 question mark /'kwɛstʃən ,mɑ:k/ 4  
 queue (wait in a queue) /kju:/ 9, 68  
 quid /kwɪd/ 99  
 quiet /'kwaɪət/ 54, 65  
 quit /kwɪt/ 71, 78  
 quire /'kwaɪə/ 38  
 quite like 19  
 quite often 38  
 quite unlike 41  
 quiz show /'kwɪz ʃəʊ/ 79
- rabbit /'ræbɪt/ 45  
 racket /'rækɪt/ 74  
 radical /'rædɪkəl/ 86  
 railway station /'reɪlweɪ ,steɪʃən/ 68  
 rain (n, v) /reɪn/ 9  
 rainforest /reɪn,fɒrɪst/ 43, 88  
 rare (meat) /rɛə/ 64  
 rarely /'reəli/ 38  
 raspberry /'rɑ:zbəri/ 63  
 rather /'rɑ:ðə/ 38  
 raw /rɔ:/ 64  
 raw material /,rɔ: mə'tɪəriəl/ 73  
 reactionary /ri'ækʃənəri/ 86  
 really /'riəli/ 38  
 really? 21  
 reason /'ri:zən/ 42
- reasonable /'ri:zənəbl/ 58  
 reassure somebody /,ri:ə'ʃʊə/ 16  
 recently /'ri:səntli/ 93  
 reception /ri'sepʃən/ 90  
 recession (in recession) /ri'seʃən/ 73  
 reckon /'rekən/ 99  
 recorded highlights /rɪ,kɔ:dɪd 'haɪlaɪts/ 79  
 rectangle /'rektæŋɡl/ 96  
 rectangular /rek'tæŋɡjələ/ 96  
 recycle /,ri:'saɪkl/ 88  
 recycling /,ri:'saɪklɪŋ/ 88  
 reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ 85  
 referee /,refə'reɪ/ 74  
 refuse (+ inf) /rɪ'fuz/ 34  
 registration form /,redʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m/ 87  
 release (a hostage) /rɪ'li:s/ 88  
 release (a record/CD) 77  
 reliable /rɪ'laɪəbl/ 8, 49  
 remember (+ inf or -ing) /rɪ'membə/ 34  
 remote /rɪ'məʊt/ 66  
 remote control /rɪ,məʊt kən'trəʊl/ 79  
 renew /rɪ'nju:/ 87  
 rent /rent/ 54, 89, 92  
 repair /rɪ'reə/ 70  
 repeat (v) /rɪ'pi:t/ 5  
 repeat (n) 79  
 report /rɪ'pɔ:t/ 78  
 reporter /rɪ'pɔ:tə/ 78  
 represent /,reprɪ'zent/ 70  
 representative /,reprɪ'zentətɪv/ 86  
 republic /rɪ'pʌblɪk/ 86  
 republican /rɪ'pʌblɪkən/ 86  
 require (further assistance) /rɪ'kwaɪə/ 99  
 research (do research) /rɪ'sɜ:tʃ/ 26, 83  
 residential area /,rezɪ'denʃəl 'eəriə/ 54  
 resign /rɪ'zaɪn/ 71  
 resources /rɪ'zɔ:sɪz/ 88  
 responsibilities /rɪ,sprɒnsə'bɪlətɪz/ 69  
 responsible (for something/somebody) /rɪ'sprɒnsəbl/ 69, 70  
 resume /rɪ'zju:m/ 99  
 retire /rɪ'taɪə/ 71  
 retired /rɪ'taɪəd/ 52  
 retirement /rɪ'taɪəmənt/ 52  
 return (n) (return to Bath) /rɪ'tɜ:n/ 68
- review /rɪ'vju:/ 76, 78  
 revise /rɪ'vaɪz/ 1  
 revision /rɪ'vɪʒən/ 1  
 ride a bike /raɪd ə baɪk/ 68  
 ridiculous /rɪ'dɪkjələs/ 18  
 right (= OK) /raɪt/ 21  
 right (= correct) 18  
 right (in the centre) 54  
 right (turn right) 67  
 right now 15  
 right-handed /,raɪt'hændɪd/ 11  
 right-wing /,raɪt'wɪŋ/ 86  
 ring (n, v) (= phone) /rɪŋ/ 9  
 ring (on finger) 61  
 rise (n, v) /raɪz/ 2, 73  
 river /'rɪvə/ 43, 66  
 road signs /'rəʊd saɪnz/ 67  
 roadworks /'rəʊdwɜ:ks/ 67  
 roast (meat) /rəʊst/ 64  
 rob /rɒb/ 85  
 robber /'rɒbə/ 85  
 robbery /'rɒbəri/ 85  
 rock climbing /'rɒk ,klaɪmɪŋ/ 75  
 rock music /'rɒk ,mju:zɪk/ 77  
 rock star /'rɒk ,stɑ:/ 10  
 rocks /rɒks/ 92  
 romance /'rəʊməns/ 52, 76  
 romantic comedy /rə,mæntɪk 'kɒmədi/ 76  
 roof /ru:f/ 54  
 roots /ru:ts/ 66  
 rough sea /,rʌf 'si:/ 92  
 roughly /'rʌfli/ 48, 98  
 round (adj) /raʊnd/ 96  
 round (prep) /raʊnd/ 37  
 (just) round the corner /,raʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə/ 95  
 routine /ru:'ti:n/ 1, 69  
 row (in a theatre/cinema) /rəʊ/ 76  
 row (= argument) /raʊ/ 52, 78  
 rub something off (the board) /,rʌb 'ɒf/ 5  
 rub something out 1, 5  
 rubber /'rʌbə/ 5  
 rug /rʌɡ/ 55  
 rugby /'rʌɡbi/ 74  
 ruin /'ru:ɪn/ 57  
 rule (v) /ru:l/ 86  
 ruler /'ru:lə/ 86  
 run (= travel/operate) /rʌn/ 68  
 run (= manage/control) 69, 86  
 run away 76  
 run out (= expire) 87  
 run out (of something) 23, 57, 72  
 runway /'rʌnweɪ/ 89



rural (area) /'ruərəl/ 66  
rush hour /'rʌʃ ,aʊə/ 65  
rushed (to hospital) /rʌʃt/ 60  
Russia /'rʌʃə/ 46  
Russian /'rʌʃən/ 46  
sack (v) /sæk/ 71  
sadness /'sædnəs/ 50  
safe (adj) /seɪf/ 65  
safe (n) 85  
sailor /'seɪlə/ 70  
salad /'sæləd/ 63  
salad dressing /'sæləd dresɪŋ/ 63  
salary /'sæləri/ 69, 71  
sales rep /'seɪlz ,rep/ 100  
salmon /'sæmən/ 63  
salt /sɔːlt/ 64  
salty /'sɔːlti/ 64  
same to you /,seɪm tuː 'juː/ 22  
sand /sænd/ 92  
sandy (beach) /'sændi/ 92  
satellite TV/dish /'sætələt  
tiː'viː'dɪʃ/ 79  
satisfied (with something)  
/'sætɪsfɑːd/ 14  
saucerpan /'sɔːspən/ 2, 55  
saucer /'sɔːsə/ 55  
Saudi Arabia /,saudi ə'reɪbiə/ 46  
Saudi Arabian /,saudi ə'reɪbiən/ 46  
save (= conserve) /seɪv/ 88  
save (up) 23, 58  
save (data) 81  
saxophone/saxophonist  
/'sæksəfəʊn/ /sæk'sɒfənɪst/ 77  
say (the paper/TV says that ...)  
/seɪ/ 18  
say (that + clause) 35  
say the word aloud 1  
scales /skeɪlz/ 33  
scar /skaː/ 48  
scarf /skɔːf/ 61  
science /'saɪəns/ 82  
science fiction /,saɪəns 'fɪkʃən/ 10  
scissors /'sɪzəz/ 33  
score /skɔː/ 74  
screen (cinema) /skriːn/ 76  
screen (computer) 81  
sea /siː/ 43  
seafood /'siːfuːd/ 63  
search engine /'sɜːtʃ ,endʒɪn/ 81  
seaside resort /'siːsaɪd rɪ,zɔːt/ 92  
seat /siːt/ 3  
seats (in parliament) 86  
second(ly) /'sekəndli/ 39  
second(s) (n) /'sekəndz/ 93

second-hand /,sekən'hænd/ 11  
secondary school /'sekəndəri  
,skuːl/ 82  
see (= understand) /siː/ 27  
see (= find out) 3, 27  
see versus watch versus look at 31  
see you later/tomorrow/soon 22  
seem (+ inf) /siːm/ 34  
seldom /'seldəm/ 38  
self-confident /,self'kɒnfɪdənt/ 49  
self-employed /,selfɪm'plɔɪd/ 69  
self-service /,self'sɜːvɪs/ 67  
self-study /,self'stʌdi/ 1  
sell /sel/ 70  
semi-circle /'semi,sɜːkl/ 96  
send (e-mail) /send/ 72  
sense of humour /,sens əv 'hjuːmə/  
49  
senses /'sensɪz/ 31  
sensitive /'sensɪtɪv/ 49  
sentence (prison) /'sentəns/ 84  
separated /'sepəreɪtɪd/ 51  
series (comedy/drama) /'sɪəriːz/ 79  
serious injury /,sɪəriəs 'ɪndʒəri/ 12  
seriously injured /,sɪəriəsli 'ɪndʒəd/  
60  
set (be set in ...) /set/ 76  
set off /,set 'ɒf/ 24  
set the alarm 56  
shade /ʃeɪd/ 96  
shake (hands) /ʃeɪk/ 47  
shake your head 47  
Shall we ...? /'ʃæl wiː/ 17  
shallow (lake) /'ʃæləʊ/ 95  
shame (what a shame) /'ʃeɪm/ 21  
shape /ʃeɪp/ 96  
share /ʃeə/ 5  
shark /ʃɑːk/ 45  
sharp(ly) /'ʃuːpli/ 73  
sheep /ʃiːp/ 45  
sheet /ʃiːt/ 56  
sheet (of paper) 32  
shiftwork /'ʃɪftwɜːk/ 69  
shirt /ʃɜːt/ 61  
shoe /ʃuː/ 61  
shoot /ʃuːt/ 60  
shop around /'ʃɒp ə'raʊnd/ 62  
shop manager 7  
shop window 62  
shop/sales assistant 62  
shoplift(er) /'ʃɒp,lɪftə/ 85  
shoplifting /'ʃɒplɪftɪŋ/ 85  
shopping (do the shopping) /'ʃɒpɪŋ/  
53  
shopping centre 62, 65

shopping list 62  
short /ʃɔːt/ 48, 95  
short-sleeved /,ʃɔːt'sliːvd/ 11  
shorts /ʃɔːts/ 33, 75  
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ 47  
shout (at somebody/to somebody)  
/ʃaʊt/ 14, 50  
show (somebody + wh- word) /ʃəʊ/  
35  
show (= for people to see) 76  
show one's feelings 49  
show somebody (a)round 72  
shower (in the bathroom) /'ʃəʊə/  
56  
shower (of rain) 44  
shower curtain 56  
showery /'ʃəʊəri/ 44  
shy /ʃaɪ/ 49  
sick (be sick/feel sick) /sɪk/ 59  
sick pay 69  
sight /saɪt/ 31  
sightseeing /'saɪtsiːɪŋ/ 91  
sightseeing tour 91  
sign (your name) /saɪn/ 87  
signature /'sɪgnətʃə/ 87  
silence (silence: exam in progress)  
/'saɪləns/ 97  
silent(ly) /'saɪləntli/ 1  
similar /'sɪmɪlə/ 41  
similar (to) 7, 14  
similar taste 41  
similarity (a similarity between X  
and Y) /'sɪmɪ'lærəti/ 7, 41  
since (+ a point in time) /sɪns/ 93  
single (not married) /'sɪŋɡl/ 20  
single (hit single) 77  
single (n) (single to Edinburgh) 68  
single room 90  
single-parent (family)  
/,'sɪŋɡl'peərənt/ 51  
sink /sɪŋk/ 55  
sister-in-law /'sɪstərɪnləʊ/ 51  
sit down /,sɪt 'daʊn/ 23  
size /saɪz/ 61, 62  
skiing /'skiːɪŋ/ 75  
skilled /skɪld/ 70  
skin (dark/pale) /skɪn/ 47, 48  
skirt /skɜːt/ 61  
skis /skiːz/ 75  
skyscraper /'skɑː,skreɪpə/ 65  
slang /slæŋ/ 99  
sleeves /sliːvz/ 61  
slice (of bread) /slaɪs/ 32  
slight (accent) /slaɪt/ 12  
slightly /'slaɪtli/ 38

- slim /slɪm/ 48  
 sling /slɪŋ/ 60  
 slow (ly) /'sləʊli/ 73  
 slow (= boring) /sləʊ/ 76  
 smell (n, v) /smel/ 9  
 smell (v) (it smells wonderful) 31  
 smell (n) (the smell of petrol) 31  
 smell like (it smells like garlic) 31  
 smile (n, v) /smaɪl/ 2, 9, 47  
 snack /snæk/ 53  
 snail /sneɪl/ 45  
 snake /sneɪk/ 45  
 sneeze (I keep sneezing) /sni:z/ 59  
 snorkelling /'snɔ:kəlɪŋ/ 92  
 so (do I) /səʊ/ 19  
 so (that) 42  
 soap opera /'səʊp ,ɒpərə/ 79  
 social democrat /,səʊʃəl  
   'deməkræt/ 86  
 socialism /'səʊʃəlɪzəm/ 86  
 socialist /'səʊʃəlɪst/ 86  
 sociology /,səʊʃi'nlədʒi/ 83  
 sock /sɒk/ 61  
 socket /'sɒkɪt/ 5  
 sofa /'səʊfə/ 55  
 soft (drink/voice) /sɒft/ 12  
 software /'sɒfweə/ 81  
 soil /sɔɪl/ 66  
 sold out /,səʊld 'aʊt/ 97  
 soldier /'səʊldʒə/ 70, 88  
 solo artist /'səʊləʊ ,ɑ:tɪst/ 77  
 something wrong (with something)  
   /,səmθɪŋ 'rɒŋ/ 14  
 sometime (next week) /'sʌmtaɪm/  
   98  
 sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/ 38  
 songwriter /'sɒŋ,raɪtə/ 77  
 sore throat /,sɔ: 'θrəʊt/ 59  
 sorry /'sɒri/ 22  
 sort (What sort of ...?) /sɔ:t/ 19  
 (a) sort of 98  
 sort something out /,sɔ:t 'aʊt/ 24  
 sound (the sound of church bells)  
   /saʊnd/ 31  
 sound (v) (he sounds German) 31  
 sound like (it sounds like a good  
   idea) /'saʊnd laɪk/ 31  
 sound system /saʊnd ,sɪstəm/ 55  
 sour /saʊə/ 64  
 South America (Latin America)  
   /,saʊθ ə'merɪkə/ 46  
 space /speɪs/ 43  
 Spain /speɪn/ 46  
 Spanish /'spæniʃ/ 46  
 spare room /speə 'ru:m/ 55  
 sparkling water /'spɜ:kliŋ ,wɔ:tə/ 64  
 speaker /'spi:kə/ 55  
 speaking (on the phone) /'spi:kɪŋ/  
   80  
 spectators /spek'teɪtəz/ 74  
 speed limit /'spi:d ,lɪmɪt/ 67  
 speeding /'spi:dɪŋ/ 67  
 spell /spel/ 7  
 spelling (be good at spelling)  
   /'speliŋ/ 7  
 spend (money on something)  
   /'spend/ 14, 58, 91  
 spend your holiday 92  
 spicy /'spai:si/ 64  
 spider /'spaɪdə/ 45  
 spill /spɪl/ 57  
 splir up /,splɪt 'ʌp/ 52  
 spoon /spu:n/ 90  
 square /skweə/ 96  
 St (street) /stri:t/ 100  
 St (saint) /seɪnt/ 100  
 stability (economic/political)  
   /'stə'bɪləti/ 73  
 stadium /'steɪdiəm/ 74  
 stage /steɪdʒ/ 76  
 stain (n) /steɪn/ 57  
 stairs /steəz/ 54  
 sralls /stɔ:lz/ 76  
 stand up /stænd 'ʌp/ 23  
 standard of living /'stændəd əv  
   'lvɪŋ/ 58  
 star (shape) /stɑ:/ 96  
 star (film) 76  
 star (in the sky) 43  
 stare (at) /steə/ 50  
 start a car /stɑ:t/ 12  
 start a family 12  
 starter /'stɑ:tə/ 64, 90  
 starving /'stɑ:vɪŋ/ 36  
 state system /,steɪt 'sɪstəm/ 82  
 station (TV) /'steɪʃən/ 79  
 stationery /'steɪʃənəri/ 62  
 statue /'stætʃu:/ 91  
 stay (at school) /steɪ/ 82  
 stay (v) 90  
 stay in 24, 53  
 steady/steadily /'stedɪ/ /'stedɪli/ 73  
 steal /sti:l/ 85  
 stepfather /'step,fu:ðə/ 51  
 stepmother /'step,mʌðə/ 51  
 steps /steps/ 54  
 stereo /'sterɪəʊ/ 55  
 sterling /'stɜ:lɪŋ/ 58  
 steward(ess) /'stju:əd/ /'stju:ədəs/ 89  
 stick (hockey stick) /stɪk/ 74  
 stick (skiing/ice hockey) 75  
 still /stɪl/ 40  
 still water /'stɪl ,wɔ:tə/ 64  
 stitches /'stɪtʃɪz/ 60  
 stockbroker /'stɒk,broʊkə/ 70  
 stomach /'stʌmək/ 59  
 stomachache /'stʌməkeɪk/ 59  
 straight hair /,streɪt 'heə/ 48  
 strawberry /'strɔ:bəri/ 63  
 stress /stres/ 4  
 stressful /'stresfʊl/ 65  
 striped /straɪpt/ 96  
 stroll (n, v) /strɔʊl/ 50  
 strong accent /,strɒŋ 'æksənt/ 12  
 strong coffee 12  
 strong economy 73  
 strong wind 44  
 stuck (get stuck) /stʌk/ 94  
 study (room) /'stʌdi/ 55  
 study a subject 83  
 stuff /stʌf/ 98  
 stuff like that 19  
 stupid /'stju:pid/ 7, 49  
 stupidity /stju:'pɪdəti/ 7  
 subject /'sʌbdʒɪkt/ 82, 83  
 subtitles /'sʌb,tʌɪtlz/ 76  
 subtraction /səb'trækʃən/ 94  
 suburbs /'sʌbɜ:bz/ 54, 65  
 success /sək'ses/ 82  
 successful /sək'sesfʊl/ 73  
 suffer (from an illness) /'sʌfə/ 14,  
   59  
 suffix /'sʌfɪks/ 4  
 suggest (that + clause) /sə'dʒest/ 35  
 suggestion /sə'dʒestʃən/ 17  
 suit (n) /su:t/ 61  
 suitable /'su:təbl/ 8  
 sun /sʌn/ 43, 44  
 sunbathe /'sʌnbeɪð/ 92  
 sunblock /'sʌnbloʊk/ 92  
 sunburn /'sʌnbɜ:n/ 92  
 sunglasses /'sʌn,glʌ:sɪz/ 10, 33  
 sunny /'sʌni/ 8, 44  
 suntan (get a suntan) /'sʌntæn/ 92  
 suntan lotion /'sʌntæn ,ləʊʃən/ 92  
 superb /su:'pɜ:b/ 76  
 supermarket /'su:pə,mɑ:kɪt/ 62  
 support (a team) /sə'pɔ:t/ 75  
 sure (= of course) /ʃʊə/ 17  
 surgeon /'sɜ:dʒən/ 70  
 surgery /'sɜ:dʒəri/ 70  
 surname /'sɜ:neɪm/ 51, 87  
 surprised (at/by) /sə'praɪzd/ 14  
 surprising/surprised /sə'praɪzɪŋ/  
   /sə'praɪzd/ 36

surrounded (by) /sə'raʊndɪd/ 66  
 survival /sə'vaɪvəl/ 88  
 survive /sə'vaɪv/ 88  
 swap places /,swɒp 'pleɪsɪz/ 5  
 sweet /swi:t/ 64  
 sweet wine 12  
 swimming (costume/trunks)  
 /'swɪmɪŋ/ 75  
 swimming pool 75  
 Swiss /swɪs/ 46  
 switch off (the light) /swɪtʃ ɒf/ 56  
 switch something on/off/over 79  
 Switzerland /'swɪtsələnd/ 46  
 swollen /'swɒlənd/ 60  
 syllable /'sɪləbl/ 4  
 sympathetic /,sɪmpə'tetɪk/ 49  
 symptom /'sɪmptəm/ 59  
 synonym /'sɪnənɪm/ 4

T-shirt /'ti:ʃɜ:t/ 10  
 table tennis /'teɪbl ,tenɪs/ 74  
 tabloid /'tæblɔɪd/ 78  
 tailback /'teɪlbæk/ 67  
 take (= steal) /teɪk/ 85  
 take a break 26  
 take a bus/taxi 26, 65, 68  
 take a decision 2, 26  
 take a photo 2, 26, 91  
 take a seat 26  
 take a shower 2, 26  
 take after somebody 51  
 take an exam 26, 82  
 take it in turns 13  
 take off (= leave the ground) /'teɪk  
 'ɒf/ 23, 24  
 take-off (n) /'teɪkɒf/ 89  
 take over (= take control) 71  
 take place 86  
 take something back (= return it)  
 23  
 take something off (= remove  
 clothes) 23, 24  
 take something seriously 75  
 take something up (= start a  
 sport/hobby) 75  
 take the first/second turning on the  
 left/right 67  
 take time (e.g. it takes 20 minutes)  
 2, 26, 93  
 take time off 26  
 talks /tɔ:ks/ 78  
 tall /tɔ:l/ 48, 95  
 tan /tæn/ 92  
 tap /tæp/ 55  
 tape /teɪp/ 5

tape recorder /'teɪp rɪ,kɔ:də/ 5  
 tartan /'tɑ:tən/ 96  
 taste (n, v) /teɪst/ 9, 64  
 taste (in music) 77  
 taste (v) (it tastes strange) 31  
 taste (n) (the taste of olives) 31  
 taste like (it tastes like chicken) 31  
 tasty /'teɪsti/ 64  
 tax cut /'tæks kʌt/ 73  
 taxi /'tæksi/ 68  
 taxi rank 68  
 teacher /'ti:tʃə/ 83  
 team /ti:m/ 75  
 teenager /'ti:n,eɪdʒə/ 52  
 telephone directory /'telɪfəʊn  
 dɪ,rektəri/ 80  
 television commercial /'telɪvɪʒən  
 kɔ'mɜ:ʃəl/ 79  
 television/TV /'telɪvɪʒən/ /,ti:'vi:  
 79  
 tell (somebody + inf) /tel/ 35  
 tell (somebody + wh- word) 35  
 tell a joke 12, 47  
 tell a story 12  
 tell the truth 12  
 telly/TV /'teli/ /,ti:'vi:/ 100  
 temperature (weather) /'temprətʃə/  
 44  
 temperature (body) 59  
 temple /'templ/ 91  
 ten-minute walk /,tenmɪnɪt 'wɔ:k/  
 11  
 ten-pound note /,tenpaʊnd 'nəʊt/  
 58  
 ten-year-old (boy/girl) /'tenjɪərəʊld/  
 11  
 tend to /tend tu:/ 46  
 tennis /'tenɪs/ 74  
 tense /tens/ 49  
 tent /tent/ 92  
 term /tɜ:m/ 82  
 terminal building /'tɜ:mɪnəl bɪldɪŋ/  
 89  
 terrible pain /'terəbl peɪn/ 59  
 terribly (sorry) (to bother you)  
 /'terəbli/ 12  
 terrific /tə'rifɪk/ 36, 99  
 terrifying/terrified /'terəfaɪŋ/  
 /'terəfaɪd/ 36  
 terrorism /'terərɪzəm/ 88  
 terrorist /'terərɪst/ 88  
 text message /'tekst ,mesɪdʒ/ 80  
 thank you /'θæŋk ju: 22  
 thank you very much 16  
 thanks (a lot) /θæŋks/ 16

that sort of thing 19, 98  
 that sounds interesting/wonderful/  
 terrible 17, 21  
 that's a good idea 17  
 that's great/brilliant/dreadful 21  
 that's OK 16  
 that's to say (i.e.) 100  
 that's very kind of you 16  
 the other day 93  
 the press 78  
 theft /θeft/ 85  
 then /ðen/ 39  
 therefore /'ðeəfɔ: 42  
 there's something wrong with ...  
 57, 90  
 these days /'ði:z deɪz/ 93  
 thick (= stupid) /θɪk/ 99  
 thick fog 44  
 thief /θi:f/ 85  
 thigh /θaɪ/ 47  
 thin /θɪn/ 48  
 thing(s) /θɪŋz/ 98  
 thing (best/worst thing about ...)  
 /θɪŋ/ 65, 66  
 things (are going well) 98  
 things got worse 57  
 things like that 19, 98  
 think (I think .../I don't think ...)  
 /θɪŋk/ 18  
 thinking (of going/doing) /,θɪŋkɪŋ/  
 14  
 third(ly) /'θɜ:dlɪ/ 39  
 thirsty (be thirsty) /'θɜ:sti/ 25  
 though /ðəʊ/ 40  
 thoughtful /'θɔ:tfəl/ 8  
 thousand /'θaʊzənd/ 94  
 three-quarters /,θri:'kwɔ:təz/ 94  
 thriller /'θrɪlə/ 76  
 through /θru:/ 37  
 throw (something at somebody/to  
 somebody) /θrəʊ/ 14, 74  
 throw something away 24, 88  
 thumb /θʌm/ 2, 47  
 thunder and lightning /,θʌndə ən  
 'laɪtɪŋ/ 44  
 thunderstorm /'θʌndəstɔ:m/ 44  
 thus /ðʌs/ 99  
 tick /tɪk/ 3  
 tidy /'taɪdi/ 56  
 tie /taɪ/ 61  
 tiger /'taɪgə/ 45  
 tights /taɪts/ 61  
 till /tɪl/ 62  
 time difference /'taɪm ,dɪfərəns/ 43  
 (It's) time to go 30

times (= multiplied by) /taɪmz/ 94  
timetable /'taɪm,tetbl/ 82  
tin (of fruit) /tɪn/ 32  
tin opener /'tɪn ,əʊpənə/ 10  
tiny /'taɪni/ 3, 36, 54  
tip (money) /tɪp/ 68, 90  
tired (of something) /'taɪəd/ 14  
tiring/tired /taɪərɪŋ/ /taɪəd/ 36  
toast /təʊst/ 33  
toddler /'tɒdlə/ 52  
toe /təʊ/ 47  
toilet /'tɔɪlɪt/ 56  
tomato /tə'mɑ:təʊ/ 63  
too (too big/small) /tu:/ 61  
too (= as well) 40  
toothache /'tu:θeɪk/ 10, 59  
toothbrush /'tu:θbrʌʃ/ 10  
toothpaste /'tu:θpeɪst/ 10  
toothpick /'tu:θpɪk/ 64  
top (= clothes) /tɒp/ 61  
totally disagree /,təʊtəli ,dɪsə'grɪ:/  
18  
touch (don't touch those) /tʌtʃ/ 31  
tough (punishment) /tʌf/ 85  
touristy /'tuərɪstɪ/ 91  
towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ 37  
towel /'taʊəl/ 56, 92  
towel rail /'taʊəl ,reɪl/ 56  
tower (computer) /'təʊə/ 81  
toys /tɔɪz/ 62  
track (favourite track) /træk/ 77  
tractor /'træktə/ 66  
traffic congestion /'træfɪk  
kən,dʒestʃən/ 65  
traffic jam /'træfɪk ,dʒæm/ 10  
traffic light(s) /'træfɪk ,laɪts/ 10, 67  
train /treɪn/ 68  
trainee /,treɪ'ni:/ 71  
trainer (= job) /'treɪnə/ 71  
trainers /'treɪnəz/ 33, 74  
training (course) /'treɪnɪŋ/ 71  
transitive verb /,trænsətɪv 'vɜ:b/ 4  
translate something into (e.g.  
Spanish) /trænz,leɪt/ 14  
translator /trænz'leɪtə/ 7  
travel agent /'trævəl ,eɪdʒənt/ 10  
treat (v) /tri:t/ 70  
tree /tri:/ 66  
trend /trend/ 73  
trial /traɪəl/ 84  
triangle /'traɪæŋɡl/ 96  
triangular /'traɪ'æŋɡjələ/ 96  
try something on /,traɪ/ 61  
tube (of toothpaste) /tju:b/ 32  
tuition (fees) /tju:'fʃjən/ 83

Turkey /'tɜ:kɪ/ 46  
Turkish /'tɜ:kɪʃ/ 46  
turn (left/right) /tɜ:n/ 67  
turn something on/off (e.g.  
TV/radio) 24, 55, 79  
turn something up/down  
(= increase/reduce volume) 5, 79  
turn something/somebody down  
(= reject) 24  
turning (the first turning) /'tɜ:nɪŋ/  
67  
turnover /'tɜ:n,əʊvə/ 73  
turquoise /'tɜ:kwɔ:z/ 96  
twin room /,tʌwɪn 'ru:m/ 90  
twins /tʌwɪnz/ 51  
twist (an ankle) /twɪst/ 60  
type (v) /taɪp/ 72  
ugly /'ʌɡli/ 2, 48  
umpire /'ʌmpaɪə/ 74  
UN (United Nations) /,ju:'en/ 100  
unable /ʌn'eɪbl/ 6, 99  
unbreakable /ʌn'breɪkəbl/ 8  
uncle /'ʌŋkl/ 51  
unconscious /ʌn'kɒnʃəs/ 60  
uncountable (noun) /ʌn'kaʊntəbl/ 4  
under /'ʌndə/ 37  
under somebody (under their  
authority) 71  
undergraduate /,ʌndə'grædʒuət/ 83  
underneath /,ʌndə'ni:θ/ 87  
undo (your jacket) /ʌn'du:/ 61  
unemployed /,ʌnɪm'plɔɪd/ 6, 71  
unfriendly /ʌn'frendli/ 6, 49  
unhappy /ʌn'hæpi/ 6  
United States (the United States of  
America) /ju:'naɪtɪd 'steɪts/ 46  
university /,ju:nɪ'vɜ:səti/ 83  
unkind /ʌn'kaɪnd/ 6, 49  
unless /ən'les/ 42  
unlike /ʌn'laɪk/ 41  
unlock /ʌn'lɒk/ 6  
unnecessary /ʌn'nesəsəri/ 6  
unpack (my suitcase) /ʌn'pæk/ 6  
unpleasant /ʌn'plezənt/ 6, 49  
unreliable /,ʌnrɪ'laɪəbl/ 49  
unsuitable /ʌn'su:təbl/ 8  
untidy /ʌn'taɪdi/ 6, 56  
until /ən'tɪl/ 93  
unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒəl/ 6  
up /ʌp/ 37  
upright position /'ʌpraɪt pə,zɪʃən/  
89  
upset (get upset) /'ʌpsət/ 50  
urban (area) /'ɜ:bən/ 66

USA /,ju:es'ei/ 100  
useful /'ju:sfəl/ 8  
useless /'ju:sləs/ 8  
user-friendly /,ju:zə'frendli/ 81  
V-neck /,vi:'nek/ 61  
vacuum cleaner (hoover) /'vækju:m  
,kli:nə/ 56  
vague (idea) /veɪɡ/ 98  
valley /'væli/ 66  
valuables /'væljuəblz/ 85  
value /'vælju:/ 58  
van /væn/ 68  
various /'veəriəs/ 92  
vase /vɑ:z/ 32, 55  
VAT (value added tax) /,vi:er'ti:/  
100  
veal /vi:l/ 63  
vegetarian /,vedʒɪ'teəriən/ 63  
vehicle /'vi:kl/ 68  
verb /vɜ:b/ 4  
very /'veri/ 38  
vest /vest/ 75  
vet /vet/ 70, 100  
video (n) /'vɪdiəʊ/ 5  
video a programme /,vɪdiəʊ ə  
'prəʊɡræm/ 5  
video recorder /'vɪdiəʊ rɪ,kɔ:də/ 55  
view /vju:/ 54  
village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ 66  
vinegar /'vɪnɪɡə/ 63, 64  
violent /'vaɪələnt/ 76  
violin /,vaɪə'li:n/ 77  
violinist /vaɪə'li:nɪst/ 77  
virus (illness) /'vaɪrəs/ 59  
virus (computer) 81  
visa /'vi:zə/ 87  
vitally important /'vaɪtəli  
ɪm'pɔ:rtənt/ 12  
vocational training /və'keɪʃənəl  
treɪnɪŋ/ 82  
volcanic eruption /vɒl,kæntɪk  
ɪ'rʌpʃən/ 43  
volcano /vɒl'keɪnəʊ/ 43  
volleyball /'vɒlɪbɔ:l/ 74  
vomit /'vɒmɪt/ 59  
vote (for) /vəʊt/ 86  
waist /weɪst/ 47  
wait (for something/somebody)  
/weɪt/ 14  
wait in a queue 9  
waiter/waitress /'weɪtə/ /'weɪtrəs/  
90  
waiting room /'weɪtɪŋ ,ru:m/ 10

wake up /,weɪk 'ʌp/ 23, 24, 53  
want (somebody + inf) /wɒnt/ 35  
want (+ inf) 34  
war /wɔː/ 88  
war film 76  
wardrobe /'wɔːdrəʊb/ 56  
warn (somebody + inf) /wɔːn/ 35  
warning /'wɔːnɪŋ/ 97  
wash (my hair) /wɒʃ/ 53  
washable /'wɒʃəbl/ 8  
washbasin /'wɒʃ,betsɪn/ 56  
washing (do the washing) /'wɒʃɪŋ/  
53, 56  
washing machine /'wɒʃɪŋ mə,ʃiːn/  
10, 55, 56  
washing-up (do the washing-up)  
/,wɒʃɪŋ'ʌp/ 53, 56  
waste (v) /weɪst/ 58  
waste (n, v) 88  
waste time/money 12  
wastepaper basket /,weɪs'peɪpə  
,bɑːskɪt/ 72  
watch (versus see versus look at)  
/wɒtʃ/ 31  
wave (goodbye) /weɪv/ 50  
waves /weɪvz/ 92  
wavy hair /'weɪvi heə/ 48  
we could ... /wiː ,kʊd/ 17  
weak (opp strong) /wiːk/ 7  
weak coffee 12  
weakness (the main weakness)  
/'wiːknəs/ 7  
weapon /'weɪpən/ 60  
weather /'weðə/ 2  
website /'websaɪt/ 81  
weekly /'wiːkli/ 78  
weigh (your luggage) /weɪ/ 89  
weigh oneself 33  
weight /weɪt/ 48  
well aware of the problem 12  
well done /,wel 'dʌn/ 22  
well-behaved /,welbɪ'heɪvd/ 11  
well-done (meat) /,wel'dʌn/ 64  
well-equipped /,welɪ'kwɪpt/ 11  
well-known /,wel'nəʊn/ 11  
well-off /,wel'ɒf/ 11, 58  
well-organised /,wel'ɔːgənəɪzd/ 11

well-paid /,wel'peɪd/ 11  
well-written /,wel'rɪtən/ 11  
wet weather /wet 'weðə/ 12  
whale /weɪl/ 45  
What about ...? 17  
What are you doing at the  
moment? 20  
What are you doing this evening?  
20  
What do you do for a living? 69  
What do you do? 20, 69  
What do you think about ...? 18  
What do you think of ...? 18  
What does (it) stand for? 100  
What does he/she look like? 48  
What does X mean? 5  
What sort/kind of ...? 20  
What time do you have breakfast?  
25  
What time's (the film) on? 79  
whatever you like 21  
What's (the flat) like? 20  
what's more 40  
What's on? 79  
What's the difference between X  
and Y? 5  
What's the length/width of ...? 95  
What's the matter? 20  
What's up? 13, 99  
What's your address/phone  
number? 20  
What's your job? 69  
when /wen/ 39  
whenever you like 21  
Where are you from? 20  
Where do you come from? 20  
Whereabouts? 20  
whereas /weə'ræz/ 40  
wherever you like 21  
while /waɪl/ 39  
whisper (n, v) /'wɪspə/ 50  
whistle (n) /'wɪsl/ 74  
(the) whole page/book 1  
Who's calling? (on the phone) 80  
Why don't we ...? 17  
wide /waɪd/ 95  
wide awake /,waɪd ə'weɪk/ 12

wide range /,waɪd 'reɪndʒ/ 65  
widow /'wɪdəʊ/ 51  
widower /'wɪdəʊə/ 51  
width /wɪθ/ 95  
win /wɪn/ 74  
wind /wɪnd/ 44  
window shopping /'wɪndəʊ ,ʃɒpɪŋ/  
62  
windsurfing /'wɪnzɜːfɪŋ/ 92  
windy /'wɪndi/ 44  
wine glass /'waɪn glaːs/ 90  
wine list 90  
winner /'wɪnə/ 74  
witness (n) /'wɪtnəs/ 84, 85  
woods /wudz/ 66  
work (in a bank) /wɜːk/ 69  
work (for a company) 69  
work (= function) (it isn't working)  
57, 72  
work at a computer 72  
work something out (= calculate)  
94  
working hours /'wɜːkɪŋ ,aʊəz/ 69  
world /wɜːld/ 43, 86  
worldwide /,wɜːld'waɪd/ 81  
worry about something/somebody  
/'wɒri ə,baut/ 14  
worth (+ -ing) /wɜːθ/ 58, 91  
worth a visit 91  
would rather (I'd rather ...) /wʊd  
'rɑːðə/ 17, 19  
Would you like to ...? 17  
wound (n, v) /wuːnd/ 60  
wrist /rɪst/ 2, 47  
write something down 5  
writing paper /'raɪtɪŋ ,peɪpə/ 10  
wrong number /,rɒŋ 'nʌmbə/ 80  
WWW (World Wide Web)  
/,dʌbljuːdʌbljuː'dʌbljuː/ 100  
  
yacht /jɒt/ 92  
yawn /jɔːn/ 47  
you get (= it exists) 66  
  
zebra /'zebrə/ 45  
zero /'ziərəʊ/ 44, 94  
zoo /zuː/ 45

# Acknowledgements

For this new edition I am particularly grateful to lexicographer Julie Moore. Working with the *Cambridge International Corpus* of written and spoken English, she has provided information and insights which have been invaluable in guiding lexical selection and example sentences in the book.

A number of people have reviewed different parts of the manuscript and given me extremely useful feedback. My thanks to the following reviewers:

Miles Craven, Cambridge, UK

Eryl Griffiths, Cambridge, UK

Agnieszka Lenko-Szymanska, Milanówek, Poland

Chris Nicol, Cannes, France

Jeanine Saelens, Heule, Belgium

Olga Vinogradova, Moscow, Russia

My editor Alison Silver has been wonderful. She has worked with great professionalism on a long and intricate manuscript, and the final product is immeasurably improved as a result of her contribution. My thanks to Ruth Carim for her proof-reading and comments on the final manuscript.

Finally, I would like to thank Oxford Designers & Illustrators for their elegant design of this new edition, and Nóirín Burke at Cambridge University Press. Nóirín has guided the project from its infancy, and coordinated the various stages of both editions with calm efficiency.

Stuart Redman

London, 2002

The author and publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs and other illustrative material:

p. 158 newspaper mast heads: Daily Mirror © Mirror Syndication International, The Guardian © Guardian Newspapers Limited 2002, The Sun © N I Syndication Limited, London, 3 December 2002, The Independent © Independent Newspapers (UK) Limited, The Times © N I Syndication Limited, London, 3 December 2002, Daily Mail by permission of Atlantic Syndication; p. 182 Corbis (©Macduff Everton); p. 184 Objectif Photos.

Illustrations by Sophie Joyce, Nick Davies, David Mostyn and Oxford Designers & Illustrators.

# English Vocabulary in Use

Second Edition

Pre-intermediate & intermediate

*English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate & intermediate* is primarily designed as a self-study reference and practice text but it can also be used for classroom work. This second edition has been fully revised and updated to ensure that the vocabulary presented is current and relevant.

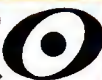
*English Vocabulary in Use Pre-intermediate & intermediate*

- 100 easy-to-use units: vocabulary items are presented and explained on left-hand pages with a range of follow-up activities on right-hand pages.
- Presents and explains new words in context and shows learners how to use them and how to work out rules for using them.
- Based on a corpus of real written and spoken language to ensure the vocabulary is relevant and up-to-date.
- Contains a comprehensive, student-friendly answer key.
- Includes a detailed index with phonemic transcriptions to help with the pronunciation of difficult vocabulary.
- Is beautifully illustrated in full colour.

## CAMBRIDGE INTERNATIONAL CORPUS

The Cambridge International Corpus (CIC) is a collection of over 700 million words of real spoken and written English. The texts are stored in a database that can be searched to see how English is used. The CIC also includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique collection of over 50,000 exam papers from Cambridge ESOL. It shows real mistakes students make and highlights the parts of English which cause problems for students.

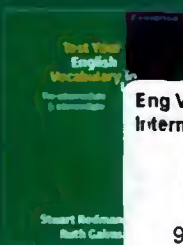
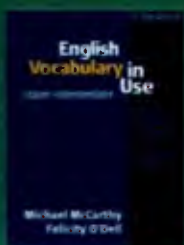
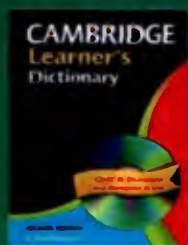
[www.cambridge.org/corpus](http://www.cambridge.org/corpus)



**REAL ENGLISH GUARANTEE**

Also available:

**in  
Use**



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS

[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)

Eng Vocab in Use, Pre-Intermediate & Intermediate



9 780521 011716

ISBN 0-521-01171-X



9 780521 011716